# CUPRA BORN

OWNER'S MANUAL

## Vehicle identification data

| |
|---|
| Model: |
| Vehicle Registration: |
| Vehicle identification number: |
| Date of vehicle registration or vehicle delivery: |
| SEAT Official Service/CUPRA authorised service: |
| Service advisor: |
| Telephone: |

## Confirmation of receipt of documentation and vehicle keys

| **The following items were delivered with the vehicle:** | **YES** | **NO** |
|---|---|---|
| On-board documentation | ☐ | ☐ |
| First key | ☐ | ☐ |
| Second key | ☐ | ☐ |
| Correct working order of all keys was checked | ☐ | ☐ |
| Location:<br><br>Date: | | |
| Signature of owner: | | |

# Thank you for your confidence

With your new CUPRA, you will be able to enjoy a vehicle with state-of-the-art technology and top quality features.

We recommend reading this Instruction Manual carefully to learn more about your vehicle so you can enjoy all its benefits in your daily driving.

Information about handling is complemented with instructions regarding the operation and maintenance of the vehicle in order to ensure its safety and maintain its value. Moreover, we want to give you valuable advice and tips for driving your vehicle in an efficient and environmentally friendly manner.

We wish you safe and enjoyable motoring.

CUPRA

**⚠ WARNING**

**Read and always observe safety information concerning the front passenger airbag**

›››  page 58, *Fitting and using child seats*.

# Table of Contents


**About this instruction manual** ..... 4

**General views of the vehicle** ..... 6
Front exterior view ..... 6
Rear exterior view ..... 7
Interior view ..... 8
Overview (left hand drive) ..... 9
Overview (right hand drive) ..... 10

**Driver information** ..... 11
Control lamps ..... 11
Instrument cluster ..... 15
Smartlight ..... 22
Drowsiness monitor ..... 22
Attention monitor ..... 24
Road signs detection system ..... 26
Infotainment system operation and displays . 30

**Safety** ..... 37
Safe driving ..... 37
Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants 38
Seat belts ..... 40
Proactive occupant protection ..... 47
Airbag system ..... 48
Transporting children safely ..... 56
In case of emergency ..... 66

**High-voltage battery** ..... 72
Safety instructions ..... 72
Conservation of the high-voltage battery .... 74
Charging the high-voltage battery ..... 75
Charging settings ..... 84
Charging with a home energy management system ..... 88
Charging cable ..... 90

**Opening and closing** ..... 94
Set of vehicle keys ..... 94
Digital key ..... 96
Keyless Access system ..... 100
Central locking ..... 103
Anti-theft alarm ..... 107
Doors ..... 108
Rear lid ..... 110
Window controls ..... 112

**Steering wheel** ..... 115
Multifunction steering wheel ..... 115

**Seats and headrests** ..... 117
Front seats ..... 117
Rear seats ..... 118
Headrest ..... 119
Seat functions ..... 122

**Lights** ..... 126
Vehicle lighting ..... 126
Interior lights ..... 131

**Visibility** ..... 134
Windscreen wiper and rear window wiper systems ..... 134
Mirrors ..... 136
Sun protection ..... 139

**Air conditioning** ..... 141
Heating, ventilation and cooling ..... 141
Stationary air conditioning ..... 149

**Driving** ..... 152
Driving indications ..... 152
Connecting and disconnecting the drive system ..... 160
Gear selection ..... 163
Steering ..... 165
Drive Profiles ..... 166
Braking system ..... 169
Brake assist systems ..... 170

**Assistant systems** ..... 174
General notes ..... 174
Drive assist sensors and cameras ..... 175
Cruise control system ..... 178
Speed limiter ..... 180
Speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment ..... 181
Eco Assist ..... 183
ACC - Adaptive Cruise Control ..... 184
Predictive speed and events adjustment .... 189
Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist) ..... 192
Lane Assist system ..... 196
Travel Assist ..... 198
Emergency Assist ..... 203
Lane departure warning (Side Assist) ..... 205

**Parking and manoeuvring** ..... 208
Park the vehicle ..... 208
Electronic parking brake ..... 209
General information on parking systems ..... 212
Park Distance Control Plus (Park Pilot) ..... 213
Intelligent Park Assist (IPA) automatic parking system ..... 216
Automatic Parking System Plus with memory function ..... 222
Automatic parking system plus with remote function (My CUPRA App) ..... 226
Reversing assistance system (Reversing Assist) ..... 229
Reverse Assist (Rear View Camera) ..... 230
Peripheral view system (Top View Camera) .. 232

Rear Cross Traffic Alert ..... 234
Exit Warning ..... 235

**Practical equipment** ..... 237
Storage compartment ..... 237
Power sockets ..... 238

**Data transmissions** ..... 240
Cybersecurity ..... 240
Over-the-air update ..... 241
Car2X communication ..... 243
CUPRA CONNECT ..... 246
Privacy mode ..... 250
User administration ..... 251
Wired connections ..... 252

**Infotainment system** ..... 253
First steps ..... 253
Overview and controls ..... 259
Connecting mobile devices ..... 262
Telephone interface ..... 265
Use of mobile technologies ..... 271
CUPRA Assistant ..... 273
Radio mode ..... 276
Media Mode ..... 278
Navigation ..... 281

**Storing objects** ..... 289
Positioning the luggage and cargo ..... 289
Luggage compartment ..... 290
Luggage compartment equipment ..... 292
Roof carrier ..... 294
Trailer mode ..... 294
Bicycle carrier ..... 294

**Miscellaneous situations** ..... 300
Vehicle tool kit ..... 300
Changing the windscreen wiper blades ..... 300
Jump start ..... 302
Towing the vehicle ..... 304
Fuses ..... 308
Changing bulbs ..... 312

**Checking and refilling levels** ..... 313
Front compartment ..... 313
Fluids and consumables ..... 317
Cooling system ..... 317
Brake fluid ..... 320
Windscreen washer reservoir ..... 321
12-volt battery ..... 322

**Wheels and tyres** ..... 327
Important information about wheels and tyres ..... 327
Changing a wheel ..... 333
Tyre pressure monitor system ..... 338
Tyre repair ..... 339

**Maintenance** ..... 343
Service ..... 343
Additional service offers ..... 345
Vehicle upkeep and cleaning ..... 345
Accessories, spare parts and repair work ..... 350

**User information** ..... 353
Warranty ..... 353
Information stored by the control units ..... 353
Vehicle antennas ..... 356
Fluids in the air conditioning system ..... 357
Information on the EU chemicals regulation REACH ..... 358
Materials and recycling information ..... 358
Third-party copyright information ..... 360
Return and scrapping of end-of-life vehicles 360
Declaration of conformity ..... 361
Radioelectrical equipment ..... 361

**Technical data** ..... 365
Indications about the technical data ..... 365
Engine specifications ..... 366
Dimensions. ..... 368

**Index** ..... 369

# About this instruction manual

This instruction manual is valid for all variants and versions of your CUPRA model. It describes all equipment and models without specifying whether their features are optional equipment of model variants. As a result, equipment not fitted to your vehicle or only available in certain countries may be described. Find out about your vehicle's equipment in the documentation supplied with it and please contact your CUPRA Specialised Service or SEAT Official Service if you require more detailed information.

All information provided in this instruction manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press. As the vehicle is under continuous development, it may have differences to the data included in this manual. For this reason, no claims can be made in the event of mismatching data, illustrations and descriptions.

Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times if you sell it or lend it to third parties. In addition, CUPRA recommends resetting the infotainment system to factory settings to delete all personal data.

Some details on the **drawings** may be different to your vehicle and they should be interpreted as a standard representation.

The **direction indicators** (left, right, forwards, backwards) in this manual refer to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless otherwise stated.

This instruction manual has been written for **left-hand drive vehicles**. In right-hand drive vehicles, the arrangement of the controls differs partly from that shown in the illustrations or described in the texts.

Technical modifications to the vehicle or safety-critical issues that have arisen since the time of going to press will be included in a supplement to the on-board documentation.

® **Trademarks** are marked with ®. The absence of this symbol does not guarantee that the term is not a trademark.

You can access the information in this manual using:

- Thematic table of contents that follows the manual's general chapter structure.
- Visual table of contents that uses graphics to indicate the pages containing "essential" information, which is detailed in the corresponding chapters.
- Alphabetical index with many terms and synonyms to help you find information.

**⚠ DANGER**

**Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in death or serious injury.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in death or serious injury.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in minor or moderate injury.**

**NOTICE**

**Texts with this symbol warn of dangerous situations which, if ignored, could result in minor or moderate injury.**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Texts after this symbol contain information on environmental protection.**

**Note**

**Texts after this symbol contain additional information.**

### Owner's manual and explanatory videos of some functionalities

On the official CUPRA website, you can download the relevant version of the owner's manual and view explanatory videos on how to operate certain vehicle functions.

- Scan the QR code or enter the following address in your web browser and select your vehicle:

https://www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-manuals

**Note**

**The vehicle simulations shown in the videos are for illustrative purposes only and are subject to change. Likewise, the functions described in the videos are continuously evolving, and there may be differences and/or significant changes between different vehicle updates. These videos do not replace the instruction manual in the corresponding vehicle edition, which has the complete information and warnings.**

**Note**

**The explanatory videos of certain functionalities are only available in some languages.**

### Digital Manual in the Infotainment System [1)]

When a factory settings reset is performed, the Digital Manual is uninstalled from the infotainment system.

Proceed as follows to reinstall the Digital Manual:

- Press the notifications icon located on the top bar of the infotainment system. A pop-up window will then appear.
- Press OK to begin the installation process.

If in any doubts, please contact your SEAT Official Service or specialised workshop.

**Note**

**It is only possible to update the Digital Manual when the vehicle is in Online** >>> page 250 **mode. In Offline mode the content may not be up to date.**

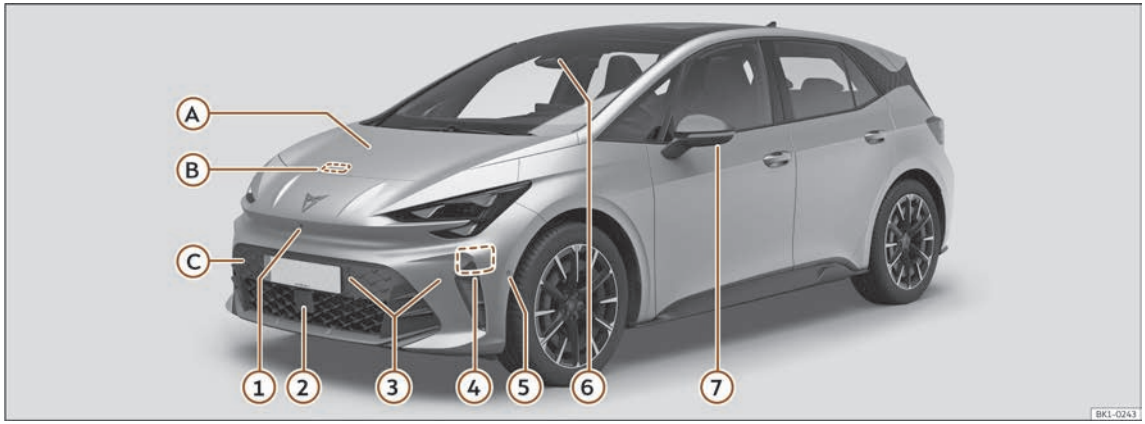
### Valid for the Dutch market

Only CUPRA Specialized Services can repair CUPRA vehicles and provide services under warranty.

[1)] Depending on the version.

# General views of the vehicle

## Front exterior view




**Driving assistance sensors** ››› page 174

1. "Top View Camera" front camera.
2. Front radar.
3. Park assist sensors
4. Side radars.
5. Park assist sensor.
6. Front multifunction camera.
7. "Top View Camera" side cameras.

Ⓐ **Levels control**

Brake fluid ››› page 320

Battery ››› page 322

Ⓑ **Front compartment**

Unlocking lever ››› page 316

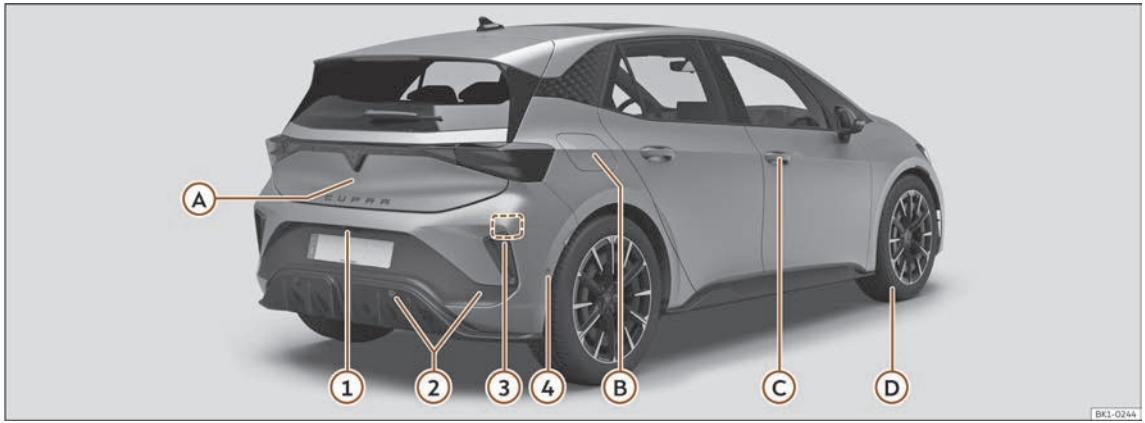
Open/close ››› page 316

Ⓒ **Towing the vehicle**

Towing ››› page 304

Towline anchorage ››› page 307

# Rear exterior view




**Driving assistance sensors** ››› page 174

1. Rear view camera.
2. Park assist sensors
3. Rear radars.
4. Park assist sensor.

Ⓐ **Rear lid**

Opening from outside ››› page 111

Emergency opening ››› page 111

Ⓑ **Charging socket**

Charging process display ››› page 79

Emergency unlocking

Ⓒ **Opening and closing**

Doors ››› page 108

Central locking ››› page 103

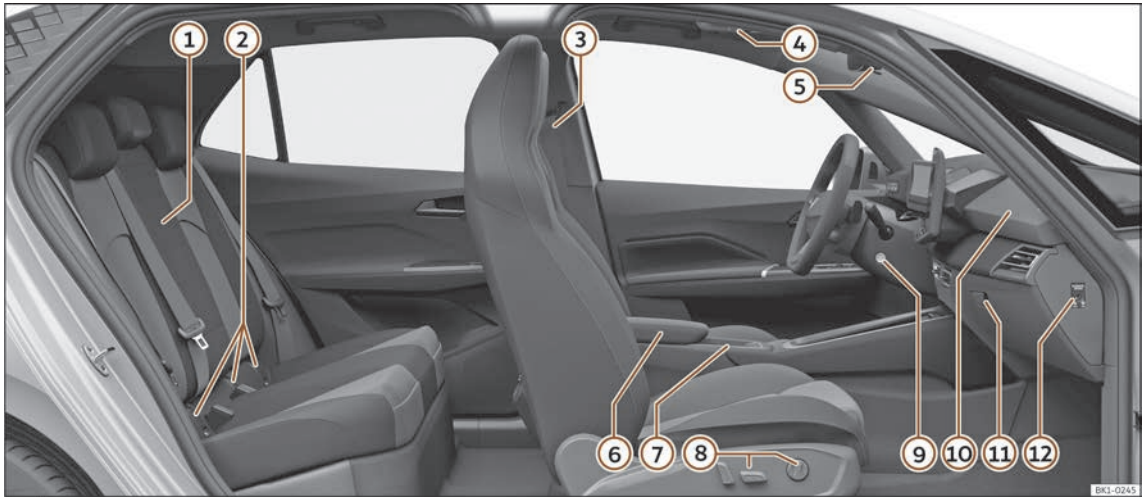
Emergency lock ››› page 109

Ⓓ **Action in the event of a puncture**

Tyre mobility system ››› page 339

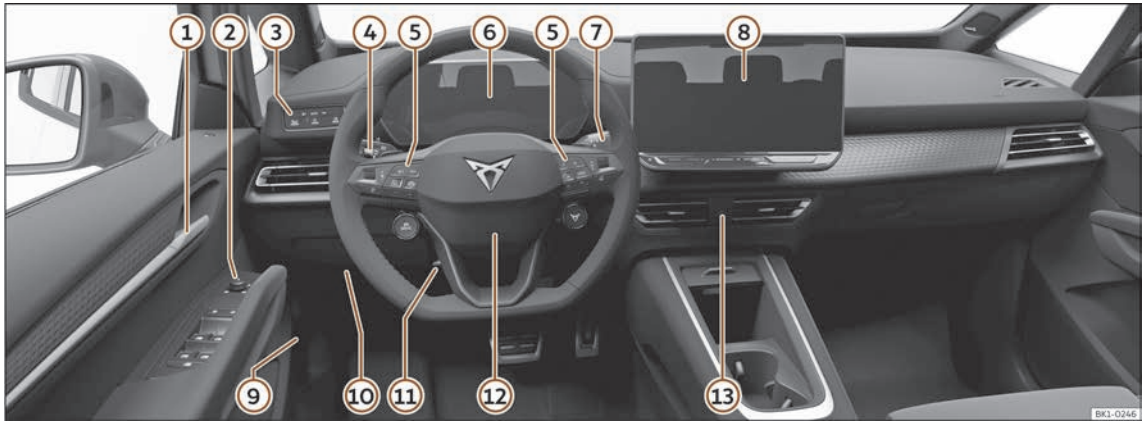
Wheel change ››› page 333

# Interior view




1. Armrest ››› page 124
2. Isofix anchors ››› page 59
3. Seat belts ››› page 41
4. Sunshade blind
5. Interior mirror ››› page 137
6. Armrest with emergency starter housing ››› page 163
7. Connectivity Box / Wireless Charger
8. Seat adjustment ››› page 117
9. Start button ››› page 160
10. Front passenger airbag ››› page 51
11. Glove compartment ››› page 237
12. Disconnecting the front passenger airbag ››› page 52

# Overview (left hand drive)




1. Door handle
2. Central locking >>> page 103

   Exterior mirror adjustment >>> page 137

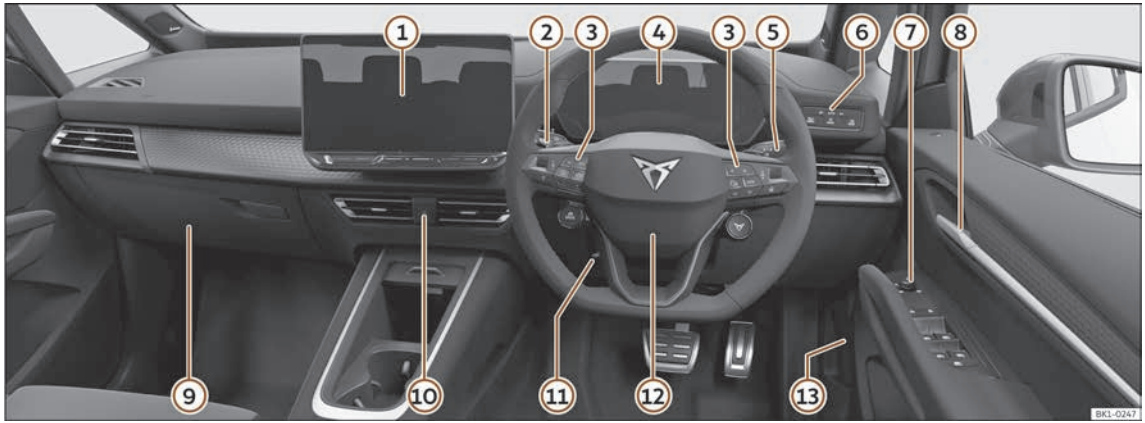
   Power windows >>> page 112
3. Control for lighting and demisting windows >>> page 126
4. Turn signal and main beam lever >>> page 127

   Wipers and rear window wiper >>> page 134
5. Multifunction steering wheel control panels >>> page 115
6. Instrument cluster >>> page 16

   Control lamps >>> page 11
7. Gear selector >>> page 163

   Electronic parking brake >>> page 209
8. Infotainment system >>> page 30,
9. Open bonnet lever >>> page 316
10. Fuses >>> page 308
11. Steering wheel adjustment >>> page 116
12. Steering wheel with horn and driver front airbag >>> page 51
13. Hazard warning lights >>> page 66

# Overview (right hand drive)




① Infotainment system ››› page 30,

② Turn signal and main beam lever ››› page 127

Wipers and rear window wiper ››› page 134

③ Multifunction steering wheel control panels ››› page 115

④ Instrument cluster ››› page 16

Control lamps ››› page 11

⑤ Gear selector ››› page 163

Electronic parking brake ››› page 209

⑥ Control for lighting and demisting windows ››› page 126

⑦ Central locking ››› page 103

Exterior mirror adjustment ››› page 137

Power windows ››› page 112

⑧ Door handle

⑨ Fuses ››› page 308

⑩ Hazard warning lights ››› page 66

⑪ Steering wheel adjustment ››› page 116

⑫ Steering wheel with horn and driver front airbag ››› page 51

⑬ Open bonnet lever ››› page 316

# Driver information

## Control lamps

### Control and warning lamps

The warning and control lights can be lit individually or in combination and serve as a warning, to indicate the presence of an anomaly or to warn of the activation of certain functions. Some turn on when the ignition is switched on and must turn off after a certain period of time.

**Warning with priority 1:**

- The red central warning lamp lights up or flashes, possibly accompanied by additional audio warnings or symbols. **Stop driving! Danger!** Check the faulty function. Seek specialist assistance as soon as possible.

**Warning with priority 2:**

- The yellow central warning lamp lights up or flashes, possibly accompanied by additional audio warnings or symbols. Operating faults or the lack of operating fluids can cause damage to the vehicle or a fault. Check the faulty function as soon as possible and, if necessary, contact a specialist workshop immediately.

CUPRA recommends visiting an Official CUPRA Service.

**Lamps with other colours:**

- Green, blue, white and grey: Information on other systems.

The control lamps that light up on the light control are explained in chapter ››› page 126, *Lights*.

**WARNING**

**If the warning lamps and messages are ignored, faults may occur in the vehicle, it may stall in traffic, or accidents and serious injuries may occur.**

- **Never ignore warning lamps or text messages.**
- **Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place.**

**Note**

**If there are several warnings, the corresponding symbols will light up for a few seconds and remain lit until the cause is eliminated.**

**If when switching on the ignition warnings are shown about existing faults, it might not be possible to change the settings or show the information as described. If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.**

**CUPRA recommends visiting an Official CUPRA Service.**

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Stop driving!<br>Central warning lamp ››› page 21 |
| | Fasten your seat belt ››› page 41 |
| | Electronic parking brake on ››› page 209 |
| | Deep discharge of the high-voltage battery ››› page 81 |
| | Stop driving!<br>Fault in the brake system ››› page 170 |
| | Stop driving<br>Brake fluid level low ››› page 321 |
| | Stop driving!<br>The electromechanical brake servo is not working ››› page 173 |
| | Take control of the vehicle and be ready to brake! ››› page 184 |
| | Stop driving<br>Fault in the motor coolant fluid system ››› page 320 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Stop driving!<br>Steering anomaly >>> page 166 |
| | Stop driving!<br>Fault in the high voltage system >>> page 80, >>> page 165, >>> page 306 |
| | Stop driving!<br>12 volt battery >>> page 325 |
| | High-voltage battery empty - Driving impossible >>> page 159 |
| | Health risk! Open the windows! CO2 concentration too high >>> page 149 |
| | Collision warning >>> page 192 |
| | Take control of the steering immediately >>> page 203 |
| SOS | Emergency Assist active with lane guidance >>> page 204 |
| SOS | Emergency Assist active without lane guidance >>> page 204 |
| | Intervention by proactive occupant protection system >>> page 47 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Central warning lamp >>> page 21 |
| SOS | Emergency call restricted >>> page 71 |
| | Error_ emergency call >>> page 71 |
| | Proactive occupant protection not available or with limited operation >>> page 48 |
| | Fault in the airbag system or the seat belt tensioners >>> page 50, >>> page 50 |
| | Range calculation failure >>> page 82 |
| OFF | Front passenger airbag off >>> page 50 |
| ON | Front passenger airbag on >>> page 50 |
| | Please check brake pad >>> page 170 |
| | Brakes too hot >>> page 210 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Lights up: fault in the electronic stability control (ESC) >>> page 173 |
| | Flashing: Electronic stability control (ESC) or Traction Control (TCS) regulating >>> page 173 |
| OFF | ESC control lamp in Sport mode, or ESC switched off manually >>> page 172 |
| ABS | ABS fault >>> page 173 |
| | Fault in the electronic parking brake >>> page 210 |
| | Fault in the electromechanical brake servo >>> page 173 |
| | Lane departure warning not available >>> page 203 |
| | Travel Assist not available >>> page 202 |
| | Fault in the vehicle's lighting >>> page 131 |
| | Rear fog light on >>> page 126 |
| | The air conditioning does not work or the CO2 concentration cannot be measured >>> page 149 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Health risk! Open the windows! CO2 concentration too high ››› page 149 |
| | Rain and light sensor fault ››› page 136 |
| | Windscreen wiper fault ››› page 136 |
| | Windscreen washer fluid level too low ››› page 136 |
| | Steering anomaly ››› page 166 |
| | Fault in the tyre pressure loss indicator ››› page 339 |
| | STOP Stop driving! Low tyre pressure ››› page 339 |
| | Fault in the electric drive system ››› page 163, ››› page 165 |
| | Central locking malfunction ››› page 106 |
| | Reduced power ››› page 160 |
| | e-Sound system fault ››› page 163 |
| | Front Assist not available or with limitations ››› page 194 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| OFF | Front Assist deactivated ››› page 195 |
| | Cruise control fault (GRA) ››› page 179 |
| LIM | Speed limiter not available ››› page 181 |
| | Adaptive cruise control (ACC) not available ››› page 188 |
| SOS | Emergency Assist unavailable ››› page 204 |
| | Lane Assist not available ››› page 198 |
| | Limited driver assistance now. Front sensors without visibility ››› page 198 |
| | Lane Assist (lane keeping system) regulating ››› page 197 |
| OFF | Lane Assist deactivated ››› page 197 |
| | Drowsiness monitor limited or not available ››› page 24 |
| | Fault in driver attention monitor warning ››› page 26 |
| | Driver attention monitor not available ››› page 26 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Exit Warning not available ››› page 177 |
| | Side Assist (lane change assistance system) not available ››› page 177 |
| | Road sign recognition limited or not available ››› page 29 |
| | Rear Cross Traffic Alert not available ››› page 177 |
| | Battery / 12V power supply ››› page 325 |
| | Low state of charge of the high voltage battery ››› page 82 |
| | High voltage battery discharged ››› page 81 |
| | Dynamic chassis control fault ››› page 169 |
| HOLD | Auto Hold active ››› page 211 |
| | Turn signals ››› page 131 |
| | Cruise control (GRA) ››› page 179 |
| LIM | Speed limiter active ››› page 180 |
| | Lane Assist (lane keeping system) active. ››› page 197 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| READY | Vehicle ready to drive ››› page 161 |
| | Travel Assist active ››› page 199 |
| | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulating, no vehicle detected ahead ››› page 186 |
| | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulating, vehicle detected ahead ››› page 186 |
| | Vehicle charging ››› page 80 |
| | Adjustment due to the road layout ››› page 191 |
| | Adjustment due to a roundabout ››› page 191 |
| | Adjustment due to a junction ››› page 191 |
| | Adjustment due to a speed limit ››› page 190 |
| | Adjustment due to the end of a traffic jam ››› page 191 |
| km/h | Adjustment due to a speed limit ››› page 190 |
| | Adjustment due to red traffic light ››› page 191 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Adjustment due to a green traffic light ››› page 191 |
| STOP | Adjustment due to a Stop sign ››› page 191 |
| | Response to local average speed. ››› page 191 |
| | Main beam on or flasher on ››› page 128 |
| A | Main beam assist active ››› page 129 |
| | The cruise control system is switched on, but regulation is not active ››› page 179 |
| LIM | The speed limiter is not active ››› page 180 |
| | Lane Assist not ready to regulate ››› page 197 |
| | Travel Assist active, adaptive cruise control (ACC) active and adaptive lane guidance function passive. ››› page 199 |
| | Lane assist active, manoeuvre available (highlighted arrow direction) ››› page 202 |
| | Lane assist active, manoeuvre not available. ››› page 202 |

| Symbol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Lane assist active, manoeuvre in execution ››› page 202 |
| | State of charge of the high-voltage battery ››› page 17 |
| | Exterior temperature below +4 °C (+39 °F) ››› page 20 |
| | Take your foot off the accelerator ››› page 183 |
| | Approaching a junction on the left ››› page 183 |
| | Approaching a junction on the right ››› page 183 |
| | Approaching a motorway slip road or exit ››› page 183 |
| | Approaching a roundabout ››› page 183 |
| | Approaching a junction ››› page 184 |
| | Approaching a left curve ››› page 184 |
| | Approaching a right curve ››› page 184 |
| 50 | Approaching a speed limit. ››› page 184 |

| Sym-bol | Meaning |
|---|---|
| | Main beam assist on ››› page 129 |
| | Take control of the steering ››› page 203 |
| | Speed warning system partially de-activated ››› page 30 |
| | Front Assist connecting ››› page 194 |
| | Distance warning ››› page 192 |
| | Range drive profile ››› page 168 |
| | Comfort drive profile ››› page 168 |
| | CUPRA drive profile ››› page 168 |
| | Performance drive profile ››› page 168 |
| | Individual drive profile ››› page 168 |
| | Reference to information in the on-board documentation ››› page 21 |
| | Service intervals display ››› page 21 |

# Instrument cluster

## Introduction

After switching the drive system on with a 12-volt battery that is heavily discharged or newly replaced, some system settings (such as the time, the date, the personalised comfort settings and the programming) might be altered or deleted. Check and correct these settings once the battery is sufficiently charged.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury.**

- **Do not operate the instrument cluster controls when driving.**
- **To reduce the risk of accident and injury, only make adjustments to the instructions on the instrument cluster display and to the instructions on the Infotainment system display when the vehicle is stationary.**

## Digital instrument panel

**Fig. 1** Digital instrument cluster on the dashboard: Classic view

① Range

② Screen displays >>> page 19.

③ Speedometer

④ Battery state of charge >>> page 17.

⑤ Selector lever position >>> page 163.

The Digital Cockpit features a high-resolution colour LCD. In addition to the speedometer, by selecting different information profiles you can display information from the assist systems, among other things.

### Adjusting the views

Using the multifunction steering wheel button VIEW, you can access four instrument cluster display modes.

To switch between views, briefly press the VIEW button.

### View content

The instrument cluster can display the following content within each view (except the CUPRA view, which is unique):

- **Driving data:** Shows driving data.
- **Range:** Shows vehicle range data.
- **Navigation:** Representation with information about the guided route and speed. Active driver assist system data is hidden.
- **Driver assist systems:** Shows active driver assist and speed. Navigation data is hidden.

To switch between content, press the ◁ or ▷ keys on the multifunction steering wheel.

### Incidents on the digital instrument cluster

Information and warnings are displayed on the digital instrument cluster as incidents. Warnings are shown on the left of the instrument cluster and are hidden again after a time.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any distraction affecting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.**

- **Operating the digital instrument cluster can distract your attention from the traffic.**
- **Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.**

## Battery state of charge and range on the digital instrument cluster

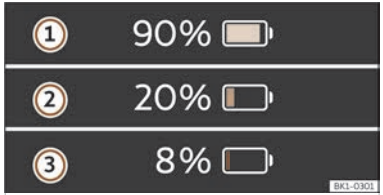



**Fig. 2** In the digital instrument cluster: battery state of charge.

### Battery state of charge indication

The current state of charge of the high-voltage battery is indicated by the symbol on the digital instrument cluster. The battery symbol will be more or less full depending on the state of charge of the battery.

### Reserve area ››› Fig. 2

1. Battery state of charge, charge percentage.
2. Reserve indication (warning level 1), state-of-charge percentage.
3. Reserve indication (warning level 2), state-of-charge percentage.

Reserve area warning levels:

**Yellow** The battery state of charge is lower than 20 %.

**Red** The battery state of charge is lower than 10 %.
Charge the high-voltage battery as soon as possible to prevent the vehicle from stopping ››› ⚠.

### Range indication

The vehicle range is displayed in kilometres (km) or miles (mi) depending on the selected setting.

The displayed value is calculated and updated based on the driving style and ambient conditions. Hence, the range may vary even with the high-voltage battery fully charged.

**Note**

**If the outside temperature is very low and, therefore, the high-voltage battery is very cold, the range may be reduced.**

### Remaining battery charge time indicator

During an active charging process, the remaining charging time to the desired state of charge is displayed on the instrument cluster. This information is only displayed if the ignition is off (by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button).

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle is driven with a very low charge level of the high-voltage battery, the vehicle may stall in traffic, causing serious damage or accidents and injuries.**

- **Always ensure that the charge level of the high-voltage battery is sufficient!**

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the high-voltage battery charge level reaches the reserve level, it is possible that certain driving properties may vary, i.e. the acceleration behaviour of the vehicle.**

- **Always adapt the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions, as well as the charge level of the high-voltage battery.**

**NOTICE**

**The self-discharge of the high-voltage battery, for example due to the vehicle being parked for several months, can cause damage to the battery in the event of high ambient temperature and the battery having a low charge level.**

- **Always ensure that the charge level of the high-voltage battery is sufficient!**

## Power display

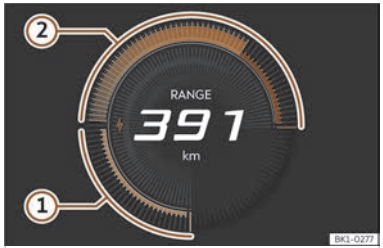



**Fig. 3** On the digital instrument cluster: power display (schematic representation).

The power display shows the current electric motor power availability and the current drive power.

### Display system

Using circular segments, the power indicator permanently shows the availability of brake energy recuperation ››› **Fig. 3** ① (green) and the availability of propulsion ››› **Fig. 3** ② (blue).

When the corresponding section of the segment reaches the end mark, availability is unlimited. If there is a limitation, the segment is shortened accordingly.

Current propulsion power is shown dynamically by a lighter coloured bar, either as recuperation power (light green) or as propulsion power (light blue).

When the current drive power and current power availability are the same (the segments are the same length), the power limit of the electric motor has been reached.

**Note**

**The power limit cannot be reached at any speed.**

### Relevant factors

Aside from the speed of the vehicle, the following factors are also relevant:

- The availability of drive and recuperation depends on the state of charge of the high voltage battery. If its state of charge is high, recuperation may be limited; if it is low, drive may be limited.
- If the temperature of the high voltage battery is very low or very high, the available drive power may be reduced in general. This affects drive and recuperation.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving properties may vary when the electric motor's available power is low or the state of charge of the high-voltage battery reaches its reserve level, e.g. the vehicle's acceleration behaviour.**

- **Always adapt the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions, as well as the charge level of the high-voltage battery.**

**Note**

**The power limit cannot be reached at any speed.**

## Head-up-Display (HUD)

**Fig. 4** In the driver's field of view: Proximity HUD ① and AR HUD ②.

The Head-up-Display (HUD) projects certain information or warnings from assistance systems or the infotainment system into the driver's field of view.

### Display areas

Explanations of the areas displayed on the Head-up-Display ››› **Fig. 4**:

- **Proximity HUD.** Information on speed, navigation and assist systems is displayed on the proximity HUD ①.

- **Augmented reality HUD (AR)** The AR ② HUD can project indications directly into the field of view of the driver, depending on the driving situation. This is used, for example, for navigation.

The amount and content of the information displayed may vary depending on the equipment.

### Switching the Head-up-Display on and off

The Head-up-Display can be switched on and off in the infotainment system's vehicle settings menu.

- In the **Vehicle** main menu, select **Displays** and press the **Head-up Display** function button.
- Switch the Head-up-Display on or off as desired. Activated functions are highlighted in colour.

To switch the AR-HUD display on or off, press and hold the button VIEW on the multifunction steering wheel;››› page 115 the proximity HUD information remains visible in this case. Press and hold the button VIEW again to display the AR-HUD once more.

The AR-HUD display can also be switched on or off via the HUD settings menu.

### Height setting

To adapt the vertical position of the image to your individual seating position, the Head-up-Display can be set in the infotainment system's vehicle settings menu.

1. Sit comfortably on the seat.
2. In the vehicle settings of the infotainment system you can also adjust the rotation of the proximity area.

### Infotainment system settings

It is possible to change more of the Head-up-Display settings in the displays settings menu in the infotainment system.

The following settings can also be adjusted:

In the **Head-up-Display settings** submenu:

- Adjustment of the light intensity of Head-up-Display indications. The intensity is automatically reduced as the ambient brightness decreases. The basic brightness is adjusted via the Head-up Display's settings menu.
- Selection of the indications to be shown on the Head-up-Display, e.g. driver assistant system indications.
- There is an alternative combination of colours for the Head-up-Display for adverse weather conditions, e.g. if it snows.

**Note**

- **Some indications, such as warnings, cannot be hidden.**
- **For optimal viewing of the display, correctly adjust the seat and the height of the Head-up-Display.**
- **Light falling on it can cause reflections. Wearing sunglasses with polarizing filters may prevent you from seeing the indications properly.**
- **Only clean the Head-up-Display with a soft cloth and a mild cleaning product. Microfibre cloths can scratch the Head-up-Display.**

## Status display

### Possible indications on the instrument cluster display

The digital instrument cluster can display a variety of information, superimposed according to the vehicle's equipment:

- Doors, front bonnet and rear lid open
- Warning and information messages ››› page 20
- Navigation indications
- Outside temperature indicator
- Service interval indicator
- Range indication
- Speed warning
- Speed warning for winter tyres

- Signs detected by the road signal detection system ››› page 26
- Remaining charge time when charging the high-voltage battery

### Doors, front bonnet and rear lid open

When the vehicle is unlocked and while driving, the instrument cluster display shows if any of the doors, the front bonnet or rear lid are opened and. In some cases this is also indicated by an audible warning.

### Outside temperature indicator

If the outside temperature is lower than approximately +4°C (+39°F), the "ice crystal symbol" ❄on the outside temperature display also lights up. This symbol remains lit until the outside temperature exceeds +6 °C (+43 °F) ››› ⚠.

In the following situations, the displayed outside temperature may be higher than the actual temperature due to the heat emitted by the motor:

- When the vehicle is stationary
- When driving very slowly

### Odometer

The *odometer* records the total distance travelled by the vehicle.

### Speed warning for winter tyres

If the maximum set speed is exceeded, this is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

The speed warning can be set in the infotainment system ››› page 34.

### Range indication

It indicates the approximate distance in km that can still be travelled with the current battery charge capacity if the same driving style and consumption are maintained. The calculation is made based on current energy consumption, among other factors.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Even when the outside temperature is higher than freezing, some roads and bridges could be frozen.**

- **The "ice crystal symbol" indicates that there may be a risk of freezing.**
- **At outside temperatures above +4 °C (+39 °F), there may be ice even when the "ice crystal symbol" is not on.**
- **The outside temperature sensor takes a guideline measurement.**

**Note**

- **Some indications on the instrument cluster display may be concealed by a sudden event, e.g. an incoming call.**
- **Depending on the equipment, some settings and instructions can be changed or displayed on the infotainment system as well.**
- **If there are several warnings at the same time, the symbols will be displayed one after the other for a few seconds. The symbols will stay on until you remove the cause.**
- **If warnings are shown about existing faults when the ignition is switched on, it might not be possible to change the settings or display the information as described. In this case, go to a specialised workshop and request a repair.**

## Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions when the ignition is switched on and while the vehicle is moving. Faults are displayed on the instrument cluster display as red and yellow warning symbols ››› page 11 accompanied by messages and, depending on the case, even an audible warning. The representation of the messages and symbols may vary depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

### Priority 1 warning (red)

The symbol lights up or flashes (sometimes accompanied by audible warnings). **Stop driving!** Danger! Check the fault and eliminate the cause. If necessary, seek professional assistance.

### Priority 2 warning (yellow)

The symbol lights up or flashes (sometimes accompanied by audible warnings). Operating faults or the lack of operating fluids can cause damage to the vehicle or a fault. Check the faulty function as soon as possible. If necessary, seek professional assistance.

### Reference to information in the owner's manual

Further information on any warnings can be found in the owner's manual.

### Information message

It provides information about processes in the vehicle.

## Date and time

### Setting the time on the infotainment system

- Press ⠿ > ⚙ **Settings** ››› page 30.
- Select the menu option **Date and time**.
- Select the time source: **Automatic** or **Manual**.

The time and date are only displayed in the infotainment system.

## Service Menu

In the Service menu various settings can be adjusted depending on the features.

### Open the Service menu

- Open the **Vehicle** main menu of the infotainment system.
- In the **Vehicle** menu, press the **Status** function button.
- Open the desired menu and set as desired. Activated functions are highlighted in colour.
- Press the Home button to return to the previous menu.

### Reset the trip counter

In the **Service** view, select the **Trip counter** menu.

Press the **0.0** function button to reset the value.

### Display the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

- In the main menu **Vehicle**, select **Vehicle > Exterior**. The vehicle identification number (VIN) is displayed.

## Service intervals

The service interval indicator appears on the instrument cluster display and in the infotainment system.

### Inspection reminder

If a service or an inspection has to be carried out soon, a **service reminder** will be displayed when the ignition is switched on.

The figure shows the kilometres that can still be travelled or the time until the next service.

### Service due

When **the time for a service** or an **inspection** comes, an audible warning will be emitted when the ignition is switched on and the fixed key symbol may appear on the instrument cluster for a few seconds, along with one of the following messages:

- **Service now!**
- **Inspection due now!**
- **Inspection in xx km (mi)!**
- **Inspection in xx days!**

**Consulting the service date in the infotainment system**

- Open the **Vehicle** main menu.
- Select the **Status** function button.
- To view service information, select the **Service interval** menu option.

**Resetting the service interval indicator**

The service interval indicator can only be reset by a specialist workshop as part of an inspection.

> **Note**
>
> **The service message turns off in a few seconds if the drive system is on, or when the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel is pressed.**

# Smartlight

Smartlight is a smart light system that provides you with additional vehicle status information. When the drive system is switched on, while driving Smartlight provides information on the current driving situation using different colours and light animations.

Smartlight displays information and warnings for the following systems and functions:

- Basic features.
- Navigation.
- Infotainment.
- Driving and manoeuvring.

> **Note**
>
> **Some of the selection options may not have any function assigned to them.**
>
> **The displayed information can be changed and expanded by an (*Over-the-air update*)** >>> page 241.

**Infotainment system settings**

Certain Smartlight functions can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings of the infotainment system.

Activated functions are highlighted in colour.

1. Press < to return to the previous menu.

**Lighting intensity**

1. Press the function button **Vehicle > Interior > Smartlight**.
2. Adjust the lighting intensity with the touch slider.
3. Press < to return to the previous menu.

# Drowsiness monitor

## Introduction

**Fig. 5** On the instrument cluster display: Drowsiness monitor symbol.

**The drowsiness monitor informs the driver whether their driving style indicates fatigue.**

The drowsiness monitor evaluates driver behaviour at the wheel and uses this information to assess driver fatigue. If the system detects that the driver is tired, it indicates this visually on the instrument cluster display by means of a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message. It also issues an audible warning >>> page 23. The text message on the instrument cluster display is displayed for 4 to 6 seconds.

**Operating conditions**

The drowsiness monitor only displays alerts at speeds above 70 km/h.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The drowsiness monitor is not a substitute for driver attention and operates only within system limits. Therefore, the drowsiness monitor may not detect driver fatigue in all situations and may fail to warn, warn late or warn undesirably. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.**

- **Always pay proper attention and do not rely solely on the system. The driver is responsible for his or her fitness to drive at all times.**
- **Note the limits of the system** >>> page 23.
- **Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.**
- **During long journeys, take regular and sufficient breaks.**
- **Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond as prompted** >>> page 23.

## System limits affecting the drowsiness monitor

The drowsiness monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the drowsiness monitor or prevent it completely:

- Speeds below 65 km/h.
- Speeds over 130 km/h.
- Roads with many curves.
- Roads in poor condition.
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Roadworks.
- Sporty driving style.
- The driver is distracted.

**Note**

**The drowsiness monitor has been developed for exclusive use while driving on motorways and primary roads in good condition.**

### Drowsiness monitor reset

The drowsiness monitor resets in the following situations:

- If the ignition is switched off.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The vehicle has been stopped for more than 30 minutes.

## Driving with the drowsiness monitor

### Connection and disconnection

Depending on the country, the drowsiness monitor switches on whenever the vehicle's drive system is activated. In this case, the infotainment system displays an overview of the individual systems and automatically activated functions in the input menu.

If desired, you can switch the drowsiness monitor off manually in the infotainment system:

1. Open the main menu **Assist systems**.
2. Switch the drowsiness monitor on/off in the relevant sub-menu >>> page 34.

### Sensitivity adjustment

You can adjust drowsiness monitor sensitivity manually to influence how quickly the system reacts to your driving behaviour.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the main menu **Assist systems**.
2. Open **Drowsiness Monitor**.
3. Select the sensitivity in the **Sensitivity** sub-menu>>> page 34.

### Concealing messages via the multi-function steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

## Drowsiness monitor – warning levels

If the system detects that the driver is tired, it indicates this visually on the instrument cluster display by means of a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and an audible warning. The warning is issued at three levels.

**Drowsiness monitor - Level 1**

The system has detected that the driver is becoming tired. An audible signal sounds. A white control lamp and a text message are shown on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

**Drowsiness monitor - Level 2**

The system has detected that the driver is becoming increasingly tired. An audible signal sounds. A red warning lamp is shown on the instrument cluster display together with a text message. Consider taking a break soon.

**Drowsiness monitor - Level 3**

Serious risk identified. An audible signal sounds. A red warning lamp is shown on the instrument cluster display together with a text message. Serious traffic risk. Stop driving as soon as possible and proceed urgently to the nearest place where you can take a break.

**Time-related information**

The drowsiness monitor detects that the driver has been driving for 4.5 hours without a break and without drowsiness having been recognised. A white control lamp and a text message are shown on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

## Troubleshooting

**The availability of the drowsiness monitor is restricted**

An audible signal sounds. A yellow control light appears along with a text message on the instrument cluster display. The availability of the drowsiness monitor is restricted.

- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

**The drowsiness monitor is not available**

An audible signal sounds. A yellow control lamp appears in combination with the yellow centre lamp. A text message is also shown on the instrument cluster display and in the **vehicle status** menu.

- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system. Check the drowsiness monitor settings in the infotainment system >>> page 34.
- The system limits have been exceeded.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

# Attention monitor

## Introduction

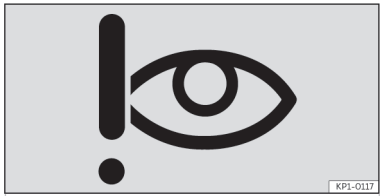



**Fig. 6** On the instrument cluster display: Attention monitor symbol.

**The attention monitor informs the driver whether their behaviour at the wheel indicates a lack of attention based on gaze direction and vehicle operating inputs.**

The attention monitor evaluates vehicle operating inputs to determine whether the driver is distracted. In addition, an interior camera fitted to the rear view mirror continuously monitor's the driver's state and actions, as well as where they are looking.

If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it indicates this on the instrument cluster display by a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message. Depending on the configuration, it also emits an audible warning >>> page 26.

The text message on the instrument cluster display is displayed for 3 to 6 seconds.

**Note**

**Depending on the country, the vehicle may include an interior rear-view-mirror camera that supplies additional data to the function** >>> page 176**. The camera records and stores only the data required for closed-loop system operation. Therefore, no information is sent outside the vehicle system. No personal data are processed.**

### Operating conditions

Driving behaviour is only assessed when the speed is higher than 20 km/h.

**WARNING**

**The attention monitor is not a substitute for driver attention and operates only within system limits. Therefore, the attention monitor may not detect driver attention in all situations and may fail to react, react late or react in an undesirable manner. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.**

- **Always pay proper attention and do not rely solely on the system. The driver is responsible for his or her fitness to drive at all times.**
- **Note the limits of the system** >>> page 25**.**
- **Avoid distractions while driving.**
- **Adjust the vehicle's personal settings before starting the journey.**
- **Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond as prompted** >>> page 26**.**

**Note**

**In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.**

## System limits affecting the attention monitor

The attention monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the attention monitor or prevent it completely:

- Speeds below 20 km/h.
- Severe driver distraction due to external influences such as traffic.
- Severe driver distraction due to actions not related to the vehicle (for example, using a mobile device).
- Insufficient facial recognition.
- Complex driving situations requiring rapid eye movement (junctions, merging onto motorways, etc.)
- Restrictions to the view of the interior camera (on the rear view mirror) towards the driver - particularly the driver's eyes and head. This can be due to darkening caused by peaked caps, scarves, glasses (particularly glasses that block IR rays) or the sun visor.
- If the interior camera on the rear view mirror is dazzled, e.g. by sunlight.
- If the rear view mirror is incorrectly adjusted.
- If the interior rear view mirror glass is fogged, dirty or damaged.
- If the driver is in an unsuitable sitting position.
- If the driver has physical limitations (e.g. eye movement disorders).

## Driving with the attention monitor

### Connection and disconnection

You can switch the attention monitor on and off manually.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the main menu **Assist systems**.
2. Switch the attention monitor on/off in the relevant sub-menu >>> page 34.
3. **OR:** Via the quick access menu using the scroll bar >>> page 30.

**Note**

**Depending on the country, the function is always switched on when the ignition is switched on.**

**Concealing messages via the multi-function steering wheel**

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

## Control lamp and system warnings

If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it indicates this on the instrument cluster display by a control or warning lamp in combination with a supplementary text message. Depending on the configuration, it also emits an audible warning.

Distraction detected.
Depending on the configuration, an audible warning may be issued. A white control lamp and a text message are shown on the instrument cluster display. “Pay attention to traffic”.

## Troubleshooting

**Availability of the attention monitor is restricted**

An audible warning is issued. A yellow control light appears along with a text message on the instrument cluster display. The availability of the attention monitor is restricted.

- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

**The attention monitor is not available**

An audible warning is issued. The yellow warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster in combination with the central yellow lamp. A text message is also shown on the instrument cluster display and in the **vehicle status** menu.

- Check the causes and corrective measures described in the attention monitor information >>> page 34.
- Fault or malfunction. Deactivate and reactivate the vehicle drive system. Check the attention monitor settings in the infotainment system >>> page 34.
- The system limits have been exceeded.
- If the problem persists, visit a duly qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

# Road signs detection system

## Introduction

The dynamic road sign display system records standard traffic signs by means of a camera located in the upper central area of the windscreen, housed in the compartment at the base of the interior mirror, and reports any speed restrictions, overtaking prohibitions and warning signs that it recognises[1].

Within its limitations, the system also displays a additional sign to indicate aspects such as temporary prohibitions. Even on routes without signs, the system can, if necessary, display the applicable speed limits.

Road sign recognition does not work in all countries. Keep this in mind when travelling abroad.

The additional signs are displayed on the Head-up-Display and on the instrument cluster as generic additional signs.

[1] Not available in all markets.

### Shown on the display

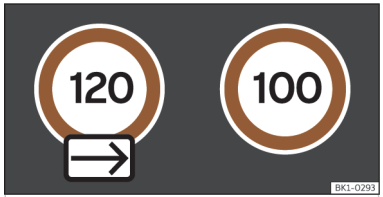



**Fig. 7** On the instrument cluster display: example of speed limits with a generic additional sign.

In Germany, on motorways and normal roads for vehicles, besides speed limits and overtaking provisions the system also displays end of restriction signs. In all other countries the currently valid speed limit is displayed instead.

The road signs detected by the system are displayed on the instrument cluster display ››› **Fig. 7** and, depending on the navigation system fitted in the vehicle, in the infotainment system as well .

Depending on the equipment, an indication is also displayed on the Head-up-Display.

### Display of road signs

After checking and evaluating the information from the camera, the infotainment system and actual vehicle data, the system displays up to two current road signs, and an additional sign ››› **Fig. 7**:

- **First**: The sign that is currently valid for the driver is displayed on the left hand side of the screen, e.g. a prohibition of driving at over 120 km/h (75 mph).
- **Second**: Another road sign, such as a warning sign, can be displayed in second place.
- **Additional sign**: If an additional sign is detected, e.g. for temporary limits, it is shown below the valid road sign.

The valid road sign is displayed on the Head-up-Display by the generic additional sign.

The warning sign display is not available in all countries and the system may not be able to detect all existing warning signs.

### No entry sign

The road sign recognition system gives a warning on the instrument cluster when a no entry sign is passed on a one-way road or an entrance to a motorway or highway.

### STOP signs and traffic lights

Depending on equipment, the traffic sign recognition system can warn when approaching Stop signs and traffic lights.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The technology in the road sign detection system cannot change the limits imposed by the laws of physics and only works within the system's limits. The increased convenience provided by the dynamic road sign display system should not lead you to take any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Poor visibility, darkness, snow, rain and fog may result in the system not displaying road signs, or not displaying them correctly.**
- **If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the operation of the system may be affected.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The driving recommendations and traffic indications shown on the road sign detection system may differ from the actual current traffic situation.**

- **The system cannot recognise or display all road signs correctly.**
- **Road signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the system.**

## Limited operation

The road sign detection system has certain limitations. The following cases may cause the system to function in a limited way or not at all:

- Poor visibility, e.g. in snow, rain, fog or intense mist.
- Dazzling, e.g. caused by head-on traffic or by the sun.
- Driving at high speed.
- If the camera is covered or dirty.
- If the road signs are partially or totally obstructed, e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles.
- Non-compliant road signs.
- Damaged or bent road signs.
- Variable message signs on signalling gantries (variable indication of road signs by LEDs or other lighting units).
- If outdated maps are used in the navigation system.
- Adhesives affixed to vehicles that depict road signs, e.g. speed limits on lorries.

## Driving with the speed warning function

### Operating conditions

The speed warning function gives warnings at speeds above 20 km/h.

### Connection and disconnection

Depending on the country, the speed warning function is always activated when the vehicle's drive system is switched on. In this case, the infotainment system displays an overview of the individual systems and automatically activated functions in the input menu.

If desired, you can deactivate the speed warning manually in the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Switch the speed warning on or off in the corresponding submenu.

### Activating and deactivating the audible warning

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open the **Speed warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the audible warning under the corresponding option ››› page 34.

**Note**

**The audible warning is activated whenever the vehicle's drive system is activated.**

### Adjusting the warning thresholds

You can manually adjust the warning thresholds of the speed warning function.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open the **Speed warning**.
3. To select the level of the warning thresholds, tap ❮ or ❯ in the **Overtaking warning** ››› page 34 menu option.

**Note**

**When the vehicle's drive system is activated, the warning thresholds for the speed warning are always reset to the default value.**

### Activation and deactivation of the speed change warning tone

The speed change warning tone provides the driver with audible information about a change in the speed limits. If desired, you can manually switch off the change tone.

In the infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assistance systems** menu.
2. Open the **Speed warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the change tone under the corresponding option ››› page 34.

### Concealing fault messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

## Speed warning function warning levels

If the system detects that the speed limit has been exceeded, it will indicate this visually on the instrument cluster display by flashing the speed limit detected by the system and, depending on the configuration, will also issue an audible warning. A warning is issued at two levels.

**Fig. 8** On the instrument cluster display: violation of the detected speed limit (illustration).

### Speed warning - Level 1

Speed limit violation detected. The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously on the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, on the front display ››› **Fig. 8**.

### Speed warning - Level 2

Progressive violation of the speed limit has been detected.

An audible signal sounds. The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously on the instrument cluster and, depending on the equipment, on the front display ››› **Fig. 8**.

**Note**

- **The second warning level is activated if the speed remains above the limit.**
- **The second warning level is cancelled again when the driver actively reduces the speed.**

## Troubleshooting

### Advanced road sign recognition is not available

A yellow control lamp appears on the instrument cluster display in combination with the central yellow lamp. A text message is also shown on the instrument cluster display and in the **vehicle status** menu.

Road sign detection system messages:

- **"Dynamic road sign assist: please clean the windscreen."**
  - The windscreen is dirty in the area of the camera or the camera view is impaired by weather conditions. Clean the windscreen ››› **page 345**.
  - The camera's view is impaired by added parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera clear ››› **page 174**.
  - The camera has been moved or damaged, for example due to damage to the windscreen. Check whether the damage can be seen.
- **"Error: dynamic road sign assist"**
  - There is a fault in the system. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.
- **"Speed warning is currently unavailable"**
  - The speed warning function of the road sign detection system is faulty. If the problem persists, have the system checked by a specialised workshop.
- **"Dynamic road sign assist currently restricted"**
  - The navigation system is not transmitting data. Check if the navigation system has updated maps.
  - **OR:** the vehicle is in a region not included on the navigation system's map.

  If the problem persists, have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

### Outside the operating region for advanced road signs recognition

A message appears on the instrument cluster display with the following text "**Road sign assist: outside the usage area**".

- No data available for this region. The advanced road signs recognition system is not supported in the country you are currently driving in.

**Speed warning system partially deactivated**

A white control lamp is shown on the instrument cluster display. The default configuration of the speed warning has been changed:

- Check whether the speed warning is switched off ››› page 28.
- Check if the audible warning is activated ››› page 28.
- Check if the default warning threshold has been changed ››› page 28.

# Infotainment system operation and displays

## Introduction

The infotainment system brings together important vehicle functions and systems into a single central control unit, e.g. air conditioning, menu settings, radio equipment and the navigation system.

The actual number of menus available and the name of the various options will depend on the vehicle's electronics and equipment.

### General operating information

General information on the operation of the infotainment system, as well as on the warning and safety instructions that must be taken into account, is found in ››› page 253.

### How to move through the different menus and select them

- Switch the ignition on.
- If the infotainment system is off, switch it on.
- The different menus are selected directly on the touch screen using texts, icons or buttons.

If the box is checked ✓, the function is activated.

Pressing the menu button ❮ will always take you to the last menu used.

Any changes made using the settings menus are automatically saved on closing those menus

**Scroll bar**: Some menus and functions contain more content than fits on the screen at one time, e.g., long settings lists. Press the scroll bar and drag down.

### Tutorial

The first time you connect the Infotainment system, a system tutorial will open with a brief description of the main functions and how to use it.

### Help

In the **Help** menu can be found more information and tips for using the infotainment system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any distraction may lead to an accident, with the risk of injury. Operating the Infotainment system while driving could distract you from traffic.**

**Note**

**After turning the drive system on with a 12-volt battery that is heavily discharged or recently replaced, some system settings such as time, date, personalised comfort settings, programming and user accounts might be altered or deleted. Check and correct these settings when the battery is sufficiently charged.**

## Explanation of the function buttons

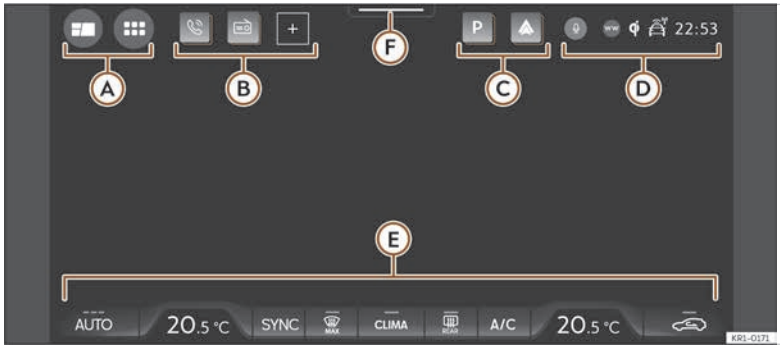



**Fig. 9** Schematic representation: Overview of the possible function buttons on the screen.

### Top part of the screen

Ⓐ Main menu display mode:
: main menu with widget views.
: main menu in tile mode (functions of the Infotainment system).

Ⓑ Shortcuts to infotainment system functions with the option of adding or removing functions.

Ⓒ Active functions that do not appear in zone Ⓑ.

Ⓓ **Status bar**. Information bar showing the system status, such as: time, phone coverage, phone charge level, Qi charger status, user privacy mode.

### Bottom part of the screen

Ⓔ **Climabar** ››› page 143.

### Control centre

Ⓕ Scroll down to view the control centre and system notifications ››› page 32.

## Control centre and system notifications

**Fig. 10** Schematic representation: control centre.

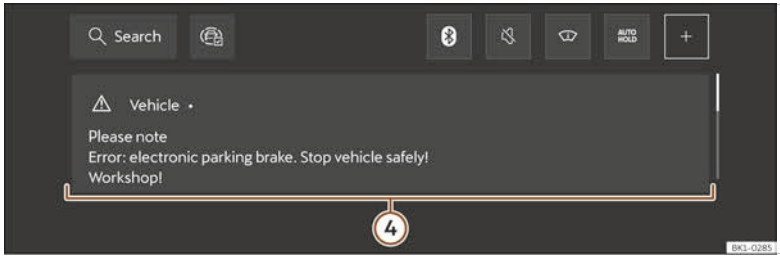



**Fig. 11** Schematic representation: control centre notifications.

### Personalising the infotainment system

You can personalise the infotainment system to access favourite functions quickly:

① Global search lets you search for anything within the system. It facilitates access to other apps or system functions.

② It resets driver assist systems.

③ Quick configuration that show some system functions at first level.
It switches settings on/off and includes access points to specific views.

④ Notification centre: system and app notifications are displayed when generated.

## Initial configuration wizard

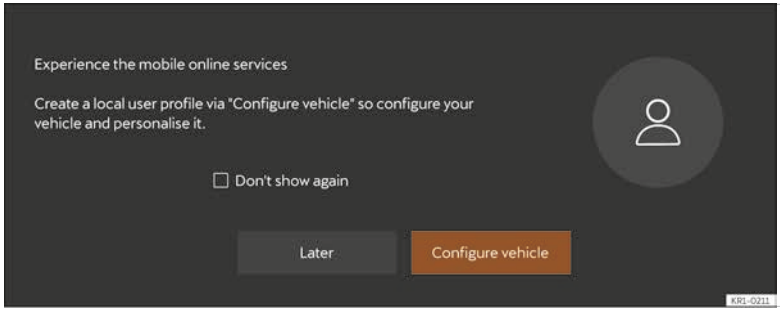



**Fig. 12** Schematic representation: Initial system setup screen.

The welcome screen helps you set up the vehicle system the first time you access it. This interface appears automatically whenever you access as a guest user, unless "Do not show again" is selected.

You must also complete this assistant when pressing "Add user" in the **Users** app.

If initial setup is not completed, you can resume it from the notification that appears in the notification centre ››› page 32.

### Main function

Allows you to create a user profile to personalise the system experience.

By linking your user to CUPRA services, you can access connected functions such as the app store, remote services and preference synchronisation.

### Available options

- **Login:** Press to sign in with your CUPRA account.
  - Requires an Internet connection.
  - Allows you to synchronise your preferences across different CUPRA vehicles.
  - Access advanced online functions and personalised services, such as App Store, Digital key (MDK), etc.
  - The first user linked to CUPRA services will be the Primary user, and up to 3 additional linked users can be added.
- **Skip:** Press to create a profile stored only in the vehicle.
  - Does not require a CUPRA account connection.
  - Configurations will be retained only in this vehicle.
  - Connected functions such as App Store and Digital key (MDK) will not be available.
  - You can link to CUPRA services later from **Users > My profile**.

## Vehicle assistants

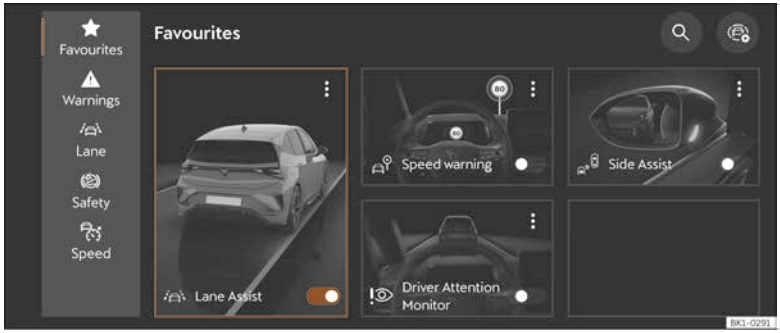



**Fig. 13** Schematic representation: Vehicle assistants.

Press **Assist systems** in the main menu to open the vehicle assistants menu, where you can activate, deactivate or add to Favourites. The number of assistants depends on the version and the country in question.

### Warnings

- Traffic sign speed warning.
- Side Assist >>> page 205.
- Trailer specific speed warning.
- Local hazard warning.
- Attention monitor
- Drowsiness monitor.
- Manual speed warning.

### Lane

- Lane Assist.
- Assisted lane changing.

### Safety

- Emergency brake assist system.
- Distance warning.
- Rear cross traffic alert.
- Emergency Assist

### Speed

- Response to road layout.
- Maximum speed limit response.
- Response to traffic lights.
- Response to stop signs.
- Response to local average speed.
- Predictive efficiency assist.

## Vehicle settings

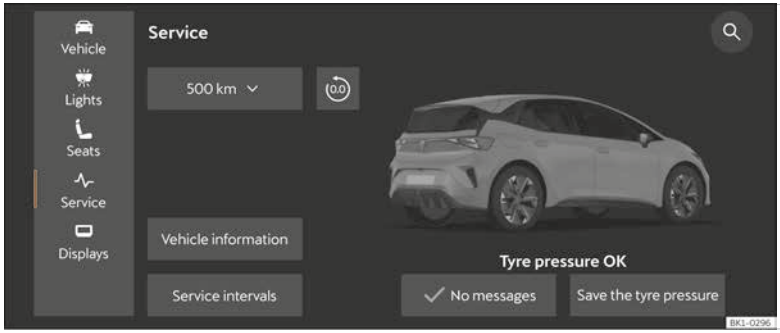



**Fig. 14** Schematic representation: Vehicle settings.

Pressing **Vehicle** in the main menu opens the Vehicle menu with the following submenus:

- **Vehicle:** an image of the vehicle is shown; select **Exterior** or **Interior** to access their respective settings.
- **Lights:** control the vehicle interior lighting via the different lighting modes ››› page 133.
- **Seats:** control the different seat functions and positions ››› page 122.
- **Service:** shows fault and incident messages, tyre pressure memorisation, or information on the next inspection service ››› Fig. 14.
- **Displays:** control of the Head-up-Display (HUD) and its functions, including brightness or display intensity.

## Departure menu

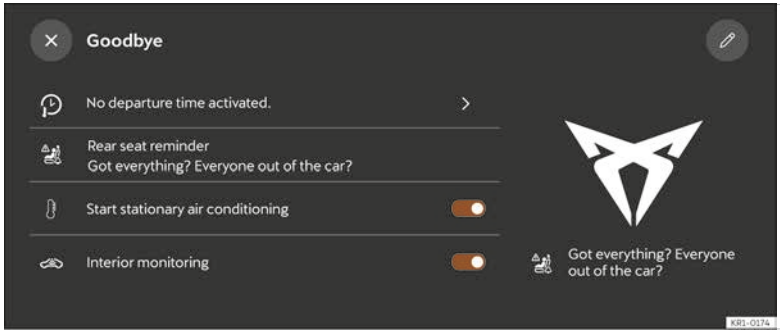



**Fig. 15** Schematic representation: departure menu.

In the departure menu you can set some functions before leaving the vehicle. When you switch off the ignition, the departure menu is displayed on the infotainment system.

The inputs that are displayed depend on the equipment and, if applicable, are only available under certain conditions. Examples of adjustable functions are:

- Charging the high-voltage battery
- Stationary air conditioning or heating
- Interior monitoring
- Save parking process

### Hide

When you leave the vehicle, the departure menu is hidden automatically. Depending on the equipment, it is also hidden after a certain amount of time.

- Press ✕ to manually hide the departure menu.

### Adjust

You can adjust the order of the displayed inputs.

- Press ✎.
- Sort, add or delete entries as required.
- Press **OK**.

# Safety

## Safe driving

### Safety first!

**⚠ WARNING**

- **This manual contains important information about the operation of the vehicle, both for the driver and the passengers. The other sections of the on-board documentation also contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.**
- **Ensure that the on-board documentation is kept in the vehicle at all times. This is especially important when lending or selling the vehicle to another person.**

### Before driving

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, always note the following points before every trip:

- Make sure that the vehicle's lights and turn signals are working properly.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Ensure that all windows provide a clear and good view of the surroundings.
- Make sure all luggage is secured ››› page 289.
- Make sure that no objects can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, headrest and mirrors properly according to your size.
- Ensure that the passengers in the rear seats always have the headrests in the in-use position ››› page 119.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the headrests according to their height.
- Protect children with appropriate child seats and properly fastened seat belts ››› page 56.
- Assume the correct sitting position. Instruct your passengers also to assume a proper sitting position ››› page 38.
- Fasten your seat belt securely. Instruct your passengers also to fasten their seat belts properly ››› page 40.

### Factors influencing safety

As a driver, you are responsible for yourself and your passengers.

- Always pay attention to traffic and do not get distracted by passengers or telephone calls.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (e.g. by medication, alcohol, drugs).
- Observe traffic laws and speed limits.
- Always reduce your speed as appropriate for road, traffic and weather conditions.
- When travelling long distances, take breaks regularly - at least every two hours.
- If possible, avoid driving when you are tired or stressed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics may result in severe accidents and even loss of life.**

- **Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics may significantly alter perception, affect reaction times and safety while driving, which could result in the loss of control of the vehicle.**

### Safety equipment

Never put your safety or the safety of your passengers in danger. In the event of an accident, the safety equipment may reduce the risk of injury. The following points cover part of the safety equipment in your CUPRA[1]:

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Seat belt tensioners on the driver, front passenger and rear side seats.
- Seat belt force limiters on the driver, front passenger and rear side seats.

[1] Depending on the version/market.

- Red warning lamp and, if applicable, seat belt status indication.
- Front airbags for driver and passenger.
- Side airbags for driver and passenger.
- Head airbags on both sides of the vehicle.
- Central airbag between the driver and front passenger.
- Yellow airbag control lamp .
- Yellow warning lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF on the roof console.
- Yellow warning lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG ON on the roof console.
- Control units and sensors.
- Optimised and height-adjustable headrests[1].
- Adjustable steering column.
- ISOFIX/i-Size anchor points for child seats.
- Child seat top tether attachment points.

The safety equipment mentioned above works together to provide you and your passengers with the best possible protection in the event of an accident. However, these safety systems can only be effective if you and your passengers are sitting in a correct position and use this equipment properly.

**Safety is everybody's business.**

# Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants

## Correct position on the seat

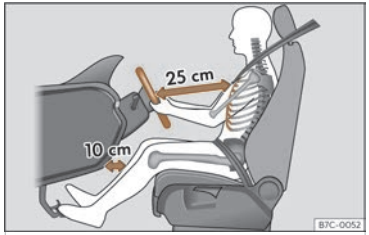



**Fig. 16** The correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel must be at least 25 cm (10 inches).

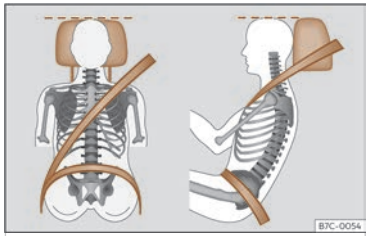



**Fig. 17** Correct belt web and headrest positions

The correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers are shown below.

If your physical condition prevents you from maintaining the correct sitting position, contact a specialised workshop for help with any special devices. The seat belt and airbag can only provide optimum protection if a correct sitting position is adopted. CUPRA recommends taking your car in for technical service.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident or sudden braking or manoeuvre, CUPRA recommends the following positions:

[1] The front seats with built-in headrests do not require adjustment.

**Valid for all vehicle occupants:**

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is, as far as possible, at the same level as the top of your head, as close to eye level as possible[1] >>> page 119. Keep the back of your neck as close as possible to the headrest >>> Fig. 17.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten your seat belt correctly >>> page 40.

**The following also applies to the driver:**

- Move the seat backrest to an almost upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that it is at a distance of at least 25 cm (10 inches) from the sternum >>> Fig. 16 and you can hold it with both hands on the sides, on the outside, with your arms slightly flexed.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and never towards the face.
- Adjust the seat lengthwise so that you can press the pedals fully down with your knees slightly bent and there is a distance between the knee area and the dash panel of at least 10 cm (4 inches) >>> Fig. 17.
- Adjust the height of the seat so that you can reach the top of the steering wheel.
- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you have the vehicle under control at all times.

**For the passenger, the following applies:**

- Move the seat backrest to an almost upright position so that your back rests completely against it.
- Move the seat as far back as possible (minimum 25 cm between the chest and the instrument cluster). If you are sitting closer than 25 cm, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.

## Number of seats

The vehicle has **5** seats, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear. All seats are fitted with a safety belt.

Check the official documentation for the number of occupants approved for your vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting in an incorrect position may increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of sudden braking or manoeuvring, in case of collision or accident and if the airbags deploy.**

- **Before starting the car, all passengers must be sitting in a correct position and stay like that for the entire journey. This also applies to a correct use of the seat belt.**
- **The maximum number of people in the vehicle is the same as the number of seats with seat belts.**
- **For children, always use a protection system that is approved and suited for their weight and height** **>>> page 56**.
- **While driving, always keep your feet in the footwell. Never place them on the seat or the dash panel, for example, or outside the window. Otherwise the airbag and seat belt may offer insufficient protection and also increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident.**

## Risks of sitting in an incorrect position

If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can provide optimal protection only if the belt web is properly worn. Incorrect sit-

[1] On seats with adjustable headrests.

ting positions substantially reduce the protective function of seat belts and, therefore, increase the risk of severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially heightened when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all people, particularly children, inside the vehicle.

The following list contains examples of incorrect sitting positions that could be dangerous for all vehicle occupants.

**When the vehicle is in motion:**

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt your seat backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear seats.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the bench or on the backrest of the seat.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the luggage compartment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sitting in an incorrect position increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of accidents and sudden braking or manoeuvres.**

- **All occupants must sit correctly during the journey and wear the seat belt correctly.**
- **Vehicle occupants that are not sitting correctly, not wearing the seat belt or are not at a proper distance of the airbag risk suffering very serious or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags deploy and strike them.**

# Seat belts

## Introduction

**Fig. 18** Drivers with properly worn seat belts will not be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.

Properly worn seat belts hold the occupants in the proper position. They also help prevent uncontrolled movements that may result in serious injury and reduce the risk of being thrown out of the vehicle in case of an accident.

Vehicle occupants wearing their seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to absorb kinetic energy. In addition, the front part of your vehicle and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are designed to absorb the kinetic energy released in a collision. Taken together, all these features reduce the released kinetic energy and conse-

quently, the risk of injury. This is why it is so important to fasten seat belts before every trip, even when "just driving around the corner".

Ensure that your passengers wear their seat belts as well. Accident statistics have shown that wearing seat belts is an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival when involved in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. For this reason, wearing a seat belt is required by law in most countries.

Although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. The front airbags, for example, are only triggered in some cases of head-on collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor head-on or side collisions, rear-end collisions, overturns or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold value in the control unit is not exceeded.

### Important safety instructions for the use of seat belts

- Always wear the seat belt as described in this section.
- Ensure that the seat belts can be fastened at all times and are not damaged.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If seat belts are worn incorrectly or not at all, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. The optimal protection from seat belts can be achieved only if you use them properly.**
- **Never allow two passengers (even children) to share the same seat belt.**
- **Never unbuckle a seat belt while the vehicle is in motion. Risk of fatal injury.**
- **The seat belt should never lie on hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.) because this can cause injuries.**
- **Do not allow the seat belt to be damaged or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.**
- **Never wear the seat belt under the arm or in any other incorrect position.**
- **Bulky and unfastened clothing (such as an overcoat over a sweater) impairs the proper fit and function of the seat belts, reducing their ability to protect.**
- **The slot in the seat belt buckle must not be blocked with paper or other objects, as this can prevent the latch plate from engaging securely.**
- **Never use seat belt clips, fastening rings or similar items to alter the position of the belt webbing.**
- **Frayed or torn seat belts or damage to the connections, belt retractors or parts of the buckle could cause severe injuries in the event of an accident. Therefore, you must check the condition of all seat belts at regular intervals.**
- **Seat belts which have been worn in an accident and have been stretched must be replaced by a specialised workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.**
- **Do not attempt to repair a damaged seat belt yourself. The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way.**
- **The belts must be kept clean, otherwise the retractors may not work properly.**

## Seat belt buckled indication

**Lights up red**
The driver or one of the passengers have not fastened their seat belts.

The control lamp lights up to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt.

Before starting the vehicle:

- Fasten your seat belt securely.
- Instruct your passengers to fasten their seat belts properly before driving off.
- Protect children by using a child seat according to the child's height and weight >>> page 56.

**Fig. 19** Instrument cluster: seat belt status display.

When the ignition is switched on, the seat belt status display ››› **Fig. 19** informs the driver on the instrument cluster display whether the occupants have their seat belts fastened.

Depending on seat occupancy and the status of the seat belts, the vehicle's seats will light up in different colours:

- A grey light indicates that the corresponding seat is not occupied.
- A green light indicates that the seat is occupied and the occupant is wearing the seat belt.
- A red light indicates that the seat is occupied and the occupant is not wearing the seat belt.

If a speed of 23 km/h (14 mph) is exceeded after moving off without the driver or a front passenger seatbelt being fastened, or if the seatbelt is unfastened while driving, an audible signal will sound for 92 seconds. In addition, the warning lamp on the instrument cluster display flashes.

The lamp goes out when the ignition is on and all occupants have fastened their seat belts.

## Head-on collisions and the laws of physics

**Fig. 20** A driver not wearing a seat belt may be thrown forward violently.

**Fig. 21** Any rear seat occupants not wearing a seat belt may be thrown forward violently, hitting the driver who is wearing the seat belt.

The effects of the laws of physics in the case of a head-on collision are easy to explain: the moment a vehicle starts moving, a type of energy called “kinetic energy” starts acting on both the vehicle and its passengers.

The amount of “kinetic energy” depends on the speed of the vehicle and on the weight of the vehicle and of its passengers. The taller they are, the more energy there is to be “absorbed” in the event of an accident.

The most significant factor, however, is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from 25 km/h (15 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), for example, the corresponding kinetic energy is multiplied by four.

Even at speeds of 30 km/h (19 mph) to 50 km/h (30 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1000 kg). At greater speed these forces are even higher.

Vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are not “attached” to the vehicle. In a head-on collision, they will move forward at the same speed their vehicle was travelling just before the impact. This example applies not only to head-on collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

Even at low speeds the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that it is not possible to brace oneself with one's hands. In the event of a head-on collision, vehicle occupants not wearing a seat belt will be thrown uncontrollably forward and will collide, for example, against the steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen ››› **Fig. 20**.

It is also important for rear passengers to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forward violently through the vehicle interior in an accident. If a rear seat occupant is not wearing a seat belt, they are not only endangering themselves but also the occupants of the front seats ››› **Fig. 21**.

## Fastening and unfastening the seat belt

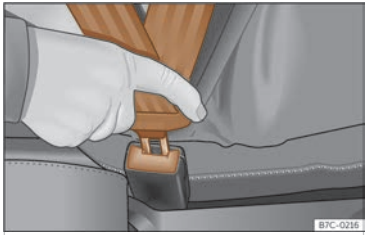



**Fig. 22** Insert the latch plate of the seat belt into the buckle.

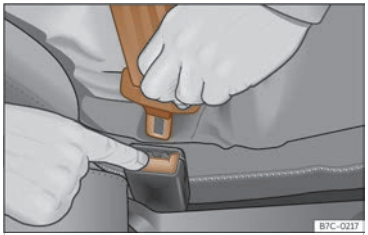



**Fig. 23** Release the seat belt's latch plate.

Properly worn seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the position that best protects them in the event of an accident or sudden braking ››› ⚠.

### Fastening the seat belt

Fasten your seat belt before each trip.

- Adjust the front seat and headrest correctly ››› **page 38**.
- Engage the seat backrest of the rear seat in an upright position ››› ⚠.
- Pull the latch plate and place the belt webbing evenly across your chest and lap. Do **not** twist the seat belt when doing so ››› ⚠.
- Insert the buckle plate in the buckle of the correct seat ››› **Fig. 22**.
- Pull the belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely engaged in the buckle.

### Releasing the seat belt

Only unfasten the seat belt when the vehicle has come to a standstill ››› ⚠.

- Press the red button on the buckle ››› **Fig. 23**. The latch plate is released from the buckle.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily and does not damage the trim.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The seat belt cannot offer its full protection unless the seat backrest is in an upright position and the seat belt is worn correctly, according to your size.**
- **Unbuckling your seat belt while the vehicle is in motion can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking.**
- **The seat belt itself, or a loose seat belt, can cause severe injuries if the belt moves from hard areas of the body to soft areas (e.g. the stomach).**

## Correct position of the seat belt

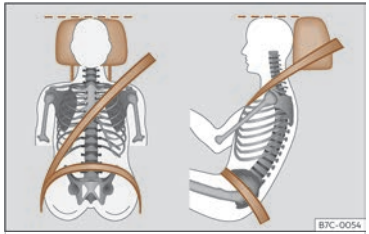



**Fig. 24** Correct seat belt and headrest positions, viewed from front and the side.

**Fig. 25** Position of seat belt during pregnancy.

Seat belts offer their maximum protection in the event of an accident and reduce the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries only when they are properly positioned. Furthermore, if the webbing is correctly positioned, the seat belt will hold the vehicle occupants in the optimum position to ensure the airbag provides the maximum protection. The seat belt must therefore always be worn and the webbing correctly positioned.

Incorrectly worn seat belts can cause severe or even fatal injuries ››› page 38, *Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants*.

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck or the arm, under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the seat belt should pass uniformly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvic area with the strap flat so it does not press down on the abdomen; in addition, it must be used throughout the entire pregnancy ››› **Fig. 25**.

### Adapting the position of the belt webbing to your size

The position of the seat belt can be adapted by adjusting the height of the front seats.

**⚠ WARNING**

**An incorrectly worn seat belt web can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.**

- **The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder, never under the arm or across the neck.**
- **The seatbelt must lie flat and fit comfortably across the upper body.**
- **The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and fit comfortably on the pelvis. Pull the belt tight if necessary to take up any slack.**

- In the case of pregnant women, the abdominal strap of the seat belt should pass as low as possible across the pelvic area, resting flat and "surrounding" the abdomen ››› Fig. 25.
- Do not twist the seat belt while it is fastened.
- Once the seat belt is positioned correctly, don't pull it away from your body with your hand.
- Do not lie the seat belt across rigid or fragile objects, e.g. glasses, pens or keys.
- Never use seat belt clips, securing rings or similar instruments to alter the position of the belt webbing.

**Note**

If your physical condition prevents you from maintaining the correct position of the belt webbing, contact a specialised workshop for help with any special devices to ensure the optimum protection of the seat belt and airbag. CUPRA recommends taking your car in for technical service.

## Automatic retractor, tensioner and belt force limiter

Vehicle seat belts are part of the vehicle's safety system ››› page 38. This system has the following important functions:

### Automatic belt retractor

The seat belt shoulder straps on the driver's and front passenger seats, as well as those on the rear side seats (and, depending on equipment, also the seat belt of the central rear seat) are fitted with automatic retractors. This device ensures complete freedom of movement when the shoulder strap is pulled gently or during normal driving. However, during sudden braking, when driving in the mountains, around bends and when accelerating, the retractor locks the seat belt if it extends rapidly.

In critical driving situations, e.g. in the event of emergency braking or in the case of oversteer and understeer, the proactive occupant protection can tension the front seat belts automatically if they are worn[1]. The two belts are loosened again if an accident does not happen or when the critical situation passes. Proactive occupant protection is ready to operate again ››› page 47.

### Seat belt tensioner

The seat belts on the front seats and side rear seats are fitted with tensioners.

The tensioners are activated by sensors in the event of severe head-on, side and rear collisions or the vehicle rolling over, and tension the seat belts in a direction opposite their extension.

If the seat belt is slack, the tensioner tightens it. This cushions the forward movement of occupants towards the impact.

The belt pre-tensioners work in combination with the airbag system. If the vehicle overturns, the pre-tensioners do not activate unless the head airbags are deployed.

When activated, a fine powder may be released. This is completely normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

The seatbelt pre-tensioners are only activated once and the system must be replaced if they are triggered.

- Have any triggered pretensioners and affected parts of the system replaced immediately with new parts approved by CUPRA for this vehicle.
- Repairs and modifications to the vehicle should only be made by qualified specialist workshops. They have the necessary di-

[1] Only if fitted with the PreCrash System.

agnostic equipment, repair information and tools, as well as qualified personnel. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.

- Never fit belt pretensioner parts removed from vehicles at the end of their useful life, or pretensioners from recycling plants to the vehicle.
- Never modify any component of the belt pretensioners.

### Reversible belt tensioning (proactive occupant protection)

A reversible tensioning of the seat belts may occur in certain driving situations >>> page 47. For example:

- in the event of sudden braking
- in the event of oversteering or understeering
- in the event of minor collisions

### Belt force limiter

The front and rear side seat belts are equipped with force limiters. In the event of an accident, the seat belt force limiter reduces the force the seat belt exerts on the body.

**Note**

- After certain driving situations, the reversible belt tensioners may be left permanently tensioned[1]. In this case, to loosen the belt, it must be removed manually while the vehicle is stationary and then replaced correctly.
- The relevant safety requirements must be observed if the vehicle or any components of the system are to be scrapped. Specialised workshops are aware of these requirements.

## Maintenance and disposal of seat belt tensioners

The belt tensioners are components of the seat belts that are installed in the seats of your vehicle. If you work on the belt tensioners or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, the seat belt may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the belt tensioners function incorrectly or may not function at all.

Regulations, which are known to the specialised workshops, must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the seat belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution.

**WARNING**

Improper handling and home repairs to seat belts, automatic retractors and belt tensioners may increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries. The tensioners may not activate, even though they should, or they may activate unexpectedly.

- Never repair, adjust, or disassemble and reassemble seat belt components or tensioners. Always have this work carried out by a specialist workshop.
- Seat belts, tensioners and their automatic retractors cannot be repaired and have to be replaced.

**For the sake of the environment**

Airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate.

Observe the legal requirements for their disposal.

[1] Only if fitted with the PreCrash System.

# Proactive occupant protection

## Introduction

Proactive occupant protection is an assist system that activates a set of measures to protect occupants in hazardous situations, but it cannot prevent a collision.

### Speed range

The basic functions of proactive occupant protection are available when driving forwards at speeds above approx. 30 km/h (19 mph).

### Status display

When proactive occupant protection intervenes, the red warning lamp appears in the instrument cluster.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Proactive occupant protection cannot replace driver attention and operates only within system limits. Proactive occupant protection cannot detect all driving situations and may fail to react, react late or react inappropriately. If you are inattentive, accidents and serious or fatal injuries may occur.**

- **Always remain alert and do not rely solely on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.**
- **Observe the system limitations** >>> page 48.
- **Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**

## Proactive occupant protection functions

### Basic features

When the driver or front passenger is wearing a seat belt, at the start of driving and depending on journey duration and speed, the belt is pretensioned automatically to minimise slack. In critical driving situations, e.g., during emergency braking or understeer or oversteer, the following functions may be activated individually or together:

- Reversible pretensioning of the driver and front passenger seat belts, if fastened.
- Automatic closing of the windows until they are just cracked open.
- Activation of the hazard warning lights.

Depending on how critical the situation is, the belts may be tensioned individually or all at once.

### Additional functions in vehicles with Front Assist emergency brake assist system

In vehicles with Front Assist emergency brake assist system, and within system limits, the probability of a rear-end collision with the vehicle in front is also calculated. The system can activate proactive occupant protection if a rear-end collision is likely or if it triggers a sharp braking manoeuvre.

### Additional functions in vehicles with Side Assist lane change assistant

In vehicles with Side Assist lane change assistant, and within system limits, the probability of a rear-end collision by the vehicle behind is also calculated. If the system detects a likely rear-end collision, it can activate proactive occupant protection. If the system detects a collision risk, it can also activate the hazard warning lights at a high flash rate in addition to the basic functions.

### Additional functions in vehicles with Emergency Assist

In vehicles with Emergency Assist, if the system does not detect driver activity, it can activate proactive occupant protection. Depending on the set activation level, the following functions are activated:

- Brief or continuous reversible pretensioning of the driver's seat belt, if fastened.
- Depending on the features, automatic closure of the glass roof and the windows to a slit.

**Drive profile selection settings**

In vehicles with driving profile selection, proactive occupant protection adapts to the profile's corresponding special vehicle configuration.

**Activation of proactive occupant protection**

Proactive occupant protection can be partially deactivated by deactivating traction and/or stability control, depending on equipment. When these vehicle safety controls are switched on (by default, every time the ignition is turned on), the system is fully activated.

## Proactive occupant protection limitations

Proactive occupant protection depends on national legal provisions and the vehicle equipment.

In the following situations, proactive occupant protection is not available or only available with limitations:

- ESC, reversible belt pretensioners
>>> page 40 or the airbag control unit
>>> page 48 are not working correctly.
- TCS is deactivated or ESC operation is limited
>>> page 170.
- There is a fault in the Front Assist emergency brake assistant or its operation is limited.
- There is a fault in Side Assist lane-change assistant or its operation is limited.
- There is a fault in Emergency Assist or its operation is limited.
- There is a fault in the front cross traffic assist or its operation is limited.
- The reverse gear is engaged.
- In the case of reflective objects, e.g., guard rails, tunnel entrances, heavy rain or ice.
- In the case of animals or objects that are difficult to detect.
- In the case of impacts and damage to the bumper, wheel arch or underbody.

## Troubleshooting

**Proactive occupant protection not available or with limited operation**

The yellow indicator lamp comes on briefly. In addition, a message may be shown in the instrument cluster display.
Proactive occupant protection is not available or its operation is limited.

1. Switch the engine off and on again.
2. If the fault persits, contact a properly qualified specialist workshop and have proactive occupant protection checked. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.

**Note**

**Depending on the anomaly in question, additional information may be displayed in Vehicle status** >>> page 35.

# Airbag system

## Why is it so important to wear a seat belt and to sit correctly?

For the inflating airbags to achieve the best protection, the seat belt must always be worn properly and the correct sitting position must be assumed.

The airbag system is not a substitute for seat belts, but it is an integral part of the vehicle's overall passive safety system. Please bear in mind that the airbag system can only work effectively when the vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have adjusted the headrests properly. Therefore, it is most important to properly wear the seat belts at all times, not only because this is required by law in most countries, but also for your safety >>> page 40, *Seat belts*.

The airbag inflates in a matter of seconds, so if you are not properly seated when the airbag is triggered, you may sustain fatal injuries. Therefore, it is essential that all vehicle occupants assume a correct sitting position while travelling.

Sharp braking before an accident may cause a passenger not wearing a seat belt to be thrown forward into the area of the deploying airbag. In this case, the inflating airbag may inflict critical or fatal injuries on the occupant. This also applies to children.

Always maintain the greatest possible distance between yourself and the front airbag. This way, the front airbags can completely deploy when triggered, providing their maximum protection.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact and the vehicle speed.

Whether or not the airbags are activated depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision and detected by the control unit. If the vehicle deceleration occurring during the collision and measured by the control unit remains below the specified reference values, the front, side and/or curtain airbags will not be triggered. Take into account that the visible damage in a vehicle involved in an accident, no matter how serious, is not a factor that determines whether or not the airbags are activated.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Wearing the seat belt incorrectly or assuming an incorrect sitting position can lead to critical or fatal injuries**

- **All vehicle occupants, including children, who are not properly strapped in can sustain critical or fatal injuries if the airbag is triggered. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat. Never transport children in the vehicle if they are not restrained or the restraint system is not appropriate for their age, size or weight.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury from an inflating airbag, always wear the seat belt properly** **>>> page 40****.**

## Description of the airbag system

The airbag system offers additional protection for the occupants in combination with the seat belts.

**The airbag system comprises the following modules (depending on the vehicle equipment):**

- Electronic control unit
- Front airbags for driver and passenger
- Side airbags
- Central airbag for the driver
- Head airbag
- Airbag control lamp on the instrument cluster >>> **page 50**
- Key-operated switch for front passenger airbag
- Control lamp for disabled/enabled status of the front passenger airbag.

The airbag system operation is monitored electronically. The airbag control lamp will illuminate for a few seconds every time the ignition is switched on (self-diagnosis).

**There is a fault in the system if the control lamp :**

- does not light up when the ignition is switched on >>> **page 50**,
- turns off after 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on,
- turns off and then lights up again after the ignition is switched on,
- illuminates or flashes while the vehicle is moving.

**Situations in which the airbags will not necessarily deploy:**

- the ignition is switched off
- this is a minor collision,
- in the event of the vehicle overturning if the dynamic characteristics measured by the control unit are too low.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The seat belts and airbags can only provide maximum protection if the occupants are seated correctly** ›››  page 38.
- **If a fault has occurred in the airbag system, have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop. Otherwise there is a danger that during a collision, the system may fail to trigger, or not trigger correctly.**

## Airbag activation

The airbags deploy extremely rapidly, within thousandths of a second, to provide additional protection in the event of an accident. A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and it is not an indication of fire in the vehicle.

The airbag system is only ready to function when the ignition is on.

In special accidents instances, several airbags may activate at the same time.

In minor collisions, the airbags **do not deploy**.

### Activation factors

The conditions that lead to the airbag system activating in each situation cannot be generalised. Some factors play an important role, such as the properties of the object the vehicle hits (hard/soft), angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.

Deceleration trajectory is key for airbag activation.

The control unit analyses the collision trajectory and activates the respective restraint system.

If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car.

**In severe frontal collisions, some (or all) airbag systems may deploy (depending on collision severity):**

- Driver airbag.
- Front passenger airbag
- Head airbags.

**In the event of serious side collisions, some (or all) of the following airbags can be activated (depending on the severity of the collision):**

- Head airbags.
- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Central airbag.

**In an accident with airbag activation:**

- the interior lights switch on (if the interior light switch is in the courtesy light position);
- the hazard warning lights turn on;
- all doors are unlocked;
- the high voltage system is switched off;
- an emergency call is started.

## Airbag system control lamps

**Lights up on the instrument cluster**
Fault in the airbag system and seat belt tensioners. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

**Lights up on the instrument cluster**
Airbag or belt tensioner system deactivated by a diagnostic tester. Contact a specialised workshop and get it to check whether the airbag or belt tensioner system should remain deactivated.

OFF **Lights up on the roof console**
Front passenger airbag deactivated. Check if the airbag should be kept deactivated.

ON **Lights up on the roof console**
Front passenger airbag activated. The control lamp turns off automatically 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

Several warning and control lamps light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, signalling that the function is being verified. They will switch off after a few seconds.

If the airbag and seat belt tensioner system control lamp remains on or flashes, it indicates a malfunction in the airbag and seat

belt tensioner system ››› ⚠ . Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

If the front passenger airbag has been deactivated, the warning lamp OFF remains lit on the roof console to remind you that the airbag is deactivated. If, with the front passenger airbag deactivated, this lamp **does not remain lit** or if it is lit along with the control lamp on the instrument cluster, there is a fault in the airbag system ››› ⚠. If the control lamp is flashing, there is a fault in the disabling of the airbag system ››› ⚠. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In the event of a fault in the airbag and seat belt tensioner system, the airbags and seat belts may not trigger correctly, may fail to trigger or may even trigger unexpectedly.**

- **The vehicle occupants run the risk of sustaining severe or fatal injuries. Have the system checked immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **Do not mount a child seat in the front passenger seat or remove the mounted child seat! The front passenger airbag may deploy during an accident in spite of the fault.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Always pay attention to any lit control lamps and to the corresponding descriptions and instructions to avoid damage to the vehicle or harm to the occupants.**

## Front airbags

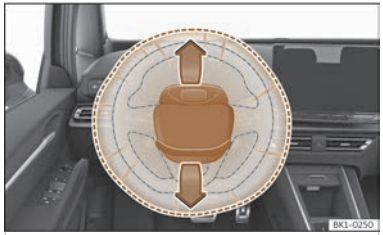



**Fig. 26** Driver's airbag in the steering wheel.

**Fig. 27** Front passenger airbag located in the dash panel.

The driver's front airbag is housed in the steering wheel and that of the front passenger, on the dash panel. Airbags are identified by the word "AIRBAG".

The airbag covers open and remain attached to the steering wheel and dash panel when the driver and front passenger airbags are triggered, respectively ››› **Fig. 26** , ››› **Fig. 27**.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision ››› ⚠.

In addition, in certain head-on collisions, the head airbag is triggered on both sides of the vehicle.

Their special design allows the controlled escape of the propellant gas when an occupant puts pressure on the bag. Thus, the head and

chest are protected by the airbag. After the collision, the airbag deflates sufficiently to allow visibility.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The deployment space between the front passengers and the airbags must not in any case be occupied by other passengers, pets and objects.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **It is also important not to attach any objects such as drink holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**

## Activate and deactivate front passenger airbag

**Fig. 28** Switch for activating and deactivating the front passenger airbag.

**Fig. 29** On the roof console: passenger airbag deactivation control lamp.

Deactivate the front passenger airbag only if you have to use a rear-facing child seat in the front passenger seat.

CUPRA recommends fitting the child seat in the rear seat to avoid having to deactivate the front passenger airbag.

When the front passenger airbag is **deactivated**, this means that only the front passenger airbag is deactivated. All the other airbags in the vehicle remain activated.

### Deactivate and activate the front passenger airbag[1)]

- Disconnect the drive system.
- Open the passenger side door.
- Remove the key blade from the vehicle key.
- Insert the key blade into the slot provided in the front passenger airbag disconnection switch ››› **Fig. 28**. About 3/4 of the key should enter; this is as far as it will go.
- Turn the key gently to change its position to OFF (deactivate) or to ON (activate). If you have difficulty, ensure that you have inserted the key as far as it will go.
- Close the front passenger door.
- When deactivating the airbag, switch the ignition on and check that the control lamp OFF remains lit ››› **Fig. 29**.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

- When reactivating the airbag, check that when the ignition is switched on, the OFF control lamp does not light up and the ON lamp lights up for 60 seconds and then turns off.

**⚠ DANGER**

**Always switch off the ignition before disabling the front passenger airbag! Failure to do so could result in a fault in the airbag deactivation system.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The driver of the vehicle is responsible for disabling or switching on the airbag.**
- **Never leave the key in the airbag disabling switch as it could get damaged or enable or disable the airbag during driving.**
- **If for any reason an airbag is deactivated, reactivate it as soon as possible so that it can fulfil its protective function.**

## Central airbag

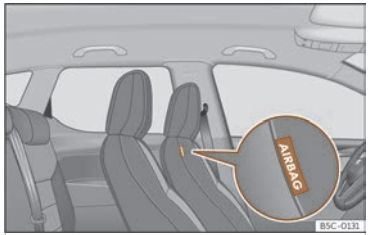



**Fig. 30** In the inner padding of the driver's seat backrest: central airbag.

**Fig. 31** Fully inflated central airbag (deployment zone).

The central airbag is installed for the front seats and is located in the inner padding of the driver's seat backrest.

The location of the central airbag is indicated by the inscription "AIRBAG" ››› **Fig. 30**.

When triggered, the central airbag fills the marked zone (deployment zone) ››› **Fig. 31**. For this reason, never place or fix objects in this zone ››› ⚠.

The central airbag triggers in the case of a side collision or if the vehicle overturns, reducing the risk of vehicle occupants suffering injuries.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed in milliseconds.**

- **Always keep the central airbag deployment zone clear.**
- **Never attach objects to the central airbag cover or the deployment zone.**
- **Do not allow other people, animals or objects to get between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment zone. Make sure that all vehicle occupants, including children, follow this rule.**
- **Never use upholstery or seat covers that have not been explicitly authorised for the seats of the vehicle. Otherwise, the central airbag will not be able to deploy if triggered.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper manipulation of the driver and front passenger seats can prevent the central airbag from operating correctly and cause serious injuries.**

- **Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify their components.**
- **If the backrest side bolsters are subjected to a lot of force, the central airbag may not trigger correctly,it may not trigger at all or if may trigger unexpectedly.**
- **Have a specialised repair shop immediately repair any damage to the original seat upholstery or seams in the area of the central airbag module.**

## Side airbags

**Fig. 32** Driver's seat and passenger seat side airbags.

**Fig. 33** Illustration of completely inflated side airbag on the left side of the vehicle.

The side airbags are located in the front seat backrests ››› **Fig. 32** , ››› **Fig. 33**.

Their locations are marked with the word "AIRBAG" on the upper part of the back of the seats or on the lower coverings with the word AIRBAG in relief.

In conjunction with the seat belts, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body in the event of a severe side collision ››› ⚠.

In a side collision, the side airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers to the areas of the body facing the impact. In addition to their normal protection, the seat belts also hold the passengers in the event of a side collision; this is how these airbags provide maximum protection.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **If you do not wear a seat belt, if you lean forward, or are not seated correctly while the vehicle is in motion, you are at a greater risk of injury if the side airbag system is triggered in an accident.**
- **In order for the side airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **In a side-on collision the side airbags will not work if the sensors do not correctly measure the pressure increase on the interior of the doors, due to air escaping through the areas with holes or openings in the door panel.**
- **Never drive if the interior door panels have been removed or if the panels have not been correctly fitted.**
- **Occupants of the outer seats must never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags, or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position. It is also important not to attach any accessories (such as drink holders) to the doors. This would impair the protection offered by the side airbags.**
- **Ensure that children are correctly seated in their seats and that their heads are not in the deployment zone of the side airbags ››› Fig. 33, as deploying airbags could hit them and cause serious injury.**

- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets.**
- **The backrest bolster must not be hit or kicked hard, as this could damage the system. In this case, the side airbags would not be triggered.**
- **Under no circumstances should protective covers be fitted over seats with side airbags unless the covers have been approved for use in your vehicle. Because the airbag deploys from the side of the backrest, the use of conventional seat covers would obstruct the side airbag, seriously reducing the airbag's effectiveness.**
- **Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a specialised workshop.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the side airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the front seat) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**

## Head-protection airbags

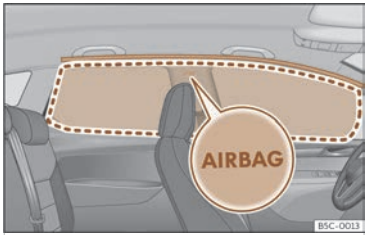



**Fig. 34** Location of head-protection airbags.

Head-protection airbags are on both sides of the vehicle interior, above the doors ››› **Fig. 34** and their location is indicated with the word “AIRBAG”.

In combination with the seat belts, the Side Curtain Protection® airbags provide additional protection for the upper part of the body of vehicle occupants in the event of serious side collisions or the vehicle overturning ››› ⚠.

The framed area is covered by the head-protection airbag when it is deployed (deployment area) ››› **Fig. 34**. Therefore, objects should never be placed or mounted in this area ››› ⚠.

In a rollover, a side collision or certain frontal or rear collisions, the head airbags on both sides deploy.

The head-protection airbags reduce the risk of injury to passengers in the front and rear side seats facing the impact.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **In order for the head-protection airbags to provide their maximum protection, the prescribed sitting position must always be maintained with seat belts fastened while travelling.**
- **For safety reasons, the curtain airbag must be disabled in those vehicles fitted with a screen dividing the interior of the vehicle. See your technical service to make this adjustment.**
- **There must be no other persons, animals or objects between the occupants of the outer seats and the deployment space of the head-protection airbags so that the head-protection airbag can deploy completely without restriction and provide the greatest possible protection. Therefore, sun blinds which have not been expressly approved for use in your vehicle may not be attached to the side windows.**
- **Ensure that children are correctly seated in their seats and that their heads are not in the deployment zone of the head airbags ››› Fig. 34, as deploying airbags could hit them and cause serious injury.**

- **The built-in coat hooks should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. Please, do not hang clothes on coat hangers.**
- **The airbags provide protection for just one accident; replace them once they have deployed.**
- **Any work on the head-protection airbag system or removal and installation of the airbag components for other repairs (such as removal of the roof lining) should only be performed by a specialised workshop. Otherwise, faults may occur during the airbag system operation.**
- **The side and head airbags are managed through sensors located in the interior of the front doors. To ensure the correct operation of the side and curtain airbags neither the doors nor the door panels should be modified in any way (e.g. fitting loudspeakers). If the front door is damaged, the airbag system may not work correctly. All work carried out on the front door must be done in a specialised workshop.**

# Transporting children safely

## Introduction

For safety reasons, as we have learned from accident statistics, we recommend that children under 12 years of age travel in the rear seats. Depending on their age, height and weight, children travelling in rear seats must use a child seat or a seat belt. For safety reasons, the child seat should be installed in the rear seat, behind the front passenger seat or in the centre back seat.

The laws of physics involved and the forces acting in a collision also apply to children >>> page 42. But unlike adults, children do not have fully developed muscle and bone structures. This means that children are subject to a greater risk of injury.

To reduce the risk of injuries, children must always use special child restraint systems when travelling in the vehicle.

We recommend the use of child safety products from the Genuine Accessories Catalogue, which includes systems for all ages (see www.cupraaccessories.com).

These systems have been especially designed and approved and comply with the UN ECE R129 (i-Size) regulation.

CUPRA recommends securing the child seats shown on the website as described below:

- Rear facing child seat (**group 0+ / child height 40-83 cm**):
  - ISOFIX and support leg (Britax Römer Baby-Safe 3 i-SIZE + Flex Base i-SENSE).
- Rear facing child seat **(group 1 / child height 76-105 cm**):
  - ISOFIX AND Top Tether (Britax Römer TRI-FIX 2 i-Size).
- Forward facing child seat (**group 2 / child height 100-135 cm**):
  - Seat belt and ISOFIX (Britax Römer KIDFIX i-Size).

  You must also use the seat's "Secure-Guard" seatbelt connection point and adjust the side impact protection system "SICT" (available on certain models), located in the seat backrest. Adjust only the "SICT" closest to the door. Please follow the child seat manufacturer's usage instructions.
- Forward facing child seat (**group 3 / child height 125-150 cm**):
  - Seat belt and ISOFIX (Britax Römer KIDFIX i-Size).

  Group 3 can use the seat with backrest or only the seat base without the backrest (booster). The backrest of the child seat has an adult seat belt guide and a headrest, meaning that the seat with the backrest of-

fers better protection than boosters without backrests. CUPRA recommends the use of child seats with backrests.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats. Always read and note >>> page 58.

We recommend you always carry the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

## Classification of child seats

**Fig. 35** Examples of child seats.

Use only child seats that are officially approved and suitable for the child.

These seats are subject to the ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 standards. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe Regulation.

### Child seats by weight group as per ECE-R44 and height as per ECE-R129

The child seats are grouped into 5 categories:

| Group as per ECE-R44 | |
|---|---|
| Group 0 | Up to 10 kg |
| Group 0+ | Up to 13 kg |
| Group 1 | From 9 to 18 kg |
| Group 2 | From 15 to 25 kg |
| Group 3 | From 22 to 36 kg |

| Child height as per ECE-R129 | |
|---|---|
| 45-75 cm | From birth to approx. 12 months. |
| 45-87 cm | From birth to approx. 4 years. |
| 61-105 cm | approx. 4 months to 4 years |
| 100-135 cm | approx. 4 to 8 years |
| 125-150 cm | approx. 4 years to 12 years |

Child seats that have been tested and approved under the ECE R44 or ECE-R129 standards bear the ECE-R44 or ECE-R129 test marks on the seat (the letter E in a circle with the test number below it).

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and observe any statutory requirements when installing and using child seats.

We recommend that you always include the manufacturer's Child Seat Instruction Manual together with the on-board documentation.

CUPRA recommends you use child seats from the **Original Accessories Catalogue**. These child seats have been designed and tested for use in our vehicles. You can find the right child seat for your model and age group at our dealers.

### Child seats by approval category

Child seats may have the approval category of universal, semi-universal, vehicle specific (all according to the ECE-R44 standard) or i-Size (according to the ECE-R129 standard).

- **Universal**: child seats with universal approval can be installed in all vehicles. There is no need to consult any list of models. In the case of universal approval for ISOFIX, the child seat is additionally provided with a Top Tether belt.
- **Semi-universal**: semi-universal approval, in addition to the standard requirements of universal approval, requires safety devices to lock the child seat, which require additional testing. Child seats with semi-universal approval include a list of vehicle models for which they can be installed.

- **Vehicle-specific**: vehicle-specific approval requires a dynamic test of the child seat for each vehicle model separately. Child seats with vehicle-specific approval also include a list of vehicle models for which they can be installed.
- **i-Size**: child seats with i-Size approval must meet the requirements prescribed in the ECE-R 129 standard in relation to installation and safety. Child seat manufacturers can tell you which seats have i-Size approval for this vehicle.

## Fitting and using child seats

**Fig. 36** Airbag sticker: on the passenger side sunshade blind.

**Fig. 37** Airbag sticker: on the rear frame of the passenger side door.

### Warnings about fitting a child seat

Take the following general warnings into account if you are going to fit a child seat. They are valid for all child seats regardless of their attachment system.

- Please read and follow the child seat manufacturer's operating instructions.
- The child seat should preferably be fitted to the rear seat behind the front passenger seat so that the child can exit the vehicle on the pavement side.
- Set the height of the seat belt such that it adapts to the child seat naturally, without twisting. The lowest position of the seat belt height regulator must be used with rear-facing child seats.
- To correctly use a child seat in the back, the front backrest must be adjusted so that there is no contact with the child seat in the back if it is rear facing. In the case of forward-facing restraint systems, the front backrest must be adjusted so that there is no contact with the child's feet.
- For a correct assembly of the child's seat on the rear seats, adjust or dismount the headrest, in order to prevent contact with the seat.
- If a semi-universal type seat is to be installed, in which the method of attachment to the car is through the seat belt and support bracket, it should never be installed in the central rear seat as the ground clearance is lower than in other places and the support bracket will not allow the seat to remain sufficiently stable.

### Important information about the front passenger airbag

A sticker with important information about the passenger airbag is located on the passenger's sunshade blind and/or on the passenger side door frame ››› **Fig. 36**.

Read and always observe the safety information included in the following chapters:

- Safety distance with respect to the passenger airbag ››› **page 48**.
- Objects between the passenger and the passenger side airbag ››› ⚠ in ***Front airbags*** **on page 52**.

The passenger side front airbag, when enabled, is a serious risk for a rear-facing child since the airbag can strike the seat with such force that it can cause serious or fatal injuries. Children up to 12 years old should always travel on the rear seat.

Therefore we strongly recommend that you transport children on the rear seats. This is the safest location in the vehicle. Alternatively, the front passenger airbag can be disabled with a key-operated switch ››› page 52. When transporting children, use a child seat suitable for the age and size of each child ››› page 57.

**⚠ DANGER**

- **If a child seat is secured to the front passenger seat, the risk to the child of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident increases.**
- **An inflating front passenger airbag can strike the child seat and throw it with great force against the door, the roof or the backrest.**
- **Never install a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat unless the front passenger airbag has been disabled. Risk of potentially fatal injuries to the child! However, if necessary, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated** **››› page 52**.
- **For those vehicles that do not include a key lock switch to deactivate the airbag, the vehicle must be taken to a technical service. Do not forget to reconnect the airbag when an adult wants to sit in the front passenger seat.**
- **Never allow a child to be transported in a vehicle without being properly secured, or to stand up or kneel on a seat while travelling. In an accident, the child could be flung through the vehicle, causing possibly fatal injuries to themselves and to the other vehicle occupants.**
- **Never leave a child alone in the child seat or in the vehicle.**
- **Children shorter than 1.50 m must not use the vehicle seat belts unless seated in a child seat, as sudden braking or an accident could cause abdominal and neck injuries.**
- **When a child seat is mounted in the rear seats, the door's child lock should be activated** **››› page 110**.

## Attachment systems

Depending on the country, different attachment systems are used for safely installing child seats.

**Attachment systems overview**

- **ISOFIX**: ISOFIX is a standardised attachment system allowing quick and safe attachment of child seats in the vehicle. ISOFIX attachment establishes a rigid connection between the child seat and the car body.

  The child seat has two rigid attachment clips, called connectors. These connectors are fitted into the ISOFIX attachment rings found between the seat cushion and the backrest of the vehicle's back seat (on the sides). ISOFIX attachment systems are used mainly in Europe ››› page 60. If necessary, ISOFIX attachment may have to be supplemented with a Top Tether belt or a support bracket.
- **Automatic three-point seat belt**. Whenever possible, it is preferable to attach the child seats with the ISOFIX system rather than attaching them with an automatic three-point seat belt ››› page 65.

Additional attachment:

- **Top Tether**: the Top Tether belt is guided over the back of the rear seat and attached to an anchor point with a hook. Anchor points are located at the back of the rear seat backrest on the luggage compartment side ››› page 63. The rings for retaining the Top Tether belt are marked with an anchor symbol.
- **Support bracket**: some child seats rest on the floor of the vehicle with a support bracket. The support bracket prevents the child seat from tipping forward in the event of impact. Child seats fitted with a support bracket should

only be used in the passenger seat and side rear seats ››› ⚠. For the assembly of this type of seat you should also consult the list of approved vehicles for this assembly, available in the instructions for child restraint systems.

**Recommended systems for attaching child seats**

CUPRA recommends attaching child seats as follows:

- **Baby carriers or rear facing child seats**: ISOFIX and support bracket or i-Size.
- **Forward-facing child seats**: ISOFIX and Top Tether.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrect use of the support bracket can cause serious or fatal injury.**

- **Make sure the support bracket is correctly and safely installed.**
- **When the child seat base is supporting the weight of the child, the support leg must not be in the air or propped up with objects. Also ensure that the base of the child seat rests permanently on the surface of the vehicle's seat. The support leg of the child seat must not lift the base of the child seat off the surface of the vehicle's seat.**

## Securing a child seat with the ISOFIX or i-Size system

The marking of ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points depends on the equipment and the country in question.

To understand the compatibility of the ISOFIX or i-Size systems in the vehicle, check the table below.

## Vehicle ISOFIX/i-Size positions

| Child seat | Child seat orientation | Size class / ISOFIX class | Front passenger seat | | Rear side seat | Rear central seat |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | airbag enabled[a)] | airbag disabled[b)] | | |
| Group 0: up to 10 kg | Rear facing | E / R1 | X | IL | IL | X |
| Group 0+: up to 13 kg | Rear facing | E / R1 | X | IL | IL | X |
| | | D / R2 | X | IL | IL | X |
| | | C / R3 | X | IL | IL | X |
| Group I: 9 to 18 kg | Rear facing | D / R2 | X | IL | IL | X |
| | | C / R3 | X | IL | IL | X |
| | Forward-facing | B / F2 | IL, IUF | X | IL, IUF | X |
| | | B1 / F2X | IL, IUF | X | IL, IUF | X |
| | | A / F3 | IL, IUF | X | IL, IUF | X |
| Group II: 15 to 25 kg[c)] | Forward-facing | -- / -- | IL | X | IL | X |
| Group III: 22 to 36 kg[c)] | Forward-facing | -- / -- | IL | X | IL | X |
| i-Size child seat | Rear facing | -- / R2 | X | IUF | IUF | X |
| | Forward-facing | -- / B2, F2X | IUF | X | IUF | X |
| Booster | Forward-facing | -- / B2, B3 | IB | X | IB | X |

[a)] For forward-facing child seats with the airbag activated, the passenger seat must be positioned as far away from the airbag as possible, while ensuring that the upper attachment point of the vehicle seatbelt is behind the child seat.
[b)] For rear-facing child seats with the airbag deactivated, seats without height adjustment should be moved to their rearmost position, and seats with height adjustment should be moved to their rearmost and lowest position.
[c)] Installation in front seats requires reclining the backrest.

- **Size class:** The indication of class according to size corresponds to the authorised body weight for the child seat. In child seats with universal or semi-universal approval, the class according to size is indicated on the ECE approval label. The indication of class according to size is stated on the corresponding child seat.

- **IUF:** Suitable for ISOFIX / i-Size child restraint systems with “universal” approval, approved for use in this weight group.
- **IL:** Suitable for certain ISOFIX child restraint systems that can be for the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories. Take the child seat manufacturer's vehicle list into account.
- **IB:** Seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX forward-facing group 2/3 booster seat as well as an i-size forward-facing child seat for children with a height of 100 to 150 cm.
- **X:** Position not suitable for ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint systems in this weight group or size class.

**Securing the child seat with the ISOFIX or i-Size system**

**Fig. 38** Rear seat: location of the ISOFIX or i-Size securing rings.

**Fig. 39** Front passenger seat: location of the i-Size securing rings.

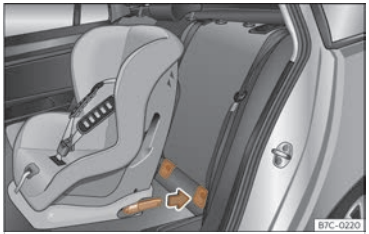



**Fig. 40** Rear seats: fitting a child seat with the ISOFIX system.

You must follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

The location of the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points is indicated by a symbol >>> **Fig. 38** , >>> **Fig. 39**[1]. In some vehicles, the rings are secured to the seat frame and, in others, they are secured to the rear floor.

[1] Not available in all markets.

- If necessary, remove the protective caps from the ISOFIX or i-Size anchor points.
- Press the child seat onto the ISOFIX or iSize securing rings until it is heard to engage securely ››› Fig. 40. If the child seat is equipped with Top Tether anchor points, secure it to the corresponding ring ››› page 63. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat to ensure that it is properly anchored.

Child seats with the ISOFIX or i-Size and Top Tether attachment system can be purchased from technical services.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The securing rings are designed only for use with ISOFIX or i-Size and Top Tether system child seats.**

- **Never secure other child seats that do not have ISOFIX, i-Size or Top Tether systems, or safety belts or any other objects to the securing rings – as this can result in potentially fatal injuries.**
- **Ensure that the child seat is correctly secured to the ISOFIX or i-Size rings and the Top Tether.**

## Top Tether securing belts

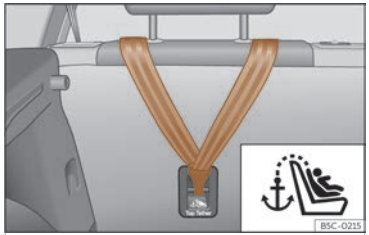



**Fig. 41** Rear part of the rear seats: Top Tether belt anchor.

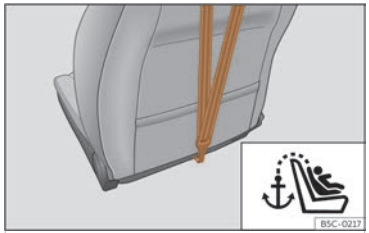



**Fig. 42** Rear of front passenger seat backrest: Top Tether belt anchor (not available in all markets/versions).

Child seats with a Top Tether system are fitted with an additional belt for fastening to an anchor point in the vehicle. This anchor point is located on the rear of the rear seat backrest and of the front passenger seat backrest[1] (identified with the symbol ) and provides better retention ››› Fig. 41, ››› Fig. 42.

The objective of this system is to reduce forward movements of the child seat in a head-on collision, to reduce the risk of injuries that may be caused to the child's head by impacting against any element of the inside of the vehicle.

### Use of Top Tether on rear-facing child restraints

Currently, there are very few rear-facing child restraints with Top Tether. The car seat manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the Top Tether should be read carefully and followed.

[1] Not available in all markets/versions.

### Locking the tether belt

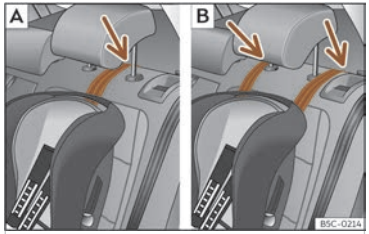



**Fig. 43** Rear seats: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

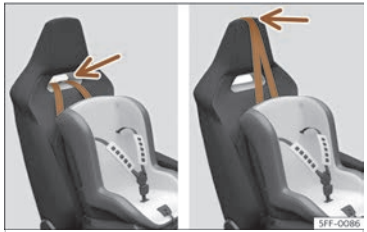



**Fig. 44** Front passenger seat: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

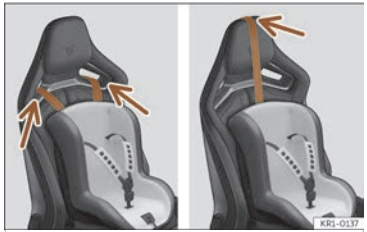



**Fig. 45** Front passenger seat: adjustment and assembly according to the Top Tether belt.

- Deploy the Top Tether belt according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Position the belt under the headrest (according to the instructions of the seat itself, lift or remove the headrest if necessary) ››› **Fig. 43**.

For vehicles with integrated headrests, pass the Top Tether belt over the headrest or through the headrest recess as shown in the image ››› **Fig. 44**, ››› **Fig. 45**.

- Slide the belt and secure it properly with the anchor on the rear seat backrest ››› **Fig. 41** , ››› **Fig. 42**.
- Tighten the belt securely according to the manufacturer's instructions.

### Release the tether belt

- Loosen the belt according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Press the lock and release it from the anchor bracket.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Installing safety seats incorrectly will increase the risk of injury in the event of a collision.**

- **Never attach the tether belt to a fastening hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never attach or secure luggage or other items to the lower anchor points (ISOFIX) or Top Tether anchor points.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Child restraint anchors are designed to support the loads of properly adjusted child restraint systems. Under no circumstances should they be used to attach adult seat belts, harnesses or other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

## Fitting a child seat using the seat belt

If you want to fit a universal approval category (U) child seat in your vehicle, you must check that the seat is approved for your vehicle.

You will find any necessary information on the child seat's orange ECE approval label.

The following table shows the different fitting options:

| Child seat | Child seat orientation | Front passenger seat | | Rear side seat | Rear central seat[a)] |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Airbag enabled[b)] | Airbag deactivated[c)] | | |
| Group 0 up to 10 kg | Rear facing | X | U | U | U |
| Group 0+ up to 13 kg | Rear facing | X | U | U | U |
| Group I 9 to 18 kg | Rear facing | X | U | U | U |
| | Forward-facing | U | X | U | U |
| Group II 15 to 25 kg | Forward-facing | U | X | U | U |
| Group III 22 to 36 kg | Forward-facing | U | X | U | U |
| Child seats as per ECE-R129 | Rear facing | X | U | U | U |
| | Forward-facing | U | X | U | U |

X: Position not compatible for the installation of seats in this configuration.

U: Position suitable for the installation of seats in this configuration.

[a)] Do not use semi-universal seats that use the vehicle's seat belt and a support leg as a securing system on the centre rear seat.

[b)] Move the front passenger seat as far as possible from the airbag. Ensure that the upper attachment point of the vehicle's seat belt remains behind the child seat.

[c)] Seats **without** height adjustment should be placed in their rearmost position. Seats **with** height adjustment should be placed in their rearmost and highest position.

### Fitting a child seat using the seat belt

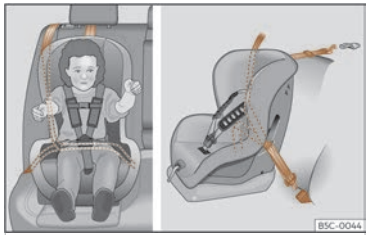



**Fig. 46** On rear seats: installing a child seat.

- Put the seat belt in place and pass it through the child seat according to the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the seat's buckle until you hear the engagement click.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When travelling, children must be secured in the vehicle with a restraint system suitable for age, weight and size.**

- **Always read and observe information and warnings concerning the use of child seats** **›››** page 58.

# In case of emergency

## Hazard warning lights

**Fig. 47** Dashboard: hazard warning lights button.

The hazard warning lights are used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle in emergencies.

If your vehicle is stationary:

1. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from road traffic.
2. Press the button to switch on the hazard warning lights ››› ⚠.
3. Apply the electronic parking brake.
4. Disconnect the drive system.
5. Follow the legal provisions of each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, light beacon, etc.).
6. Always carry the key with you when leaving the vehicle.

All turn signals flash simultaneously when the hazard warning lights are switched on. The two turn signal lamps ⬅ ➡ and the turn signal lamp in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The simultaneous hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

While the hazard warning lights are on, you can signal a direction or lane change, e.g. during towing, by operating the turn signal lever. The hazard warning lights remain switched off during this time.

### Emergency braking warning

If the vehicle brakes suddenly and continuously at a speed of more than 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake light flashes several times per second to warn the vehicles driving behind. If you continue braking, the hazard warning lights will come on automatically when the vehicle comes to a standstill. They switch off automatically when the vehicle starts to move again.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The risk of an accident increases if your vehicle breaks down. Always use the hazard warning lights and a warning triangle (or light beacon, depending on the country) to draw the attention of other road users to your stationary vehicle.**
- **Never leave anybody inside the vehicle, particularly children or anybody who may need help. This is especially important when the doors are locked. Individuals locked in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.**

**Note**

- **The 12-volt vehicle battery will run down if the hazard warning lights are left on for a long time (even if the ignition is switched off).**
- **The use of the hazard warning lights described here is subject to the relevant statutory requirements.**

## Behaviour in the event of an accident or fire

### Actions to take in the event of a fire or accident

For your own safety and that of other passengers, the following points should be observed in the order given ››› ⚠:

- Disconnect the drive system.
- If possible, switch on the hazard warning lights ››› page 66.
- Follow the legal provisions of each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, light beacon, etc.).
- If necessary, get any people out of the hazard area and apply first aid.
- Notify the emergency services. Tell them that it is an electric vehicle.
- Wait at a safe distance from the scene of the accident for the emergency services to arrive.
- Inform the emergency services and persons involved in the accident that it is an electric vehicle.
- In case of fire, do not attempt to extinguish the fire yourself or remain near the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your own safety, do not ignore this important check list, otherwise accidents and serious injuries could occur.**

- **Always complete the operations on the check list and always bear in mind the general safety measures.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**In the event of fire, an explosion may occur and substances harmful to health may be released, which can cause serious injury.**

- **Never stay near the burning vehicle.**

**Note**

**If the system detects an accident, the high-voltage battery is automatically deactivated.**

- **If the battery is deactivated, contact a specialist workshop and have the battery repaired.**

## Information call, Assistance call and Emergency call service

**Fig. 48** On the roof console: controls for voice services.

**Fig. 49** Emergency call button.

Depending on the equipment, an emergency call system may be located on the roof console.

The following voice services can be run by pressing the buttons ℹ , ✂ and SOS ››› **Fig. 48**:

- Information call.
- Assistance call.
- Emergency call service.

A built-in control unit establishes the connection.

When a voice service is activated, a connection is established with a phone line.

**Control lamp.**

There is a control lamp on the control ››› **Fig. 48** (arrow). It shows the following statuses:

- **Off:** the emergency call service is not available.
- **Flashing red for approx. 20 seconds after switching on the ignition:** the emergency call service is deactivated.
- **Lights up red:** system failure. The emergency call service is available with limitations. CUPRA suggests going to a specialised workshop.
- **Green on:** the emergency call service is available; the system is ready for operation in the vehicle.
- **Flashes green:** There is an ongoing voice connection.

**✂ Assistance call**

With the breakdown call you can directly request specialised help in the event of a breakdown.

Parallel to the voice call, some vehicle data is transmitted, e.g. your current location.

**ℹ Information call**

With an information call, a call is placed to CUPRA S.A. customer care service.

**SOS Types of emergency call**

- **Public** mandatory by law): emergency call made to the emergency services of the country you are driving in, in the language of that country. ››› **page 70**.
- **Private:** an emergency call that is made to a “CUPRA call centre”, which offers improved customer service, such as service in the language selected in the infotainment system. At any time, the user can choose to cancel the *private emergency call* in order to be attended by the country's emergency services.

**Private emergency call**

If the private emergency call service is available in the vehicle's service portfolio, the emergency call service is activated by default for a limited period of time.

- The emergency call service can be used to organise help as quickly as possible in an emergency situation.
- When the emergency call service is activated, a connection is made to the CUPRA emergency call centre.
- If an emergency call is made manually or, in the event of an accident, when the airbag or seatbelt pretensioner is triggered, the data relevant to the emergency call will be transmitted automatically, for example, the current location of the vehicle.
- The telephone contact person communicates in the language set in the vehicle's Infotainment system. If this language is not available in the system, English will be used.
- Additional components such as emergency call microphone, an emergency loudspeaker and an integrated battery which is separate

from the integrated power supply, are installed to ensure operation even after a serious accident.

- The private emergency call service can be deactivated from the “list of services” or by preventing data transmission in the infotainment system.

### Starting an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press the button cover SOS and open the cover ››› Fig. 48.
2. Press and hold the emergency call button for a few seconds ››› Fig. 49 ①.

   The emergency call is activated and a voice connection is established with the emergency coordination centre.

The emergency call can also be activated manually via the Infotainment system.

If you press the emergency call button inadvertently, hang up the call immediately:

1. Press the emergency call button again until the control light stays green.

> **Note**
>
> **Only press the emergency call button ››› Fig. 49 in the event of an emergency.**

### Automatic activation of an emergency call

The automatic emergency call is only activated if the ignition is switched on.

The connection to the CUPRA emergency centre is automatically established in the following situations:

- Immediately after the airbags are triggered.
- Immediately after activation of the seatbelt pretensioner.
- Depending on equipment, in the event of intervention of the Emergency Assist system.

The automatic emergency call cannot be interrupted by pressing the emergency call button ››› Fig. 49.

If enquiries from the CUPRA emergency call centre remain unanswered, rescue measures are dispatched automatically.

### Integrated battery

The integrated battery ensures that the emergency call system remains available for some time even if the 12-volt battery has been disconnected or has failed.

If the integrated battery discharges or is defective, a message stating this is displayed on the instrument cluster display. Go to a specialised workshop and ask for the battery to be replaced.

### Emergency call data transmission

When an emergency call is made, the available data are transmitted to the CUPRA emergency call centre so that the necessary rescue measures can be determined.

Vehicle location data is continuously overwritten. This means that the vehicle is not subject to permanent monitoring.

The data related to the emergency call is only processed to ensure the correct operation of the emergency call system. The system will automatically delete the data related to the call a few hours after the call is activated.

The sent data includes:

- The vehicle's current position at the time the emergency call is activated.
- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle and type of drive.
- Type of activation (automatic or manual).
- Type of call.
- Direction in which the vehicle was travelling at the time the emergency call was activated.
- Moment of the collision.
- Estimated number of vehicle occupants.
- Language selected in the infotainment system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The following conditions may mean that it is not possible to make a public or private emergency call, either manually or automatically, or that it is only possible to a limited extent:**

- **The emergency call is made in an area with little or no mobile or GPS coverage.**
- **In areas with sufficient mobile and GPS signal reception, the mobile network of the telecommunication providers is not available. In this case, the emergency call, if available in the vehicle, uses the legally required emergency call system.**
- **In areas with sufficient mobile and satellite signal reception, a 2G/3G mobile telecommunication provider network is not available.**
- **In some countries, the emergency call service may not be available and depending on the location of the vehicle, the control lamp LEDs, and even the operation of the different types of calls, could behave in a specific way.**
- **There is no valid licence for the use of the emergency call service.**
- **The components of the vehicle required for the emergency phone call are damaged or do not get enough power.**
- **The emergency call service function has been deactivated via the "list of services" or by preventing data transmission. In this case, the emergency call, if available in the vehicle, is forwarded to the public emergency call service automatically.**
- **If the private emergency call system cannot be executed for technical reasons, calls are forwarded to the public emergency call service automatically.**
- **The vehicle's ignition is not on.**

**Note**

**The operation of the emergency call system, which is required by law, may be limited if an infotainment system is retrofitted**

**Note**

**The emergency call, breakdown call and information service are only available in certain countries.**

## eCall emergency call service, required by law.

Depending on the equipment and the country, the vehicle may be fitted with an emergency call system. In some countries, the free public emergency call system is activated by default. The control element is located on the roof console>>> Fig. 48.

With the emergency call, help can be organised as quickly as possible in emergency situations. A voice connection is established with a public rescue coordination centre. The telephone contact person communicates in the language of the country in which the vehicle is located. In addition, any legally required data relevant to emergency calls is automatically transmitted to the public rescue control centre, such as the vehicle's current location.

The required connection is made via a factory-installed control unit. Additional components such as an emergency call microphone, an emergency loudspeaker and an integrated battery which is independent of the integrated power supply, are required to ensure operation even after a serious accident.

### Activating an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press the button cover SOS and open the cover>>> Fig. 48.
2. Press and hold the emergency call button for a few seconds>>> Fig. 49 ①.

   The emergency call is activated and a voice connection is established with the emergency coordination centre.

If you press the emergency call button inadvertently, hang up the call immediately:

1. Press the emergency call button again until the control light stays green.

**Note**

**Only press the emergency call button >>> Fig. 49 in the event of an emergency.**

**Automatic activation of an emergency call**

The automatic emergency call is only activated if the ignition is switched on.

A connection to the public rescue coordination centre is automatically established in the following situations:

- Immediately after the airbags are triggered.
- Immediately after activation of the seatbelt pretensioner.
- Depending on equipment, in the event of intervention of the Emergency Assist system.

The automatic emergency call cannot be interrupted by pressing the emergency call button››› Fig. 49.

If the public rescue control centre's questions remain unanswered, the rescue measures begin automatically.

## Troubleshooting

**Fault in the emergency call service.**

The control lamp of the emergency call button lights up in red and stays on. In addition, the following message may appear on the instrument cluster display:

**Error: Emergency call function. Workshop!**

There is a fault in the emergency call service. In this case, you will not be able to make any emergency calls.

1. Immediately visit a qualified specialist workshop and have the fault repaired. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.

**Limited emergency call service**

The control lamp of the emergency call button lights up in red and stays on. In addition, the following message may appear on the instrument cluster display:

**Emergency call function limited. Workshop!**

The Emergency Call Service is only available with limitations. E.g. no voice connection to the CUPRA emergency call centre can be established.

1. Immediately visit a qualified specialist workshop and have the fault repaired. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.

# High-voltage battery

## Safety instructions

### Introduction

**⚠ DANGER**

The vehicle's high-voltage network and the high-voltage battery are hazardous and can cause burns and other injuries, including fatal electric shocks.

- It should always be assumed that the high-voltage battery is fully charged and that all of its components are live. This may also be the case when the ignition is switched off.
- Never touch the high-voltage cables, the high-voltage battery or its poles, or allow them to come into contact with jewellery or other metal objects, especially if the high-voltage cables, the high-voltage battery or its poles are damaged.
- Never take it upon yourself to perform any type of work on the high-voltage network, on the high-voltage cables or the high-voltage battery.
- Never open or perform maintenance or repairs on components or parts of the high voltage network, or disconnect them from this network.
- Never damage, modify or remove the orange high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover from the high-voltage battery.
- Work on the high-voltage system, as well as on any systems that may be indirectly influenced by it, should only be carried out by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training.
- Work in the immediate vicinity of high-voltage cables and high-voltage components with tools that are sharp, give off shavings or that have heat sources, such as hot air, thermal bonding or welding work, may only be performed after disconnecting the voltage. The high voltage should only be disconnected by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training.
- All CUPRA guidelines and standards must be followed when performing any work on the high-voltage system and the high-voltage battery.
- The gases that are emitted or leaked from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.
- Damage to the vehicle or high voltage battery could cause an immediate or delayed leak of toxic gases. The emitted gases could also cause a fire. Do not inhale the gases.
- Never touch the liquids that spill from the high voltage battery and do not touch the emitted gases, particularly if the battery is damaged.
- In the event of a fire, leave the danger area and call the fire department.
- Always inform the fire fighters and the emergency service that the vehicle is fitted with a high-voltage battery.

**⚠ DANGER**

If works are performed on the high-voltage system and on the high-voltage components in an inappropriate manner, this may lead to faults in the operation, accidents and injuries.

- Work on the high-voltage system must only be performed by authorized specialized services with the corresponding permit.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

If the vehicle suffers an accident or collision with an obstacle, the high-voltage battery must be checked by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training.

### High voltage warning lettering

#### Warning lettering on the vehicle

The following parts of the vehicle can be identified with the depicted warning lettering ››› Fig. 50, ››› Fig. 51, ››› Fig. 52 , ››› Fig. 53:

- Covers and lids behind which live high-voltage components are located.
- All the high-voltage components, including the high-voltage battery.
- Under the front bonnet.

**Fig. 50** Warning lettering.

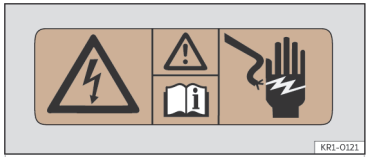



**Fig. 51** Warning lettering.

The warning lettering ››› **Fig. 50** and ››› **Fig. 51** indicate high electrical voltage.

**Fig. 52** Warning lettering.

The components of the high voltage system can become very hot and should not be touched ››› **Fig. 52**.

**Fig. 53** High-voltage battery warning lettering.

››› **Fig. 53**

1. High voltage can cause serious injury or even death. Never touch the battery poles with bare fingers, tools, jewellery or other metal objects.
2. The high-voltage battery contains hazardous liquid and solid substances. Emitted gases can cause severe burns and blindness. Suitable eye protection and protective clothing must always be worn when working on the high voltage battery to prevent battery fluid coming into contact with the skin and eyes. If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, the affected areas should be rinsed with clean running water for at least 15 minutes, and then a doctor should be consulted immediately.
3. The high-voltage battery may burn. The high-voltage battery should never be exposed to fire, sparks or naked flame. The high voltage battery must always be handled with care to avoid damage and fluid leakages.
4. The high-voltage battery should always be kept out of the reach of children.
5. You will find further information and warnings in the usage instructions and workshop documentation.
6. Use water to extinguish.

⑦ Maintenance work on the high-voltage battery must only be performed by specialized personnel with the corresponding qualifications and training. Never modify the high-voltage battery. When the high-voltage battery is open, ensure it does not come into contact with water or other liquids. Liquids may cause short circuits, electrical shocks and burns.

# Conservation of the high-voltage battery

## Conservation instructions

### Reliability and capacity of the high-voltage battery

In principle, lithium ion batteries are subject to ageing and wear and tear throughout their useful life due to their physical and chemical characteristics. Correct handling of the high-voltage battery makes an essential contribution to keeping it in a reliable state in the long term and to achieving high battery capacity and range. Therefore, it is extremely important to respect the following conservation instructions for the high voltage battery. These maintenance instructions are essential for maintaining the vehicle's value over time.

Please also observe the applicable CUPRA warranty conditions for the high-voltage battery.

### Conservation instructions

CUPRA recommends the following conservation instructions:

- When using the vehicle regularly, do not charge the battery to 100%. Set a maximum charge limit of 80% in the charging settings.
- As much as possible avoid fully discharging the high-voltage battery, such as by leaving the vehicle parked for a prolonged time with a low load level. The charge level must not drop below 20% for long periods of time >>> ⓘ.
- Before long trips, charge the high voltage battery to 100 %. Set the departure time in the infotainment system >>> page 85 and start driving as soon as possible.
- To prolong the life of the high-voltage battery, use DC direct current fast charging as little as possible.
- As far as possible, keep the “Battery Care Mode” function active in the **General Charging Settings** >>> page 87 menu.

### Vehicle parking times

- If there is a frost, do not park the vehicle for several hours with a charge level of lower than 40% >>> ⓘ.
- If the vehicle is to be parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level should be between 40% and 70%.
- Avoid exposing the vehicle to temperatures below -30 °C as far as possible, or to direct sunlight at high temperatures.
- To improve comfort and performance, make sparse use of the stationary air conditioning (depending on the equipment), particularly in temperatures lower than -15 °C >>> page 150.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The high-voltage battery must not be used as a stationary power supply. This can cause irreversible damage to the high-voltage battery.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**If the vehicle is parked for a long time with the high-voltage battery discharged, it may no longer be possible to charge the battery or start the vehicle. Irreversible damage could be caused to the high voltage battery in the long term.**

- **Charge the high-voltage battery at regular intervals.**

**Note**

- **The high voltage battery provides less power when the outside temperature is very low. If its state of charge is also low, the power may decrease significantly shortly after starting to drive** >>> page 159.
- **After parking, the radiator fan may continue to run and make noise for several minutes.**

# Charging the high-voltage battery

## Introduction

Check that the drive system is deactivated and that the charging cable and infrastructure are in a perfect state of repair.

### Types of charging

The following charging types are possible for the vehicle:

- *Charging with alternating current (AC) at a public or home charging station* >>> page 77:

Charging at high power. The maximum achievable charging power depends on the charging station and charging cable that is used and the performance of the vehicle's charger.

- *Charging with alternating current (AC) at a household socket* >>> page 77:

The electrical installation of the house must have been checked and be in perfect working order >>> ⚠. Due to the large capacity of the battery and the low power of this method, a full charge will take more than 20 hours (8 hours, depending on the market).

- *Charging with direct current (DC) at a fast charging station* >>> page 78:

This is the most powerful type of charge. The charging time decreases significantly. Please note the information on charging frequently with direct current (DC) >>> ⓘ.

### Protection against current leakage

The vehicle is fitted with a direct current (DC) leakage protection device. This prevents any current leakage that may occur during charging from reaching the house's electrically installation through the charging cable.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the battery is charged in an inappropriate manner, if no consideration is given to the appropriate safety measures or the high-voltage battery is used in an inadequate manner, this could lead to short circuits, electrical shocks, explosions, fires, burns and serious injuries, and even death.**

- **Always respect the stipulated order of the operations to avoid the risk of suffering an electric shock or serious injuries due to the residual energy in the charging accumulator.**
- **Please observe the safety and handling instructions of the charging cable supplied with the vehicle** >>> page 90.
- **When charging, only use power sockets that are appropriately fitted, have been checked and are not damaged, as well as electrical installations that are in perfect working order. Duly qualified technicians should check the power sockets and the electrical installation on a regular basis.**
- **Never charge the vehicle in places where there is a danger of explosion. The components of the charging cable can cause sparks and, therefore, may ignite flammable fumes or explosives.**
- **Always protect the connectors from moisture and from water and other fluids getting inside directly.**
- **For safety reasons, never perform other works on the vehicle while charging.**
- **Always complete the charging process before unplugging the connector from the electrical network. Otherwise the charging cable and the electrical installation may also be damaged.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle is driven with a very low charge level of the high-voltage battery, the vehicle may stall in traffic, causing serious damage or accidents and injuries.**

**NOTICE**

Fast charging with direct current (DC) uses very high power. Frequent use of fast charging can permanently reduce the charging capacity of the high-voltage battery.

- The battery should preferably be charged with alternating current (AC) from a public or domestic charging station.

**NOTICE**

During the charging process, do not rest or wind the charging cable on the charging cover, as this could damage the part.

**Note**

- To charge the high-voltage battery using alternating current (AC), CUPRA recommends using a home or other type of charging station and charging with maximum charging power. These charging options are more efficient than using a domestic power socket.
- Please note the technical data on your vehicle's charging power. You can get more information from a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

- The high-voltage battery can only be charged at charging stations that meet the requirements of the country in questions and at least one of the following standards:
  - IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe).
  - ISO 15118 (-1, -2, -3).
  - SAE J1772 ( USA, Mexico)
- In the event of very low or very high temperatures, it may only be possible to charge the high-voltage battery in a limited manner.

## Identification of compatible charging infrastructure

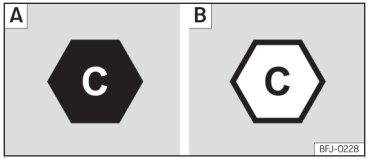



**Fig. 54** Identification of alternating current (AC) and type 2 connector.

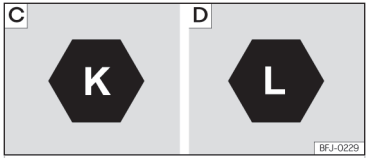



**Fig. 55** Identification of direct current (DC) and the vehicle's CCS connector

### Compatibility between vehicles and charging infrastructure

The following indicators according to the EN 17186 standard provide information about whether the infrastructure's charging connectors are suitable for the vehicle ››› ⚠.

**Indicators >>> Fig. 54**

A In the vehicle

B At the charging station

**Indicators >>> Fig. 55**

C Voltage up to 500 volts

D Voltage of up to 1000 volts.

The indicators are located on the vehicle's charging socket, on components of the local charging infrastructure (charging station, socket) and on the charging cable. The indicators refer to charging connection standards according to IEC 62196.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Charging the vehicle at unverified electrical installations can cause serious injury and damage.**

- **If there is no indicator or if the charging infrastructure is unknown, an electrical installation expert should be consulted first.**

## Charging with alternating current (AC)

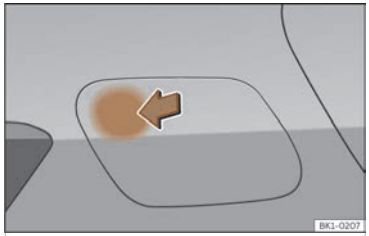



**Fig. 56** Opening the charging socket cover.

**Fig. 57** Behind the battery charging cover on the rear right-hand side: Charging socket

**>>> Fig. 57**

1 Charging process display

2 Charging socket

The battery charger installed in the vehicle converts alternating current from the public supply into direct current.

*AC charging station or socket cable*: The vehicle's high-voltage battery can be charged using alternating current (AC) through the corresponding charging socket 2.

**Connecting the charging cable**

- Firstly, connect the charging cable to the socket, or public or home charging station. Next, fully unwind it.
- *Charging cable for domestic power sockets*: The protection device performs a self-test >>> page 92.
- If the vehicle is unlocked, the battery charging cover opens when the indicated zone is pressed >>> **Fig. 56**.
- Plug the charging connector into the charging socket 2. Check that the charging connector is fully plugged in.

The connector locks automatically.

The LED (charging process indicator) of the charging socket 1 flashes or flashes white >>> **Fig. 57** , >>> page 79.

You can set the charging as required in the infotainment system >>> page 84.

### Automatic start of the charging process

If scheduled charging is not activated, the charging process starts immediately ››› page 85. The external charging infrastructure must be active.

Most public charging stations require authentication to start the process. It is important to verify that the authentication has been performed correctly, otherwise it could cause a system malfunction.

### During charging

The charging process indicator on the charging socket ① flashes green. The charging connector is locked.

If the charging process indicator lights up red, there is a fault ››› page 79.

### Interrupting the charging process

The charging process can be interrupted:

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Press the **Stop charging** function button of the infotainment system. The charging process indicator located next to the charging socket ① lights up white. If you want the charging connector to unlock automatically, the **Release connector automatically** setting must be selected in the charging settings ››› page 87.
- Press the **Continue** button to restart the process. The charging connector locks. In some cases you may need to authenticate yourself again in the charging station.

To restart the charging process just press the function button.

### After charging

When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging process display on the charging socket lights up green.

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Unplug the charging connector from the charging socket within 30 seconds.
- **OR:** if **Release connector automatically** is activated in the charging settings ››› page 87, the charging connector automatically unlocks once the charging process is complete.
- Disconnect the charging cable from the power supply and replace the protective cap.
- Close the charging cover and make sure you hear it click into place.

## Charging with direct current (DC)

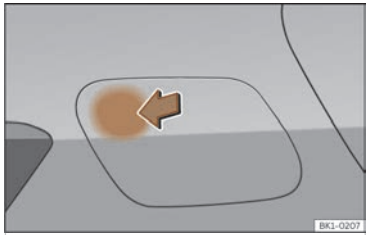



**Fig. 58** Opening the charging socket cover.

**Fig. 59** Behind the battery charging cover on the rear right-hand side.

① Charging process display
② Charging socket
③ Protective cap

The alternating current is converted into direct current outside the vehicle. A considerably higher charging power is achieved than when charging with alternating current (AC).

*Public fast-charging station*: The high-voltage battery can be charged with direct current (DC) at an appropriate charging station. The charging time decreases significantly.

Use a charging cable less than 30 metres long.

### Connecting the charging cable

- Unlock the vehicle.
- Press the battery's charging socket cover in the area of the arrow to open it ››› **Fig. 58**.
- Remove the protective cap and hang it on the hook ››› **Fig. 59** ③
- Plug the charging station's charging connector into the charging socket ››› **Fig. 59** ②

The connector locks automatically.

The LED (charging process indicator) of the charging socket flashes or flashes white ››› **Fig. 59** ① ››› **page 79**

### Automatic start of charging

Switch on the charging station ››› ⓘ.

The charging process will start immediately.

Most public charging stations require authentication to start the process. It is important to verify that the authentication has been performed correctly, otherwise it could cause a system malfunction.

### During charging

The charging process indicator on the charging socket ① flashes green ››› **Fig. 59**.

If the charging process indicator lights up red, there is a fault ››› **page 79**.

### Interrupting the charging process

The charging process can be stopped before the desired state of charge is reached:

- Tap the **Stop charging** function button on the infotainment system display. The charging process indicator located next to the charging socket ① lights up white ››› **Fig. 59**. The charging connector is unlocked.

### After charging

When the desired state of charge has been reached, the charging process indicator on the charging socket will light up green.

After charging, the charging connector is automatically unlocked from the charging station if the **Release automatic connector** option is activated in the charging settings.

- Unplug the charging connector from the charging socket.
- Place the protective cap on the charging socket's lower connection ››› **Fig. 59** ③
- Close the cover of the battery charging socket until you hear it has engaged.

**NOTICE**

**To use the charging station, bear in mind the manufacturer's indications and usage instructions.**

## Charging process display

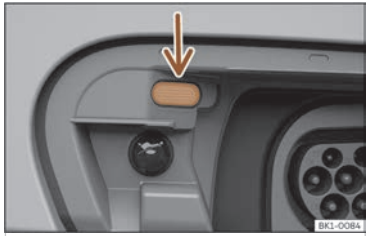



**Fig. 60** Behind the battery charging socket cover: charging process indicator.

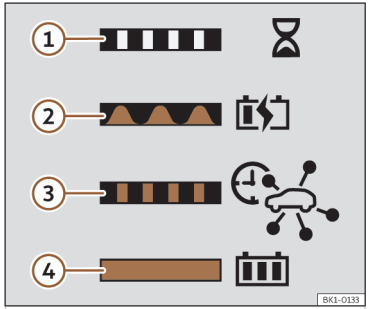



**Fig. 61** On the inside face of the cover of the battery charging socket: sticker with information on the charging process display.

An LED light on the charging socket ››› **Fig. 60** (arrow) shows the status of the charging process.

A sticker on the battery charging cover provides information on the meaning of the LEDs ››› **Fig. 61**.

**Charging process displays:**

**The LED flashes**

- The vehicle has detected the charging connector.

**White LED**

- ① Flashing: communication between the vehicle and the charging infrastructure is being established. The charging process is being prepared.
- Permanently on: no active charging function In this case it acts as a courtesy light so the charge port can be located easily in low-light conditions.

**Green LED**

- ② Pulsing: the vehicle is charging (active charging process).
- ③ Flashing: a delayed-charging process is active (or scheduled to a departure time and/or favourite time) but charging has not yet started.
- ④ Solid: the charging process has finished without problems.
- Flashes red: emergency charging at reduced power due to a failure to recognize the charging connector.

**Red LED**

- Permanently on: there is a fault in the system. The charging process cannot start or has been interrupted.

Get specialist assistance if the charging process indicator permanently indicates a defect.

**Charging socket lighting**

In the dark, the charging socket's side lighting (white LED) can facilitate orientation on the vehicle:

*On*

- The vehicle has been unlocked.
- **OR**: The charging connector has been unplugged from the charging socket.

*Off*

- After unlocking or locking the vehicle, the lighting switches off automatically after a while.

**Charging process indicator lamp**

During charging process, the lamp is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

White indicator: connector plugged in, no charging process active.

Green indicator: connector plugged in, charging process active.

## Troubleshooting

**The electrical system is not working properly. Stop safely!**

The warning lamp lights up red. A message is displayed in this regard.

There is a fault in the high voltage system. The high voltage components may be damaged ››› ⚠.

It is not possible to charge the high-voltage battery.

- **The vehicle must be parked in a safe place**. Park the vehicle outdoors as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Switch off the drive system.
- Seek professional assistance.

**and HV battery: Risk of fire! Stop safely and get out immediately. Call the emergency services.**

The warning lamp lights up red and is displayed along with with a text message on the instrument cluster accompanied by a continuous audible warning.

The high voltage battery temperature is too high .

If this message is displayed on the instrument cluster, please note ››› and follow the steps below:

1. **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle immediately, taking into account the traffic situation.
2. Choose a safe place outdoors, away from buildings or vehicles, canopies, covered car parks or similar places.
3. If possible, switch on the hazard warning lights.
4. Before leaving the vehicle, make sure it is immobilised (parking brake, parking lock **P**).
5. Switch off the ignition and leave the ignition key on the dash panel or in a visible place so that the emergency services can use it (for example to recover the vehicle from a hazardous area).
6. Exit the vehicle and make sure that there are no other people or animals left inside.
7. Make sure that you leave the danger zone together with all other vehicle occupants and that everyone remains in an area that is protected from traffic (e.g. behind the guard rail).
8. Notify the emergency services. Do not try to put out the fire yourself.

If the message is hidden, the warning lamp remains visible .

The audible warning can only be turned off by a qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit an official dealer.

### Protection functions in the event of a failure

If a serious high-voltage-battery failure occurs, the vehicle can activate additional protection functions; for example, the hazard lights may switch on or the horn may sound immediately after the ignition is turned off.

**DANGER**

**If there is a risk of fire in the high-voltage battery, toxic gases may escape or components may be released from the high voltage battery. There is a risk of serious injury, burns or lethal electric shocks.**

- **Park the vehicle safely as soon as possible** ››› page 67, *Behaviour in the event of an accident or fire*.
- **Get out of the vehicle and keep a safe distance away from it.**
- **Call the fire department immediately.**

### Deep discharge of the high-voltage battery due to prolonged parking time

The control lamp lights up red. A message is displayed.

The high-voltage battery can be damaged if, for example, the vehicle is not used for a long time.

- Charge the high-voltage battery immediately.

### High voltage battery discharged

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A message is displayed.

- Charge the high-voltage battery immediately.

### Low state of charge in the high-voltage battery

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A message is displayed showing the remaining range.

The high-voltage battery charge has reached the reserve level.

- Charge the high-voltage battery.

### Range calculation fault

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A message is displayed.

There is a fault in the range calculation. Contact a specialised workshop.

### The charging process is not possible or has been paused

The charging process indicator located next to the charging socket lights up red.

Before visiting a specialist workshop, you can try the following solutions:

- Plug the charging cable back in.
- Check that the charging connector is plugged in correctly.
- Check if a fault is displayed on the charging station or, depending on the equipment, on the charging cable protection device.

If the fault cannot be rectified, contact a specialist workshop immediately.

### The charging cable protection device disconnects

If electrical devices with a separate electrical connection, e.g. a cool box, are used in the vehicle at the same time, the self-test of the protective device may detect a fault.

- Please note the order! First connect the charging cable to the external power supply and then to the charging socket.

### The charging time varies

During the direct current (DC) charging process, the charging current is reduced automatically to preventing the high-voltage battery from overheating.

After several fast charging processes in a row, the charging time is temporarily extended.

**⚠ DANGER**

**High-voltage components, including the battery and high-voltage cables, may be live and damaged. The high voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns, other injuries and fatal electric shocks.**

- **Do not touch the high voltage components!**

## Emergency release of the charging connector

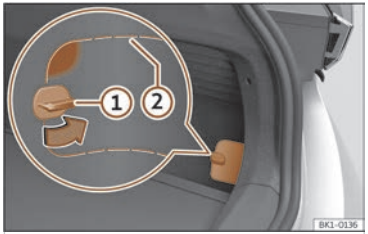



**Fig. 62** On the lower right-hand side of the luggage compartment trim: cover with cutting lines.

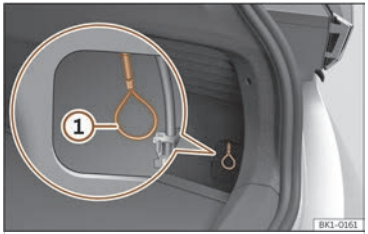



**Fig. 63** Behind the cover: emergency unlock of the charging connector.

### Unlocking the charging connector

Prerequisites:

- The charging connector is plugged in correctly.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The charging process has ended or has paused >>> page 75.
- When charging with alternating current (AC), the setting **Release connector automatically** is activated in the infotainment system. >>> page 87.

The manual release mechanism must be used if these prerequisites are met and it is still impossible to unplug the charging connector >>> ⚠.

### Emergency electrical release of the charging connector

To avoid having to perform a manual emergency release in the luggage compartment, try releasing the charging connector electronically using the vehicle's central locking.

- Unlock the vehicle three times in a row.
- Unplug the charging connector.

### Manual release of the charging connector

- Open the luggage compartment. On the lower right hand side there is a cover with a lock.
- Turn the cover lock >>> Fig. 62 ① through 90°.
- Press the surface over the lock inwards >>> Fig. 62 (marked zone).
- Insert your hand through the opening and pull the cover off. If necessary, apply a suitable object along the cutting lines ② >>> Fig. 62.
- Open the cover.
- Pull the emergency manual release loop ① >>> Fig. 63. The charging connector can be removed >>> ⚠.
- Close the luggage compartment trim cover and lock.

Get a specialist workshop to inspect the charging socket immediately.

**⚠ DANGER**

**If the charging connector unexpectedly remains locked, the fault may be caused by the vehicle or charging station. The manual emergency release can make live contacts accessible. In this case, touching the contacts of the charging socket may result in burns, other injuries or a fatal electric shock.**

- **Never touch the contacts of the charging socket or the charging connector.**

**Note**

**The manual release mechanism of the charging connector should only be used in the event of a failure.**

# Charging settings

## Overview

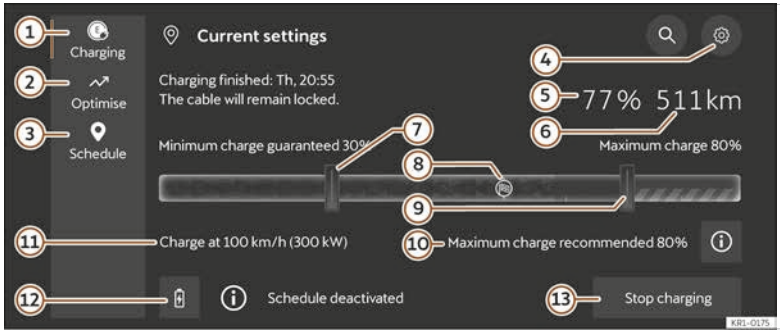



**Fig. 64** In the infotainment system: Charging main menu.

### Indications in the Charging main menu

Some of the following indications are only available when a charging schedule is active ››› page 85.

① Charge scheduling ››› page 85.

② Battery preheating for maximum power in fast charge.

③ Locating charging points.

④ General charging settings ››› page 87.

⑤ Current state of charge of the high-voltage battery.

⑥ Current electric range.

⑦ Minimum charging level. Only visible with an active charging mode, based on a schedule (not visible in immediate charging mode). Allows the minimum charging level to be changed. If a destination is set, it suggests the minimum charging level to reach the destination ››› page 85.

⑧ Navigation symbol with planned charging stops: the maximum charging level is automatically adjusted for the next suggested stop.

⑨ Touch pad for adjusting the maximum charging level of the battery ››› page 85.

⑩ Maximum set battery charging level.

⑪ Charging speed and power: the increase in range per hour or per minute when charging at the current charging power is displayed. The charging power depends on the charging infrastructure and the temperature of the high-voltage battery. The charging power can vary during the process.

⑫ Charging mode selector based on the schedule for the vehicle's current position. Displayed only if a schedule has been previously set up. Provides extra information about the schedule ››› page 85.

(13) End the charge or restart it. Visible during an active charging process.

### Instructions for plugging in the charging connector

Information on the current charging process is displayed in the infotainment system.

Close the screen:

- Press the ✕ function button.
- **EITHER:** the display ends automatically after 2 minutes.
- **OR:** lock the vehicle.

## Charging modes

### Immediate charging (default charging setting)

1. Set the maximum battery charging level for the desired range in the Infotainment system >>> page 84.
2. Plug in the charging cable
3. Charging starts automatically.[1)]

### Programmed charging

The scheduled charge is associated with a GPS location. To create a scheduled charge, you must be at the location where you wish to create the charging schedule, e.g. at home, in your office, etc.

To schedule charging, follow the steps below:

1. Access the **Schedule** charging menu >>> Fig. 64 (1).
2. Add a new charging schedule based on your current location.
3. Configure the schedule.
4. Return to the charging menu to activate the desired schedule.
5. Select the schedule from the drop-down button.

**Note**

- **If none of the schedules are activated, the vehicle will default to an immediate charge.**
- **When you leave and return to the scheduled location, the vehicle will run the most recently activated schedule.**
- **Scheduling is not compatible with DC charging points.**

### Delete a schedule:

1. Open the main **Charging** menu.
2. Tap the **Schedule** tab.
3. Press and hold the **Edit** button.
4. Delete the desired scheduling.

## Scheduled charging settings

### Departure time

Allows you to configure the time and days you want to have your vehicle charged for a certain location.

The vehicle will charge to the maximum level you have set.

You can use up to 3 different departure times and activate or deactivate them at any time by re-entering the schedule.

### Preferred times

Allows you to configure up to four time slots in which the vehicle will prioritise charging. This is ideal if you are on a variable cost energy tariff, because you can charge when the cost of energy is low.

Edit the start and finish times of the time slots by clicking on the time slot and activate the preferred charging times by ticking the checkbox.

### Charging levels

- **Minimum charging level:** The minimum charging level sets the minimum state of charge for a saved schedule. This function can be used to guarantee a minimum range.

[1)] Subject to the conditions of the charging point operator.

1. Open in the **Charging** menu ››› page 84
2. Set the minimum charging level in the schedule.

After connecting the electricity, first of all the vehicle charges up to the battery's minimum charging level. The preferred times or a departure time, for programmed charging, will only be taken into account once this limit is reached.

- **Maximum charging level** ››› Fig. 64 ⑨: Normally, if you use the vehicle regularly, it is not necessary to fully charge the high-voltage battery. The maximum charging level limits the battery's maximum state of charge.

1. Drag the touch slider to the desired value in the infotainment system's scheduling settings ››› page 84.

   The maximum charging level can also be adapted during charging.

**Note**

**In the Charging menu it is possible to change the maximum charging level at any time. The minimum charging level can be changed in the charging menu if you have selected a schedule and are in the location for that schedule.**

### Battery state-of-charge calibration

If your vehicle has a high-voltage battery with LFP chemistry, the state of charge must be calibrated periodically to ensure it is displayed correctly.

If the conditions are met, the vehicle performs this calibration automatically without notifying you. If the charging configuration does not allow this automatic calibration, you will be notified that battery calibration is necessary. The vehicle will notify you when calibration is recommended.

The battery calibration process consists of a full charge from a low state of charge to 100%. During calibration, some charging settings will be inactive.

On reaching 100% the vehicle remains in calibration for a period of time before it can be used. This calibration process can be cancelled at any time if you need to use the vehicle; calibration will need to be performed again during the next charging process.

### Recommendations for charging with alternating current (AC)

*Use in everyday life:*

- A long range is not necessary.
  - Maximum battery charging level: 80% maximum.
  - Minimum battery charging level: 20% as a minimum if the outside temperature is mild or warm, or 40% if it is cool or cold.

*Long journeys:*

- A long range is necessary.
  - Maximum battery charging level: 100%.
  - Minimum battery charging level: 20% as a minimum if the outside temperature is mild or warm, or 40% if it is cool or cold.

**Note**

**Avoid leaving the vehicle parked and start driving immediately after fully charging the battery.**

### Advanced options

- *Reducing the alternating current (AC) charging power:* This reduces the charging current to between 6 and 8 amps to avoid overloading the household power network.
- *Unlocking the alternating current (AC) cable:* Once the charging process is complete, the connector is automatically unlocked.

### Air conditioning

The vehicle interior can be heated or cooled for the configured departure time (depending on the equipment).

Set the desired temperature in the **Stationary air conditioning** ››› page 149 menu.

- Select the **Charging and air conditioning prior to departure** function from the drop-down list of charging modes.

**Note**

**In the departure menu, you can also select the charging mode you want to use for the active schedule** >>> page 36.

## General charging settings

### Open the General charging settings menu

1. Open the main **Charging** menu.
2. Push the ⚙ ④ >>> Fig. 64 button.

### Settings in unknown locations

- Reduce the AC charging power: the charging current is reduced to 6 or 8 amps depending on the country. With this setting you can reduce mains overload when charging at a socket.
- Release the AC power cable: After the charging process is complete, the connector releases automatically.

### Battery Care Mode function

Keeping the battery charged to levels close to 100% while the vehicle is parked is not recommended to ensure good battery health (particularly in hot climates).

This function automatically configures the maximum charge level according to the ambient temperature by setting it to 80% when the temperature is above 5°C and 90% if the temperature is below 0°C. If the temperature drops from 5 to 0°C, it is limited to 90% at 0°C and below. If the temperature rises from 0°C to 5°C, it is limited to 80% from 5°C and higher.

When leaving the vehicle parked in very hot weather (e.g. in the sun in summer) with a high state of charge, to prevent battery drain the Battery Care Mode will activate battery cooling to cool the battery and keep it at a state of charge of around 80%.

If you need to charge the battery to 100%, you do not need to deactivate the function. Set the charge level to 100% and the charging limit will automatically reactivate during the next charge.

**Note**

- **The programmed charge configuration prevails over the "Battery Care" configuration (the maximum charge level is not automatically reset).**
- **CUPRA recommends using the Battery Care Mode function in daily use to prolong the life of the high-voltage battery.**

### Plug & Charge function

Plug & Charge simplifies the payment process at charging stations without the need for cards or phones.

Upon arrival at a public charging station, the vehicle is authenticated and the charging process starts automatically as soon as the charging cable is plugged in. The function depends on the equipment and the country.

*Prerequisites:*

- A subscription has been arranged with an electro-mobility service provider (MSP) compatible with Plug & Charge and the contract has been installed in the vehicle via the My CUPRA Appapp. In order to change the contract installation, the main user must be logged into the vehicle.
- The charging station supports the Plug & Charge function in accordance with ISO 15118.
- Before charging with Plug & Charge, "*Privacy*" mode must be deactivated. The vehicle has active data transmission and localization >>> page 250.
- Plug & Charge has been activated in the Infotainment system.

**Note**

**If you have any questions about My CUPRA App, please contact CUPRA customer care.**

Once the contract has been installed in the vehicle, it is active for all users (primary and additional). All users can deactivate the function, but only the primary user can reactivate it.

To delete the functionality and all Plug & Charge data, you must reset the vehicle to factory settings >>> page 261.

### V2L bidirectional charging

This function allows you, through an adaptor accessory connected to the vehicle's charging socket, to supply power from the vehicle to small household appliances and use them. The maximum output power is 3.6 kW at 220V and 16A.

V2L bidirectional charging only works when the vehicle is stationary and parked.

In the charging settings configuration, you can choose the option to discharge the vehicle only when it is unlocked or also when it is locked.

**Note**

**Using this function leads to battery wear, and therefore all discharged energy will be converted into equivalent kilometres. You can check the usage status in the Vehicle Data section, and check the total energy discharged in the Bidirectional Charging section of the Charging menu settings.**

# Charging with a home energy management system

## Bidirectional Charging

Bidirectional charging allows power to be transferred from your vehicle's battery to your home, and vice-versa.

This requires a home energy management system and a compatible charger.

### Prerequisites

- Vehicle with 77 kWh net battery capacity.
- Compatible home energy management system (HEMS) and bidirectional DC charging station.
- A charging schedule must be created in the infotainment system (**Schedule** tab) >>> page 85.

**Note**

**Ask specialist personnel for confirmation about a suitable home energy management system. It is advisable to use equipment recommended by CUPRA.**

### Functionality

Once the schedule has been created, choose between the **Bidirectional charging** (charge and discharge) or **Discharge** (discharge only) mode in the drop-down charge mode selector.

**Note**

**If discharge mode is activated, the vehicle will not charge even if the connector is properly connected to the charging socket.**

To limit the energy transferred, set the battery charge levels in the Infotainment system. For technical reasons, the lower and upper battery charge levels are limited to 20% and 80% respectively.

The hours defined in the schedule and the vehicle's preferred hours will not apply to bidirectional charging, they will be governed by the schedules of the home e-manager.

In addition, the home energy management system can reuse electricity from the high-voltage battery in the event of a power failure or to power a home without a connection to the electrical grid.

**Note**

**Read and follow the home energy management system's user and operating manual.**

### Selecting the charging mode

1. Press the drop-down list of charging modes and select **Bidirectional Charging** or **Discharge** >>> page 84.

The charging or discharging process starts automatically.

2. Check the desired battery charge level according to the charging schedule.

**Note**

- **It can read the amount of power drawn from the home energy management system. The vehicle discharges with a maximum power of around 10kW.**
- **Using this function leads to battery wear, and therefore all discharged energy will be converted into equivalent kilometres. You can check the usage status in the Vehicle Data section, and check the total energy discharged in the Bidirectional Charging section of the Charging menu settings.**

## Charging with a home energy management system

This function activates monitoring of household consumption to avoid power cuts.

The vehicle monitors the house's instantaneous current consumption and the vehicle automatically reduces its charging power before overloading the electrical grid and causing a power cut.

**Prerequisites**

- Compatible home energy management system (HEMS).
- Compatible charging station.
- A schedule has been created in the infotainment system for the location where the compatible charging station is installed.

**Note**

**Ask specialist personnel for confirmation about a suitable home energy management system. It is advisable to use equipment recommended by CUPRA.**

To activate charging with a home energy management system:

1. Access the main menu **Charging > Schedule**.
2. Create or edit the active schedule for the location where the compatible charger is installed.
3. Activate the option "**Control via home energy management system**".

## Charging with excess solar energy

If you have solar panels at home, you can charge your vehicle using any surplus production. The vehicle will use the energy instead of it being fed into the grid.

It is necessary to be feeding more than 2kW into the grid for the vehicle to charge using the surplus.

**Prerequisites**

- Compatible home energy management system (HEMS).
- Compatible charging station.
- A charging location (routine) has been created in the Infotainment system.
- The vehicle is synchronised using the My CUPRA App.

**Note**

**Ask specialist personnel for confirmation about a suitable home energy management system. It is recommended to use a CUPRA partner.**

**Selecting the charging mode**

- Press on the drop-down charging mode list and select **Charge using solar power** >>> page 84.

The charging process starts automatically.

**Note**

**Depending on the power supplied by the solar installation and the household's instantaneous electricity consumption, the charging process may start earlier than usual and continue later. If necessary, the vehicle automatically regulates the available charging phases for safety reasons.**

# Charging cable

## Introduction

The type of charging cable supplied with the vehicle basically depends on the technical specifications of each country, e.g. charging connector connections for sockets.

CUPRA recommends **exclusively** using the supplied charging cable.

### Notes on the charging cable

- Handle with care.
- Unroll and roll fully.
- Do not twist or bend it over sharp edges.
- Do not crush it or drive the vehicle over it.
- Always unplug it by pulling on the connector.
- Children should not use the charging cable.
- Keep animals away from the charging cable.
- After use, store it safely and without twisting it.

**DANGER**

**Using a charging cable that has been damaged or tampered with can cause serious injury and fatal electric shocks.**

- **Before each use check that the connectors and the charging cable are undamaged, e.g. check for cracks.**
- **Never disassemble the charging cable or its components.**
- **Never use a charging cable that is damaged or has been tampered with.**
- **If the charging cable does not work correct, get a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership to look at it.**

**WARNING**

**An unsecured or improperly secured charging cable may be thrown out of the vehicle's interior in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres. This may cause serious accidents and injuries.**

- **Store the charging cable in the supplied charging cable bag and use the carabiner to attach the bag to the fastening rings at the front of the luggage compartment** >>> page 292.

### Notes on charging connectors and the charging cable protection device

- Do not touch the charging connector's contacts.
- Protect from strong sunlight (outside temperatures no higher than 50°C or 122°F).
- Do not drop them.
- Protect from immersion in fluids such as rain water.
- Fit the protective caps after each use.

**WARNING**

**The charging cable for electrical sockets must always be connected directly to an electrical socket. Failure to do so could result in fire damage and damage to the charging cable or home electrical installation.**

- **Never connect the charging cable to an extension lead, cable reel, power strip or adapter or timer.**

**NOTICE**

**The charging cable, as portable electrical equipment, may have to be checked periodically. This requires a test adapter.**

**NOTICE**

Seek information regarding the appropriate charging cable and the maximum permitted charging current before travelling abroad. If possible, use the charging cable supplied in the country in question.

**For the sake of the environment**

Charging cables must be disposed of in an environmentally friendly way and should not be thrown in the household waste.

**Note**

The maximum charging capacity of the safety circuit that is used must be observed. If the charging cable is planned into an electrical socket on the same circuit as other consumers, the circuit's fuses may trip.

### Cleaning the charging cable

Clean the surface of the charging cable with a dry or slightly damp cloth ››› ⚠, ››› ⓘ.

**DANGER**

The high voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns, other injuries and fatal electric shocks.

- Only clean the charging cable when it is unplugged.

**NOTICE**

The charging cable can be damaged if not cleaned properly.

- Only water should be used for this purpose, and never additional cleaning products.
- Water should be prevented from getting into the contacts.

## Charging cable for alternating current (AC) charging stations

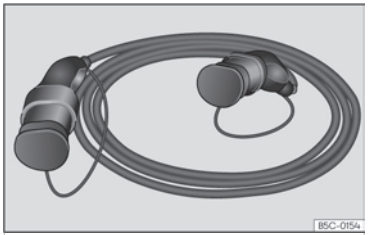



**Fig. 65** Charging cable for alternating current (AC) charging stations.

The maximum charging current is 16 or 32 amps, depending on the vehicle's features and the charging cable that is supplied ››› ⚠.

**WARNING**

Charging the high-voltage battery with an inappropriate charging cable could cause short circuits, serious injuries and fatal electrical shocks.

**WARNING**

The charging cable should not be used as an extension lead. The charging process could be affected.

**NOTICE**

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and indications when using the charging station.

**Note**

Charging with a charging cable for 16 A is not possible at some charging stations that support 32 A. This depends on the charging station's equipment.

- Before charging the vehicle, find out about the available charging technology.

## Charging cable for power sockets

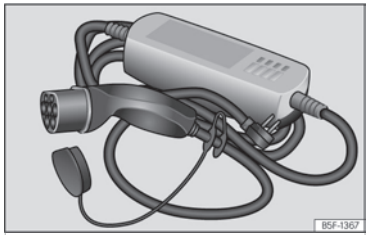



**Fig. 66** Charging cable for electrical sockets

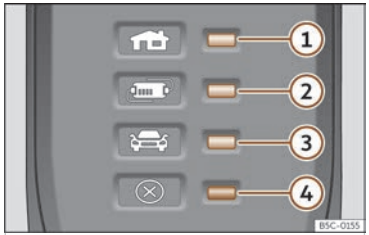



**Fig. 67** On the charging cable for power sockets: Control lamps on the protection device.

›››  **Fig. 67**:

① Indicator lamp of the connector and the power supply.

② Control lamp of the protection device

③ Control lamp of the vehicle

④ Failure warning lamp

### Charging cable information

Before using the charging cable, also follow the instructions displayed on it and on the rear of the protective device.

### Protection device

The electronic protection device ››› **Fig. 67** ensures that the charging connector does not receive current until it is plugged in to the vehicle's charging connector.

### Self-check

When the charging cable is plugged into the electrical socket, the protective device automatically performs a self-test. During this check, all warning and control lamps turn on briefly and go out one after the other. Upon completion, the operational status at that time is displayed.

### Operating displays

One or more control lamps ››› **Fig. 67** ①, ② o ③ light up green.

| Display ››› Fig. 67 | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ① ignition | The charging cable is plugged into the mains |
| ①, ② on, ③ flashes slowly ››› **page 92** | The high-voltage battery is charging. |
| ① ② and ③ on | The charging process is complete. The high-voltage battery has charged. |

### Set the charging current

The charging cable limits the charging current according to the available power supply.

If the local mains supply does not allow charging at the maximum charging current, the charging current can be reduced, depending on the charging setting features in the infotainment system ››› **page 87**.

### Temperature control

The charging cable temperature control switches on when the charging cable overheats, such as when it has been stored in a luggage compartment exposed to high temperatures or strong sunlight.

| Display ››› Fig. 67 | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ①, ④ flashing | The housing connector has overheated. |
| ②, ④ flashing | The protection device has overheated. |

If the charging process continues with a lower current, both the operating indicator and the warning lamp ››› Fig. 67 ④ flash red.

- Unplug the charging cable from the mains and wait for it to cool down.
- If it disconnects again, or the charging current reduces and the cause does not seem to be exposure to an external heat source, make sure that the green control lamp is flashing ››› Fig. 67. Visit a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer to check the charging cable. Get an establishment that specialises in electrical installations to check the infrastructure connection.

### Fault display

If the red warning light ④ flashes or turns on without one of the control lamps ››› Fig. 67 ①, ② o ③ also turning on continuously on the status indicator, there is a fault.

| Display ››› Fig. 67 | Meaning |
|---|---|
| ① flashing, ④ on or flashing | Failure in the power supply. |
| ② flashing, ④ on or flashing | Failure in the protection device. |
| ③ flashing, ④ on or flashing | Failure in the vehicle. |

The charging process pauses or is cancelled.

- Check the instructions located on the back of the protective devices.
- Seek professional assistance if the fault persists.

**Note**

**If there is any other mains connection during charging, or if the vehicle is right next to the high voltage cables, charging from an electrical socket is not possible in some cases. Additional mains connections:**

- **Connecting a 12 volt battery charger.**
- **Contact with a work tool connected to the mains, such as a vehicle lift.**

# Opening and closing

## Set of vehicle keys

### Vehicle key

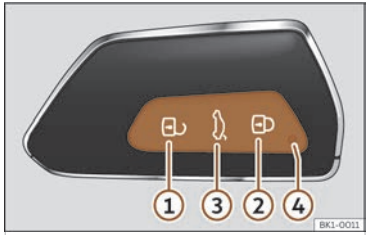



**Fig. 68** Vehicle key

① Unlocks the vehicle.

② Locks the vehicle.

③ Unlocks only the rear lid.
Press the button until all the turn signals on the vehicle flash briefly.
You have 2 minutes to open the rear lid. Once this time has passed, it will lock again. In addition, the lamp on the key flashes.

④ Control lamp.

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from a distance using the vehicle key ››› page 104.

The vehicle key includes an emitter and battery. The receiver is in the interior of the vehicle. The range of the vehicle key with remote control and new battery is several metres around the vehicle.

If it is not possible to open or close the vehicle using the remote control key, this should be re-synchronised ››› page 96 or the battery changed ››› page 95.

Different keys belonging to the vehicle may be used.

#### Control lamp on the vehicle key

When a button is pressed briefly on the vehicle key, the control lamp ④ ››› Fig. 68 flashes once briefly, but if pressed for a long period of time, it will flash several times, for example, when using the comfort opening.

If the vehicle key control lamp does not light up when the button is pressed, replace the key's battery ››› page 95.

#### Spare key

To obtain a spare key and other vehicle keys, the vehicle chassis number is required.

Each new key contains a microchip which must be coded with the data from the vehicle's electronic immobiliser. A vehicle key will not work if it does not contain a microchip or the microchip has not been encoded. This is also true for keys which are specially cut for the vehicle.

The vehicle keys or new spare keys can be obtained from a specialised CUPRA dealer or SEAT Official Service, a specialised workshop or an approved key service qualified to create this kind of key.

New keys or spare keys must be synchronised before use ››› page 96.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle or manage on their own.**
- **An uncontrolled use of the key by third parties could activate a piece of electrical equipment (e.g. power windows), with the resulting accident hazard. The vehicle doors can be locked with the remote control key, making it difficult to get help in an emergency.**
- **Never leave the keys inside the vehicle. An unauthorised use of your vehicle could result in injury, damage or theft. Therefore always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Do not leave the key near the *Wireless Charger* area as this may cause interference.**

**NOTICE**

All of the vehicle keys contain electronic components. Protect them from damage, impacts and humidity.

**Note**

- Only use the key button when you require the corresponding function. Pushing the button unnecessarily could accidentally unlock the vehicle or trigger the alarm. It is also possible even when you are outside the radius of action.
- Key operation can be greatly influenced by overlapping radio signals close to the vehicle working in the same range of frequencies, for example, radio transmitters or mobile telephones.
- Obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and discharged batteries can considerably reduce the range of the remote control.
- If the buttons of the vehicle key are pressed or one of the central locking buttons >>> page 105 is pressed repeatedly in short succession, the central locking briefly disconnects as protection against overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked. Lock it if necessary.
- Spare remote control keys are available at your Technical Service, where they must be matched to the locking system.

## Pulling out the key blade

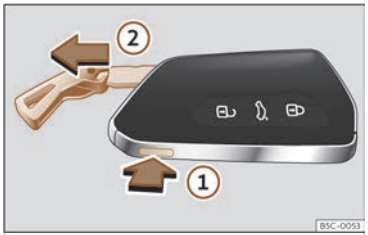



**Fig. 69** Vehicle key: remove the key blade.

The central locking remote control has the key blade inside it for use in case of emergency locking/unlocking of the driver's door >>> page 109.

- Press the >>> **Fig. 69** (1) button to release the ring from the key fob and remove the key blade (2). Pressing lightly on the ring leaves it fixed as a key fob.
- Press the >>> **Fig. 69** (1) button to unlock. Press and hold button (1) and at the same time pull on the ring in the direction of the arrow >>> **Fig. 69** (2) to completely remove the key blade.

## Changing the battery

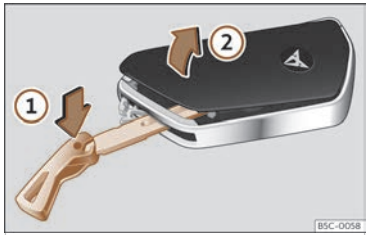



**Fig. 70** Vehicle key: open the battery compartment cover.

**Fig. 71** Vehicle key: removing the battery.

CUPRA recommends you ask a specialised workshop to replace the battery.

The battery is located at the back of the vehicle key, under a cover.

### Changing the battery

- Remove the key blade from the vehicle key >>> page 95.
- Insert the key blade into the slot >>> Fig. 70, press it in the direction of the arrow (1) and detach the cover by levering it (2).
- Remove the battery from the compartment with a suitable thin object >>> Fig. 71.
- Insert the new battery and press it into the battery compartment >>> ①.
- Place the cover and press it into the vehicle key housing until it clicks into place.

**⚠ DANGER**

**Swallowing a battery with a diameter of 20 mm or any other button battery can cause serious injuries or even death within a very short time.**

- **Keep the vehicle key and key fobs with batteries out of reach of children.**
- **If you suspect that someone may have swallowed a battery, seek medical attention immediately.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **If the battery is not changed correctly, the vehicle key may be damaged.**
- **Use of unsuitable batteries may damage the vehicle key. For this reason, always replace the dead battery with another of the same voltage, size and specifications.**
- **When fitting the battery, check that the polarity is correct.**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Please dispose of your used batteries correctly and with respect for the environment.**

## Synchronize the vehicle key

If the button is pressed frequently outside of the vehicle range, it is possible that the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked using the key. In this case, the key must be resynchronised as described below:

- Stand next to the vehicle.
- Briefly press the button on the vehicle key twice.

**OR**:

- Remove the emergency key blade >>> page 95.
- Press the button on the key.
- Unlock the vehicle with the key blade.
- Open the driver's door. If the vehicle is fitted with an anti-theft alarm, it will trigger immediately >>> page 107.
- Switch the ignition on. *Please note*: to turn on the ignition, place the vehicle key at the bottom of the central armrest box, as close as possible to the Kessy logo >>> page 163.

This completes the synchronization.

# Digital key

## Introduction

The "Mobile as vehicle key" function is called "CUPRA Digital Key". The function lets you use a suitable mobile instead of a vehicle key. With the digital key activated, you can lock and unlock the vehicle and set it to ready to drive. Neither the mobile nor the vehicle needs to be online to carry out these activities.

The vehicle is delivered from the factory with no active digital key. To use the "CUPRA Digital Key" function, first install and activate one or more digital keys>>> page 97, *Mobile setup for the vehicle*.

Communication between the mobile and the vehicle uses BLE (Bluetooth Low Energy) and UWB (Ultra Wide Band) wireless communication technologies. If the mobile is switched off or does not have BLE or UWB, the function can be used via the NFC wireless communication technology.

The primary user can transfer multiple digital keys to other people. To do so, select the "Share key" function in the mobile's digital "wallet". To share a digital key, select in this process the duration and the permissions (vehicle access, or vehicle access and driving). After that, the digital key can be shared by e-mail or via messaging services. Optionally, you can set an eight-digit activation password, which is required together with the digital key in order to use it.

To accept the digital key, the other person must click "Accept" and follow the remaining instructions. If an eight-digit activation password has been set, it must be entered in the infotainment system before the vehicle is ready to drive.

The primary user can revoke digital keys via the digital wallet. If the primary user revokes an assigned digital key, it will remain active only until the vehicle is stopped and locked. After this, the digital key changes status. It is still possible to unlock the vehicle for approximately a further 10 minutes. After this time, the digital key can no longer be used. In addition, users whose key has been revoked will receive a notification of this revocation as a message via their digital wallet. If the user whose key has been revoked has a CUPRA ID account and the key has been assigned to their account, they may also be notified by e-mail.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Loss and careless or unsupervised use of a mobile with digital keys can cause accidents, serious injury and theft of the vehicle.**

- **When you leave the vehicle, take all conventional keys or mobiles and devices with activated digital keys with you.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If a borrowed digital key has been revoked, the vehicle can no longer be opened with this digital key after the corresponding time has elapsed. People and animals in the vehicle can no longer be released when the SAFE locking system is activated. This may result in serious injury.**

- **Never leave people or animals inside the vehicle.**

**Note**

- **A mobile can manage the digital keys of different vehicles at the same time.**
- **Other wireless systems may prevent the function from being executed. If you notice interference, temporarily store objects that may interfere elsewhere, for example, credit cards that are in the phone case.**
- **If a mobile and other devices that have received the digital key via this mobile are in the same vehicle, for example a mobile and a smartwatch, malfunctions may occur in certain situations.**

**If you sell the vehicle, digital keys already installed cannot be transferred to the buyer. In this case, delete all digital keys. If you lend or sell the vehicle, inform the user or buyer that digital keys exist** **>>> page 98.**

**The vehicle can be locked with digital keys even if another key belonging to that vehicle is inside it.**

## Prerequisites

- The vehicle is equipped with the digital key function.
- CUPRA ID is available for an active CUPRA CONNECT contract.
- Proof of identity for the primary user has been provided >>> page 251.
- A compatible mobile with BLE (Bluetooth Low Energy) and UWB (Ultra Wide Band) or NFC is available and activated. Compatibility can be checked via the My CUPRA App.

## Mobile setup for the vehicle

If a digital key is to be used for the first time, all requirements must be met. Once all requirements have been met, an e-mail with a link is sent to the primary user.

### Setup with digital wallet

1. Open the e-mail on the mobile.
2. Tap the link in the e-mail on your mobile.

   The link is shown as an icon of the corresponding mobile operating system.
3. Follow the mobile instructions to set up the digital wallet.

> **Note**
>
> **The automatically generated e-mail may take several minutes to arrive. Check the spam/junk folder if necessary.**

### Configuration with the My CUPRA App

1. Open “Settings” in the app.
2. Tap “Digital Key”.
3. Tap “Activate Digital Key”.
4. Follow the remaining instructions.

### Configuration in the infotainment system

1. Tap **CUPRA Digital Key** in the infotainment system.
2. Tap **Connect primary device**.
3. Follow the remaining instructions.

## Using the digital key

When using digital keys, follow the instructions and information that may appear in the infotainment system and in the My CUPRA App.

- After pairing the primary user, digital keys can be sent to up to 4 additional people.
- The digital key can be used on at least 2 devices.
- The duration of each digital key is limited by the duration of CUPRA CONNECT. To continue using digital keys, extend your CUPRA CONNECT contract.
- Each digital key is deactivated automatically 5 years after activation and must be reactivated. If the primary user is changed, this time is reset.
- By delivering a digital key, the primary user grants the key recipient access to a vehicle and, where applicable, authorisation to drive.

> **WARNING**
>
> **Loss and careless or unsupervised use of a mobile with digital keys can cause accidents, serious injury and theft of the vehicle.**
>
> - **When you leave the vehicle, take all conventional keys or mobiles with activated digital keys with you.**

> **Note**
>
> **If keys belonging to you remain in the vehicle when you leave it, locking malfunctions and theft of the vehicle may occur.**

### Locking or unlocking the vehicle

1. Approach or move away from the vehicle with the prepared digital key.

   **OR:** Hold the prepared device against the sensor surface on the driver’s door handle.

### Set the vehicle to ready to drive with the digital key

The prepared digital key must be in the vehicle.

1. Switch on the drive system.

   **OR:** Place the prepared device in the storage compartment in the centre console.

### Functions on the mobile

The primary user, with the digital wallet active, can perform the following digital-key functions:

- Assign and revoke digital keys for their own vehicle.
- Transfer digital keys to other mobiles.
- Delete digital keys transferred to other mobiles.
- View active or assigned digital keys.

The primary user receives a notification before the automatic expiry of a digital key after 5 years.

### My CUPRA App functions

With the CUPRA app, the following additional functions are available:

- Manage the status of service cards >>> page 99.
- Deactivate service cards.
- Unlink the primary user.

- View the status of the coupling.
- View the activation status of the digital key in the vehicle.

### Key withdrawal

The primary user can withdraw a digital key via the mobile's digital wallet. Alternatively, a digital key can be withdrawn in the infotainment system when the vehicle is ready to drive. A digital key can be returned by its recipient via their digital wallet. For this, the vehicle must be online and safely stopped. If a key recipient returns a digital key via the digital wallet, the vehicle does not need to be safely stopped.

### Transfer of the primary user function to a new mobile

To transfer digital keys to a new mobile as the primary user, select **Change primary user** in the infotainment system and follow the instructions. This requires the activation code from one of the several e-mails sent during the initial activation. To find the correct e-mail, note its content.

### Factory reset

- If you reset all mobile settings, all digital keys will also be deleted.
- Digital keys are retained when the **Factory settings** function is performed in the infotainment system.

### Change of primary user for active digital keys

When the primary user is changed, digital keys already assigned are deleted.

### Acquiring a vehicle with digital keys

To delete active generated keys, perform a primary user reset or register as the new primary user in this vehicle.

### Selling a vehicle with digital keys

Perform a primary user reset.

### Deactivation of digital keys from the infotainment system

Prerequisites:

- The vehicle is unlocked with Keyless Access or the vehicle key and the ignition is on.

When the "Manage mobile key" function is performed in the infotainment system, all digital keys are retained. Only the vehicle's BLE/UWB and NFC functions are deactivated.

The deactivation period does not affect the expiry date of the generated digital keys.

## Service card

The vehicle includes a deactivated service card, which serves as a temporary digital key after activation in the event of a breakdown, during a visit to a qualified specialist workshop or for a parking/valet service. To use the service card, it must first be activated in the storage compartment for the wireless charging function >>> page 270. With the service card activated, you can lock and unlock the vehicle and set it to ready to drive.

You can request a replacement service card afterwards from a CUPRA dealer.

Make sure the service card is activated only when it needs to be used.

**Note**

**Leave the service card deactivated in the vehicle so that all digital key users can activate it if necessary.**

### Activating the service card

Prerequisites:

- Your primary user mobile phone contains the active digital key for the vehicle.

1. Unlock the vehicle.
2. Place the mobile with the digital key in the centre of the marked wireless charging area in the storage compartment.
3. Switch on the ignition with this digital key.
4. Remove the mobile from the storage compartment.
5. Place the service card in the centre of the marked wireless charging area in the storage compartment and follow the infotainment system instructions.

The service card is now active.

The primary user and guest users can also see in the My CUPRA App that the service card is active.

**For the sake of the environment**

**Dispose of any service cards you no longer need in an environmentally friendly manner.**

### Deactivating the service card

1. Unlock and switch on the ignition with the vehicle key or the digital key.

   The service card is now deactivated and can be reactivated and used if necessary.

## Troubleshooting

### The digital key is not recognised

The infotainment system shows the text message **Digital key not recognised**.

- The mobile no longer contains a valid digital key because it has expired or has been withdrawn.
- The mobile is not in the vehicle.

1. Check that the digital key meets all requirements.

   **OR:** Set the vehicle to ready to drive with the vehicle key.
2. If the fault reappears, contact a properly qualified specialist workshop. CUPRA recommends that you visit a CUPRA dealer.

### Locking without SAFE does not work

To lock the vehicle with the digital key without SAFE locking, deactivate interior monitoring in the infotainment system.

SAFE locking is not activated for the next locking process.

SAFE locking cannot be deactivated afterwards when locking with the digital key.

### The front passenger airbag cannot be deactivated

This is only possible with the vehicle key.

1. Deactivation of the front passenger airbag with the vehicle key >>> page 52.

### Locking or unlocking is not possible if the vehicle's 12-volt battery is discharged

Use the vehicle key to lock or unlock when the vehicle's 12-volt battery is discharged.

### The device with the digital key is discharged

If the battery of a device with an activated digital key is discharged, the digital key can still be used with NFC for a short period of time, depending on the device.

- To unlock the vehicle with the discharged device, hold it next to the door handle.
- To set the vehicle to ready to drive when the device is discharged, place the device in the storage compartment in the centre console.

**Note**

**Ensure devices used with digital keys are always sufficiently charged.**

**The availability of the function depends on the device manufacturer. The function cannot be guaranteed to operate as intended on all devices.**

# Keyless Access system

## Locking and unlocking with the Keyless Access system

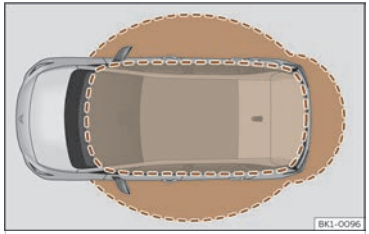



**Fig. 72** Keyless Access: proximity zones.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have the Keyless Access system. This is a keyless locking and starting system that can unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using its key. For this, it is only necessary that there

is a valid vehicle key in the detection area corresponding to the attempted access to the vehicle.

### Configuring the Keyless Access system

The behaviour of the Keyless Access system can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu of the Infotainment system ››› page 34.

If the Keyless Access function is disabled, its operation is limited.

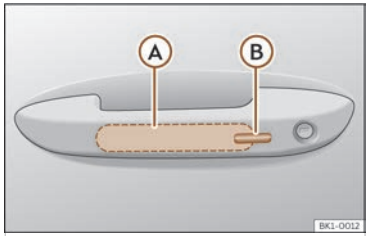



**Fig. 73** Door handle: sensor surfaces.

Ⓐ Unlocking sensor surface on the inside of the door handle.

Ⓑ Locking sensing surface on the outside of the door handle.

### Unlocks the vehicle.

- Touch the sensor surface on the inside of the handle ››› Fig. 73 Ⓐ. All turn signals flash *twice*.

If selective opening is fitted, touching the sensor's surface twice unlocks the entire vehicle.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for an extended period, the function is deactivated. The function will reactivate the next time that the vehicle is unlocked with the remote control.

### Locks the vehicle.

- Park the vehicle.
- Touch the sensor surface Ⓑ ››› Fig. 73 on the outside of the door handle. All turn signals flash once.

To check that the vehicle is properly locked, the unlocking function is deactivated for a few seconds.

### Vehicle locking when walking away

The vehicle may lock automatically when you walk away from it. The following conditions must be met simultaneously:

- The function is active in the infotainment system.
- All vehicle keys are outside the locking area.

All turn signals flash once when automatic locking has been performed successfully.

Automatic locking will not occur if there is another vehicle key in the vehicle.

The vehicle is only locked if all doors and the rear lid are closed. If “Acoustic warning on locking fault” is enabled in vehicle settings, an audible warning may sound to indicate a door is open.

In vehicles fitted with the “Safe” security system, when the vehicle is locked while walking away from it, it locks without the “Safe”function. This is indicated to the user by an audible signal. The vehicle’s “Safe” system is only activated after intentionally locking using the door handle or vehicle key.

If the key is in the detection zone around the vehicle for a prolonged period of time, the options for locking when you walk away from the vehicle and unlocking when you approach it may work in a limited manner.

**Note**

**Certain devices can prevent the vehicle from locking. The vehicle then remains unlocked without an audible warning being issued. Always make sure that the vehicle is locked.**

**Note**

**If the vehicle is parked for a long time without use, it can only be unlocked via the sensor surface inside the driver’s door handle or with the vehicle key.**

### Unlocking the vehicle on approach

The vehicle can be unlocked by approaching it. For this to work, the function must be activated in the infotainment system and the vehicle key must be in the vehicle's approach area.

- The vehicle unlocks when the vehicle key is detected in the vicinity >>> Fig. 72. All turn signals flash twice.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for an extended period of time, the "Unlock vehicle when approaching it" function is deactivated. This function reactivates when the vehicle is locked again.

When activating the unlocking function for certain doors in the central locking settings in the infotainment system, it is possible that the "Unlock vehicle when approaching" function will only work to a limited extent.

### Unlocking the rear lid

When the vehicle is locked and the "Keyless Access" function is active, the rear lid automatically unlocks when it is opened if there is a vehicle key in its proximity zone. The rear lid locks again after closing.

If the central locking of all doors and the unlock when approaching function in "Keyless Access" are active, the vehicle remains unlocked after the rear lid is closed. The vehicle does not lock automatically

### Temporarily deactivating the Keyless Access system

The "Keyless Access" system's unlocking function can be temporarily deactivated:

- Lock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.
- Within 5 seconds, touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle once >>> Fig. 73 (B). Do not grip the handle while doing so. This temporarily deactivates the Keyless Access system.
- Check that it is deactivated by pulling on the door handle after at least 10 seconds. It should not be possible to open the door.

Next time the vehicle can be unlocked only with the vehicle key. After the next unlocking, the Keyless Access system will be active again.

### Permanently disabling the Keyless Access system

The Keyless Access system can also be permanently deactivated in the infotainment system.

- Select **Vehicle > Opening and closing > Kessy**.

## Troubleshooting

### The Keyless Access system does not work

The operation of the sensor surfaces may be limited if they are soiled.

- Clean the sensor surfaces.

### All turn signals flash four times

The key that was last used is still inside the vehicle.

- Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

### Automatic deactivation of the sensor surfaces

The sensor surfaces are deactivated in the following cases:

- If the vehicle is not unlocked or locked for a long period of time.
- If any of the sensor surfaces are activated unusually often.

To reactivate the sensor surfaces:

- Unlock the vehicle using the button on the vehicle key.

**NOTICE**

**The sensor surfaces on the door handles may activate if hit by a jet of water or high pressure steam if there is a valid vehicle key in the proximity area. If at least one of the windows is open and the sensor surfaces on one of the handles permanently activates, all of the windows will close.**

**Note**

**If the message Keyless system out of order is displayed on the instrument cluster display, abnormalities may occur in the operation of the Keyless Access system. Contact a specialised workshop.**

**Note**

**If there is no vehicle key inside the vehicle or the system fails to detect one, a warning will display on the instrument cluster display. This could happen if another radio frequency signal (e.g. mobile phone or wireless charger)... interferes with the key signal or if the key is covered by another object, e.g. a metal case**

# Central locking

## Introduction

Central locking functions correctly when all the doors and the rear lid are correctly shut. If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked with the key.

**WARNING**

**The incorrect use of the central locking system may cause serious injuries.**

- **The central locking system will lock all doors. A vehicle locked from the inside can prevent any non-authorised individual from opening the doors and accessing the vehicle. Nevertheless, in case of emergency or accident, locked doors will complicate access to the vehicle interior to help the passengers.**
- **Never leave children or disabled people alone in the vehicle. The central locking button can be used to lock all the doors from within. Therefore, passengers will be locked inside the vehicle. Individuals locked in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low, resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.**
- **Never leave individuals locked in a closed and locked vehicle. In case of emergency, they may not be able to exit the vehicle by themselves or get help.**

## Description

Central locking allows all doors, the rear lid and the tank flap to be centrally locked and unlocked:

- From outside, using the vehicle key >>> page 104.
- From outside with the Keyless Access system >>> page 100.
- From outside, with the digital key system >>> page 96.
- From inside, by pushing the central locking button >>> page 105.

### Self-locking system to prevent involuntary unlocking

It is an anti-theft system and prevents the unintentional unlocking of the vehicle. If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors (including the luggage compartment) are opened within 45 seconds, it re-locks automatically.

### Auto Lock

The vehicle locks automatically at over a speed of approx. 15 km/h (9 mph). When the vehicle is locked, the control lamp of the central locking button lights up yellow.

### Auto Unlock

After automatic locking, if any of the following conditions are met, central locking returns to its state prior to Auto Lock.

- The interior door handle has been pulled. This applies when driving at under 15 km/h (9 mph).
- **OR:** in the event of an accident and an airbag has been triggered >>> page 106.

Automatic unlocking allows third parties to access the interior of the vehicle to provide assistance if necessary.

### Turn signals

The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked.

If they do not flash, this indicates that one of the doors, the rear lid or the bonnet is not closed correctly.

### Central locking settings

Central locking settings can be changed in the Infotainment system.

*Selective unlocking of the doors*

- Press the function button > **Vehicle > Exterior > Central locking.**

You can decide whether unlocking unlocks **all** doors, **one door** or **one side** of the vehicle. One locking action operates all vehicle doors regardless of the selected unlocking mode.

In all the options, the charging socket flap is also unlocked.

With the **One door** setting, the driver's door is unlocked when:

- The button on the remote control key is pressed once.
- **OR:** It is unlocked once via Keyless Access on the driver's door handle. If the passenger door is unlocked, the entire vehicle is unlocked.
- **OR:** It is unlocked by approaching the driver's door. Automatic unlocking does not occur when approaching the passenger door.

With the **One side** setting, the driver's side of the vehicle is unlocked when:

- The button on the remote control key is pressed once.
- **OR:** It is unlocked once via Keyless Access on the driver's door handle. If unlocked at the passenger door, only the passenger side is unlocked.
- **OR:** It is unlocked on the driver's side by approaching the driver's door. It is unlocked on the passenger side by approaching the passenger door.

*Exception:* When **One door** or **One side** is selected, operating the unlocking point twice in less than 2 seconds unlocks the whole vehicle.

With the **all doors** setting, an unlocking action will unlock all the doors and the rear lid.

**Note**

- **Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Not even a locked vehicle is a safe.**
- **If the LED on the driver's door sill lights up for about 30 seconds when the vehicle is locked, the central locking system or anti-theft alarm is not working properly. You should have the fault repaired at a specialised CUPRA dealer, SEAT Official Service or specialised workshop.**
- **The anti-theft alarm system's interior monitoring only works perfectly if the windows are closed.**

## Unlocking and locking with the vehicle key

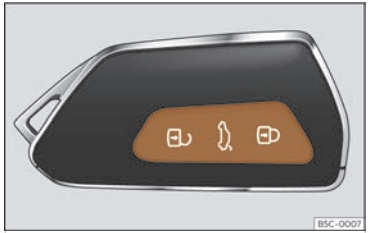



**Fig. 74** Remote control key: buttons.

- Lock: press the button >>> Fig. 74.
- To lock the vehicle without the "Safe" security system, press the locking button twice within 2 seconds.
- Unlock: press the button.
- Unlock the rear lid: press the button once.

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors or the rear lid within 45 seconds after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlocking button is pressed by mistake. This does not apply if you press the button for at least one second.

**WARNING**

**Observe the safety warnings >>> page 105, *Safe security system*.**

**Note**

- **For safety reasons it is advisable to only activate the remote control key when you can see the vehicle.**
- **Other functions of the remote control key >>> page 112, *Opening and closing the windows*.**

## Unlocking and locking from the inside

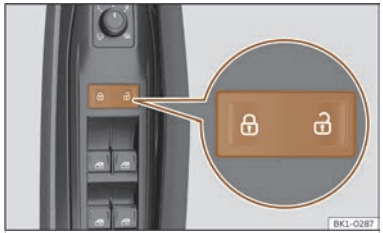



**Fig. 75** On the driver's door: central locking button.

- Lock: press the button >>> Fig. 75.
- Unlock: press the button >>> Fig. 75.

Please note the following when using the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- It is not possible to open the doors or the rear lid from the *outside* (for safety reasons, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights).
- The central locking button lamp lights up when all the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- In the event of an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

**WARNING**

- **The central locking button also works with the ignition switched off, except when the "Safe" security system is activated.**
- **The central locking button does not operate if the vehicle is locked from the outside and the security system is switched on.**
- **Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency. Do not leave anyone, especially children, in the vehicle.**

**Note**

**Your vehicle will lock automatically when it reaches a speed of approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) (Auto Lock) >>> page 103. You can unlock the vehicle again using the key of the central locking button.**

## "Safe" security system

Depending on its equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with the "Safe" security system.

When the vehicle is locked, the "Safe" security system puts the door handles out of operation and hinders possible attempts by people to access the vehicle. The doors cannot be opened from inside >>> .

The instrument cluster may display an indication that the "Safe" security system is switched on.

### Disabling the “Safe” security system

The “Safe” security system may be disabled in any of the following ways:

- Press the vehicle key button 🔒 again **within 2 seconds**.
- Touch the sensor surface on the outside of the door handle again **within 2 seconds** ››› page 100.
- Switch the ignition on.
- **OR**: deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow system ››› page 107.

Depending on the equipment, before locking the vehicle temporarily deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow system in the **Vehicle settings** menu of the infotainment system ››› page 107.

When the “Safe” security system is deactivated, the following needs to be taken into account:

- The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using a door handle.
- The anti-theft alarm is active ››› page 107.
- The interior monitoring system and the anti-tow system are disabled ››› page 107.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using the “Safe” security system negligently or without paying due attention can cause serious injuries in the event of an emergency.**

- **Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when you lock it with the key. When the “Safe” security system is active the doors cannot be opened from the inside!**

## Troubleshooting

### Central locking malfunction

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

- Fault or malfunction in central locking operation.

### The control lamp remains on

The red LED on the driver’s door flashes at short intervals and then stays on. There is a fault in the locking system.

- Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

### The turn signals do not flash

If the turn signals do not flash as a confirmation when the vehicle is locked:

- At least one door or the rear lid are not closed **or**
- The bonnet is not closed.

### The vehicle locks automatically

If one of the following conditions is met, the vehicle re-locks automatically after approx. 45 seconds.

- The vehicle has been unlocked, but none of the doors or the rear lid have been opened.

### What happens when locking the vehicle with a second key

The key inside the vehicle is deactivated and cannot be used to switch on the drive system as soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside with a second key. To activate the key inside the vehicle to allow it to switch on the drive system, press its 🔒 button.

### Unlocking and locking after airbag deployment

When an airbag is triggered as a result of an accident, the vehicle is fully unlocked. Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle may be relocked after the accident as described below:

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the driver's door and close it again.
- Lock the vehicle.

**Note**

**If the 12-volt vehicle battery has little or no charge, or the vehicle key battery is almost or entirely out of charge, you will probably not be able to lock or unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Access system. The vehicle can be unlocked and locked manually** >>> page 109.

**Note**

**If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or the system does not detect it, a warning will be displayed on the instrument cluster. This could happen if any other radio frequency signal interferes with the key signal or if the key is covered by another object, e.g. a metal case.**

# Anti-theft alarm

## Description

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with an anti-theft alarm.

The anti-theft alarm monitors the doors, front bonnet and rear lid.

The anti-theft alarm system activates automatically when the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is not opened electronically with a valid key, the alarm triggers and emits audio and light signals for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes.

### When is the anti-theft alarm triggered?

- If a mechanically unlocked door is opened with the vehicle key.
- If the front bonnet is opened.
- If the rear lid is opened.
- If an invalid vehicle key is used.
- If there are movements inside the vehicle (in vehicles with interior monitoring >>> page 107).
- If the vehicle is lifted or towed (for vehicles with an anti-tow system >>> page 107.
- If the vehicle is transported on a ferry or by rail (in vehicles with an anti-tow system or interior monitoring >>> page 107).
- If the 12-volt battery is disconnected.

### Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key unlocking button 🔓.
- Enter the vehicle.
- Switch the ignition on. *Please note:* to turn on the ignition, place the vehicle key in the area provided for it to perform an emergency start>>> page 163.

**Note**

**If the 12-volt battery is low or discharged, the anti-theft alarm will not work properly.**

## Interior monitoring and anti-tow system

If movement is detected in the vehicle interior while the vehicle is locked, the interior monitoring triggers the alarm.

If it detects that the vehicle is being lifted, the anti-tow system triggers the alarm.

### Switching on the interior monitoring and the anti-tow systems

- Lock the vehicle. When the anti-theft alarm is activated, the interior monitoring and the anti-tow system are as well.

Depending on the equipment, the use of a partition net can affect the operation of the interior monitoring system.

### Temporarily switching off the interior monitoring and anti-tow systems

Interior monitoring and the anti-tow system can also be temporarily switched off in the infotainment system. 🚗 **> Vehicle > Exterior > Central locking > Interior monitoring** >>> page 35. The interior monitoring and anti-tow system remain deactivated until the next time the vehicle is locked.

Interior monitoring and the anti-tow system can also be switched off in the departure menu. To do this, the ignition must be switched off >>> page 160.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow system in the following situations:

- When people or animals remain inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is to be loaded onto another means of transport, transported or towed.
- When the vehicle is to be left in a car wash or is to be parked in a double-decker garage.

**Risk of false interior monitoring alarms**

The interior monitoring system will only operate correctly if the vehicle is completely locked. Please bear in mind all legal provisions. The following situations may cause a false alarm:

- If one or more windows are partially or completely open.
- If light objects are left inside the vehicle, e.g. loose paper or items hanging from the interior mirror.
- If the vibrate function of a mobile left inside the vehicle is activated.

**Note**

- It is not possible to permanently deactivate the interior monitoring and anti-tow systems.
- If any doors or the rear lid are open when the anti-theft alarm is activated, only the alarm will be activated. The interior monitoring and anti-tow systems will only activate once all of the doors and the rear lid are closed.
- When the interior monitoring and anti-tow systems are switched off, the "Safe" security system is also switched off >>> page 105.

# Doors

## Introduction

The doors can be locked and unlocked manually, e.g., if the key or central locking fails.

**WARNING**

Opening and closing doors carelessly can cause serious injury.

- If the vehicle is locked from outside with the "Safe" security system, the doors and windows can no longer be opened from inside.
- Never leave children or disabled people alone in the car. They could be trapped in the car in an emergency and will not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Depending on the time of the year, temperatures inside a locked and closed vehicle can be extremely high or extremely low, resulting in serious injuries and illness or even death, particularly for young children.

**WARNING**

Getting in the way of the doors and the rear lid is dangerous and can lead to serious injury.

- Open and close the doors and the rear lid only when there is nobody in the way.

**NOTICE**

In certain weather conditions, ice or snow may accumulate on the lower front part of the doors between the door frame and the door; do not force the doors open until you are sure that there is no ice or snow.

**NOTICE**

When opening and closing in an emergency, carefully disassemble components and then reassemble them carefully to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## Emergency unlocking or locking of the driver's door

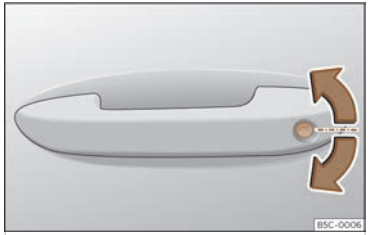



**Fig. 76** Driver's door handle: lock cylinder.

If central locking stops working because the vehicle key battery is flat, the driver's door can be unlocked and locked by inserting the key in the door lock.

As a general rule, when the driver's door is locked manually all other doors are locked. Please observe the instructions relating to the anti-theft alarm system ››› page 107.

- Remove the key blade from the vehicle key ››› page 95.
- Insert the key blade into the lock cylinder to unlock or lock the vehicle.

The key blade is inserted by pointing the grip towards the rear door (the entire key blade enters the cylinder in this position).

### Special characteristics

- The anti-theft alarm remains activated ››› page 107.
- Opening the driver's door will trigger the alarm.
- Switch the ignition on. The electronic immobilizer recognises a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

**Note**

**The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually using the key blade** **››› page 103**.

## Emergency lock of doors without lock cylinders

**Fig. 77** Emergency door lock (variant 1).

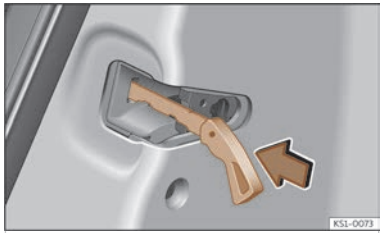



**Fig. 78** Emergency door lock (variant 2).

If the central locking system fails or the vehicle's battery goes flat, doors with no lock cylinder will have to be locked separately.

Depending on equipment, the emergency lock is located in different positions.

*Variant 1:* ››› **Fig. 77**

1. If necessary, remove the rubber seal from the front of the door.
2. Insert the emergency key blade into the slot inside and turn to the right (right-hand door) or to the left (left-hand door) to the stop.
3. Replace the cap.

*Variant 2:* ››› **Fig. 78**

1. Insert the emergency key blade into the vertical slot and press in the direction of the arrow.

Once the door has been closed it can no longer be opened from the outside. Pull the interior door handle once to unlock and open the door.

## Child lock

**Fig. 79** Left door child lock.

The child lock prevents the rear doors being opened from the inside. Its function is to prevent children from inadvertently opening a single door while the vehicle is in motion.

This function is separate from the vehicle's electronic unlocking/locking systems. It only works on the rear doors. It can only be activated and deactivated manually, as described below.

### Activating the child lock

- Unlock the vehicle and open the door on which the child safety lock is to be activated.
- With the door open, turn the slot with the vehicle key clockwise for the left doors ››› **Fig. 79** and anticlockwise for the right doors.

When the child lock is activated, the doors can only be opened from the outside.

### Deactivating the child lock

- Unlock the vehicle and open the door from which you want to remove the child lock.
- With the door open, turn the slot with the vehicle key anticlockwise for the left doors ››› **Fig. 79** and clockwise for the right doors.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The doors cannot be opened from the inside when the child lock is activated. This means that people may be locked inside the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or save themselves.**

- **Never leave children or persons in need of assistance unattended in the vehicle when the doors are locked.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If children, persons requiring assistance or animals are left unattended inside the vehicle, they could be exposed to very high or very low temperatures. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.**

- **Never leave children, persons in need of assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.**

# Rear lid

## Introduction

The rear lid unlocks and locks together with the doors.

On vehicles with the Keyless Access start/locking system, the rear lid automatically unlocks when it is opened ››› **page 100**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Careless and unsuitable locking, opening and closing of the rear lid can cause accidents and serious injury.**

- **Do not close the rear lid by pushing it down with your hand on the rear window. The glass could smash. Risk of injury!**
- **Ensure the rear lid is locked after closing it. If not, it may open unexpectedly while driving.**

- **Never open or close the rear lid carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, as this could cause serious injuries to you or third parties. Make sure that no person or object is in the way of the rear lid as it closes or opens.**
- **The rear lid must always remain closed when the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never open the rear lid if there is cargo, e.g. bicycles, attached to it. The rear lid may close by itself due to the additional weight. If necessary, remove the cargo first or hold the rear lid.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended or allow children to play inside or next to it, especially if the rear lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment, close the rear lid and become trapped. A locked vehicle can reach extremely high and low temperatures, depending on the time of year, thus causing serious injuries, illness or even death.**

**NOTICE**

- **Before opening or closing the rear lid, make sure that there is enough space to open or close it, e.g. when pulling a trailer or in a garage.**
- **Never use the rear wiper or rear spoiler to secure cargo or as a handhold. This could cause damage that could lead to the breakage of the rear wiper or spoiler.**

**Note**

**Before closing the rear lid, make sure that the key has not been left inside the luggage compartment.**

## Opening and closing the rear lid

**Fig. 80** Rear lid: opening from the outside.

To lock or unlock the rear lid, press the 🔒 or 🔓 buttons on the vehicle key.

### Opening and closing

- *Open*: press the button on the bottom of the pilot and lift the rear lid ››› **Fig. 80**.
- *Close*: grip the rear lid by one of the handles on the interior trim and move it downwards to close.

If the doors are locked, the rear lid is also locked.

A warning appears on the instrument cluster display if the rear lid is open or not properly closed.

The rear lid locks automatically while driving.

When the outside temperature is around freezing, the opening mechanism cannot always raise the rear lid. Lift the rear lid by hand.

**Note**

**If the rear lid is not opened within a few minutes after unlocking, the rear lid automatically relocks.**

## Emergency unlocking of the rear lid

**Fig. 81** Luggage compartment: manual release.

The rear lid can be unlocked from inside in the event of an emergency (e.g. if the 12 volt battery is flat).

There is a groove in the luggage compartment allowing access to the emergency opening mechanism.

### Unlocking the rear lid from inside the luggage compartment

- Insert the key blade into the slot and move the key in the direction of the arrow until the lock unlocks >>> Fig. 81.

# Window controls

## Opening and closing the windows

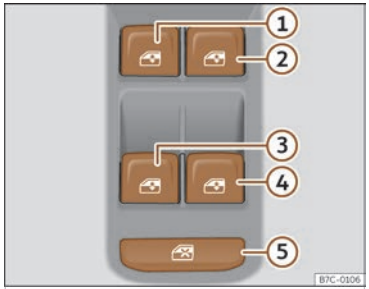



**Fig. 82** Detail of the driver's door: window controls.

- Open the window: press button
- Close the window: pull button

### Buttons on the driver's door

1. Left-hand front door window
2. Right-hand front door window
3. Left-hand rear door window
4. Right-hand rear door window
5. Safety control for deactivating the window control buttons on the rear doors

Both front and rear windows can be operated from the controls on the driver's door. The other doors have a separate control for each window.

Always close the windows completely when the vehicle is parked or out of sight >>> ⚠.

After switching off the ignition, the windows can still be opened and closed for a short period of time using the buttons on the doors, provided that neither the driver's door nor the passenger door is opened.

### Safety switch

The safety control >>> Fig. 82 5 on the driver's door can be used to disable the power window buttons on the rear doors.

*Safety control not pressed:* the buttons on the rear doors are activated.

*Safety control pressed:* the buttons on the rear doors are deactivated.

The safety control symbol lights up in yellow if the buttons on the rear doors are switched off.

### Convenience opening and closing

When the ignition is off, the windows can be opened and closed from the outside with the vehicle key:

- Press and hold the unlock button or lock button on the key.
- Hold a finger on the locking sensor surface of the door handle for a few seconds until the windows are closed >>> page 100. The vehicle key must be in the proximity zone for this purpose.
- To interrupt the function, release the unlock or lock button, **OR** remove your finger from the sensor surface.

A valid vehicle key must be present in the vicinity for this purpose. Once all the windows are closed, all of the turn signals flash once as a confirmation.

In **Vehicle > Exterior > Power windows**, you can set comfort opening in the infotainment system.

### One-touch opening and closing

Automatic raising and lowering fully opens and closes the windows. It is not necessary to press and hold the appropriate window button for this purpose.

*For the automatic raising function*: pull the button for the corresponding window upwards until it reaches the second position.

*For the automatic lowering function*: push the button for the corresponding window downwards until it reaches the second position.

*Stop automatic movement*: push or pull on the button of the corresponding window.

### Resetting the automatic raising/lowering function

If the 12-volt battery is disconnected or discharged when the windows are not completely closed, the power window automatic raising and lowering function deactivates and has to be reset:

- Switch the ignition on.
- Close all doors and windows.
- Pull the corresponding window button upwards and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
- Release the button, pull it up again and hold it in this position. This resets the automatic raising and lowering function.

The function can be reset for a single window or for several windows at the same time.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Observe the safety warnings >>> ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 108.**

- **Improper use of the power windows can cause injury.**
- **Never close windows carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, as this could cause serious injuries to you or third parties. Therefore, make sure that no one is in the way of the moving windows.**
- **If the ignition is switched on, electrical equipment such as the power windows could activate, which can cause injury.**
- **The vehicle doors can be locked with the remote control key, making it difficult to get help in an emergency.**
- **Therefore always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.**
- **The power windows are only deactivated when the ignition is switched off and one of the front doors is opened.**
- **If necessary, deactivate the rear power windows with the safety control. Make sure that they have actually been deactivated.**
- **For safety reasons, you should only unlock and lock the vehicle with the remote control key when you are approximately 2 metres away from the vehicle. When pressing the lock button, always monitor the movement of the windows to avoid accidents. Releasing the button immediately interrupts the closing process.**

**Note**

**If the window is not able to close because it is stiff or because of an obstruction, the window will automatically open again >>> page 113. In this case, check why the window could not be closed before trying again.**

## Window anti-trap function

The roll-back function reduces the risk of injury when the power windows close.

If a window encounters resistance or an obstacle when closing, it will reopen immediately >>> ⚠.

- Check why the window does not close.
- Try closing the window again.
- If the closing process is interrupted again, the anti-trap function stops working for a few seconds.
- If the window still cannot be closed, it will stop in the corresponding position. Pulling the button again within a few seconds closes the window **without the anti-trap function** >>> ⚠.

### Closing the windows without the anti-trap function

- Try to close the window again by pulling the button without releasing it, within a few seconds. **The anti-trap function will be deactivated!**
- If the closing process takes longer than a few seconds, the anti-trap function is activated again. The window will stop again if it encounters resistance or an obstacle, and will reopen automatically.
- If the window will still not close, visit a specialised workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Observe the safety warnings** ›››  ⚠ on page 113.

- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body getting pinched against the window frame. Risk of accident.**

**Note**

**The anti-trap function also works when the windows are closed with the comfort function using the vehicle key.**

# Steering wheel

## Multifunction steering wheel

### Functions

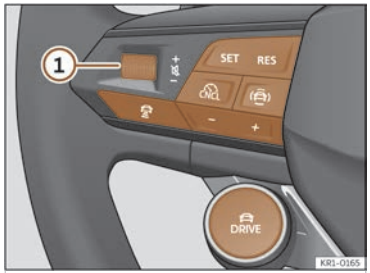



**Fig. 83** Controls on the steering wheel.

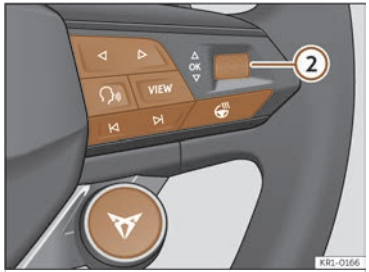



**Fig. 84** Controls on the steering wheel.

The steering wheel includes multifunction modules from where it is possible to control the audio, telephone, navigation, voice control and assist functions without the driver needing to be distracted from the road.

**Buttons available depending on the version**

| | |
|---|---|
| ① | *Turn:* Turn volume up/down.<br>*Press:* Mute volume. |
| SET | Activate ACC / Travel Assist / Speed limiter. |
| RES | Reset programmed speed. |
| CNCL | Pause the ACC ››› **page 184** / Cruise control ››› **page 178** / Speed limiter ››› **page 180** / Travel Assist ››› **page 198**. |
| | Open the driver assistants menu in the instrument cluster. |
| | Modify the programmed ACC distance. |
| – + | +: Increase programmed speed.<br>–: Decrease programmed speed. |
| ② | *Turn:* Search in the instrument cluster menu. In Navigation mode, turn to zoom in/out of the map on the digital instrument cluster. Switch context between the instrument cluster and the HUD (head-up display).<br>*Press:* Select the highlighted option in the instrument cluster. |
| ◁ ▷ | Change the instrument cluster menu (previous/next), or change the proximity HUD display mode if in the HUD context. |
| | Enable/disable voice control. |
| VIEW | *Short press:* shows the simplified view of the digital instrument cluster ››› **page 16** or of the HUD if active.<br>*Long press:* activate/deactivate the augmented reality projection (HUD AR) when the HUD is active. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Activate phone menu (answer call, end call). |
| | *Radio:* Search for the previous/next station.<br>*Media:* Short press: previous/next track; long press: fast forward/rewind. |
| | Activate or deactivate steering wheel heating. ››› page 148 |

| Satellite buttons | |
|---|---|
| DRIVE | Drive profile selection<br>››› page 166 |
| | Selecting the CUPRA drive profile<br>››› page 166 |

## Steering wheel position adjustment

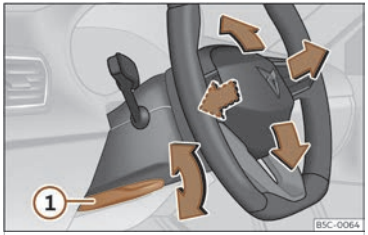



**Fig. 85** Lever in the lower left side of the steering column.

Adjust the steering wheel before your trip and only when the vehicle is stationary.

- Pull lever ››› **Fig. 85** ① down, move the steering wheel to the desired position and lift the lever back up until it locks.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrect use of the steering wheel adjustment function and an incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can result in severe or fatal injury.**

- **After adjusting the steering column, push lever ››› Fig. 85 ① firmly upwards so that the steering wheel does not accidentally change position while driving.**

- **Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. If you need to adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion, stop safely and make the proper adjustment.**
- **The adjusted steering wheel should be facing your chest and not your face so as not to hinder the driver's front airbag protection in the event of an accident.**
- **When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce injuries when the driver's front airbag deploys.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or in any other manner (e.g. in the centre of the steering wheel). In such cases, if the driver's airbag deploys, you may sustain injuries to your arms, hands and head.**

# Seats and headrests

## Front seats

### Introduction

**⚠ WARNING**

Always read and observe the information and safety advice given in chapter ›››  page 38, *Correct sitting position of vehicle occupants*.

**⚠ WARNING**

Incorrect seat adjustment may lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary, as the seats could move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion and you could lose control of the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect position is adopted when adjusting the seat.
- Adjust the height, position and inclination of the front seats only when their movement area is empty.
- Make sure there are no objects in that area.
- Make sure that the movement and locking areas of the seats are clean.

**⚠ WARNING**

Incorrectly using upholstery and seat covers might cause an accidental activation of the electrical seat adjustment system and make it move unexpectedly while driving. This might cause loss of control of the vehicle and thus accidents or injuries. Moreover, the electrical components of the front seats might be damaged.

- Never attach or place seat upholstery or covers on the electric controls.
- Never use upholstery or seat covers that have not been explicitly authorised for the seats of the vehicle.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

Objects with sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Do not rub the seats with sharp objects. Sharp objects, such as zips and rivets on clothing or belts, can damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners can also cause damage.

### Manual adjustment of the front seats

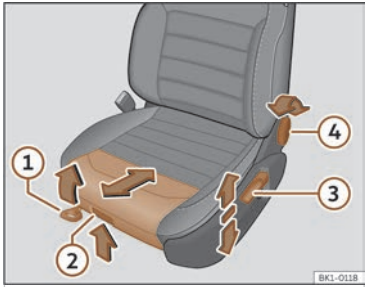



**Fig. 86** Front seats: manual seat adjustment.

① Pull the lever to move the seat forwards or backwards. The seat must engage when the lever is released!

② Lift the handle to move the seat cushion forwards or backwards[1].

③ Move the lever up or down to adjust the seat height; several times if necessary.

④ Without leaning on the seat backrest, turn the wheel to adjust the backrest.

[1] Depending on the equipment, only in the case of power seats.

## Electric adjustment of the front seats

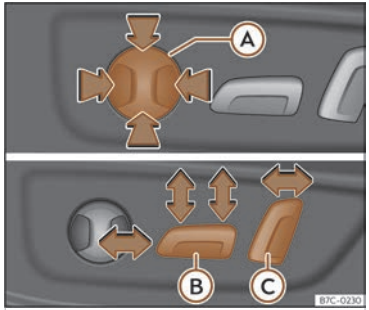



**Fig. 87** Driver's seat: electric seat adjustment.

Ⓐ Adjust the lumbar support: press the button according to the desired position.

Ⓑ Seat forwards/backwards: press the button forwards/backwards.
Seat up/down: Press the rear part of the button up/down. To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, press the front of the button up/down.

Ⓒ Backrest further upright/further reclined: press the button forwards/backwards.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using the electric front seats carelessly or without paying due attention can cause serious injury**

- **The front seats can also be electrically adjusted when the ignition is switched off. Never leave a child or any other person who may need help in the vehicle.**
- **In the event of an emergency, electrical adjustment can be stopped by pressing any control.**

**NOTICE**

**To avoid damaging the electrical components of the seats, please refrain from kneeling on the seat or applying sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest.**

**NOTICE**

**With the seat at its highest position, the backrest tilted forward and fully forward, interference with vehicle interior components may occur. Avoid this extreme setting to prevent damage to components.**

**Note**

- **It may not be possible to electrically adjust the seat if the vehicle battery is very low.**
- **As soon as the vehicle is ready for driving, the power adjustment of seats is turned off.**

# Rear seats

## Folding down and raising the rear seat backrest

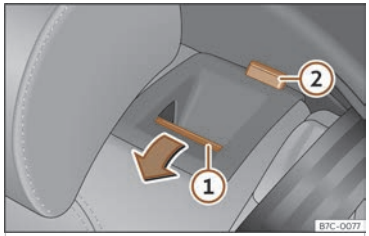



**Fig. 88** Rear seat: folding down the backrest.

The rear seat backrest is split and each part can be lowered separately to enlarge the luggage compartment.

### Folding the backrest forwards

- Fully lower the rear headrests >>> page 120.
- Press the unlock button >>> Fig. 88 ① forwards and at the same time fold the backrest down. The rear seat backrest is not engaged when the red marking of the button ② is visible.

### Converting the table to a seat

- Raise the backrest and lock it in place. The red marking on button ② should no longer be visible when the backrest is properly secured.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Serious injuries can be caused if the rear seat backrest is lowered or lifted without due care and attention.**

- **Never lower or lift the rear seat backrest while driving.**
- **Do not trap or damage the seat belt when raising the rear seat backrest.**
- **When lowering or lifting the rear seat backrest, keep your hands, fingers, feet and other body parts out of its path.**
- **For the rear seat belts to offer the necessary protection, all the parts of the rear backrest must be properly engaged. This is particularly important in the case of the centre rear seat. If someone is seated in a seat whose backrest is not properly engaged they will fly forward, along with the backrest, during an accident or a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.**
- **A red mark on button ② warns that the rear backrest is not engaged. Always check that the red marking is not visible when the backrest is in the upright position.**
- **When the rear seat backrest is lowered or is not properly engaged nobody else may travel in the corresponding seats (not even a child).**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**If the belts are caught when the seatback is raised, fold the seatback back down to release the belt. Grab the belt with your hand and lift the backrest so that it is not trapped.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Serious damage can be caused to the vehicle and other objects if the rear seat backrest is lowered or lifted without due care and attention.**

- **Before lowering the rear seat backrest, always adjust the front seats so that neither the headrests nor the cushions of the rear backrest can hit them.**

# Headrest

## Introduction

The headrest adjustment and removal options are described below. Always make sure that the seats are correctly adjusted >>> page 38.

All seats are fitted with a headrest. The central rear headrest is only intended for the central seat of the rear bench. Therefore, do not install it on any other seat.

### Correct adjustment of the headrest[1)]

Adjust the headrest so that its upper edge is at the same level as the top of your head, as close as possible to eye level. Keep the back of your head always as close to the headrest as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If travelling with the headrests removed or improperly adjusted, the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of accidents and sudden braking or manoeuvres increases.**

- **Always travel with the headrest correctly installed and adjusted.**
- **To decrease the risk of neck injuries in the event of an accident, adjust the headrest correctly based on your height, always making sure that its upper edge is at the same**

[1)] On seats with adjustable headrests.

height as the top of the head, as close as possible to eye level. Keep the back of your head always as close to the headrest as possible and centred.

- Never adjust the headrest while the vehicle is in motion.
- Under no circumstances should the rear passengers travel while the headrests are in the non-use position.

**NOTICE**

When assembling and disassembling the headrests, do not allow them to come into contact with the vehicle's ceiling liner, the back rest of the front seat or other parts of the vehicles. Any such contact could damage the vehicle.

## Adjusting the headrests

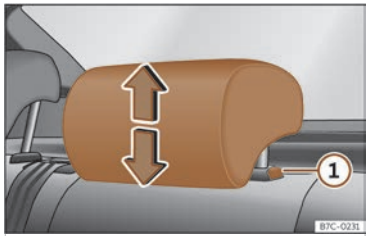



**Fig. 89** Rear headrest: adjusting the headrest.

### Adjusting the height of the headrests

- Grab the sides of the headrests with both hands and push upwards to the desired position. To lower it, repeat the same action, pressing the button on the side (1) ››› **Fig. 89**.
- The headrest must lock correctly in one position.

## Removing and fitting the headrests

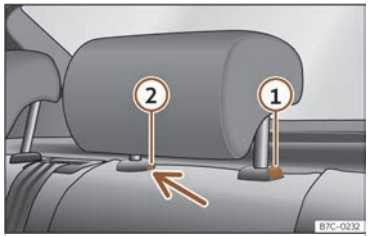



**Fig. 90** Rear headrest: removal.

### Removing the rear headrests

To remove the headrest, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

- Unlock the backrest ››› **page 118**.
- Move the headrest upwards to its highest position.
- Press button ››› **Fig. 90** (1), while simultaneously pressing on the safety hole (2) with a flat screwdriver a maximum of 5 mm wide, and remove the headrest.
- Move the backrest until it engages properly ››› ⚠ in *Folding down and raising the rear seat backrest* on page 119.

### Fitting the rear headrests

To mount the external headrests, the corresponding backrest must be partially folded forward.

- Unlock the backrest ››› page 118.
- Insert the headrest bars into the guides until they are heard to engage. It should not be possible to remove the headrest from the backrest.
- Move the backrest until it engages properly ››› ⚠ in *Folding down and raising the rear seat backrest* on page 119.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Remove the rear headrests only when it is necessary to fit a child seat. After removing a child seat, refit the headrest immediately.**

# Seat functions

## Seats Menu

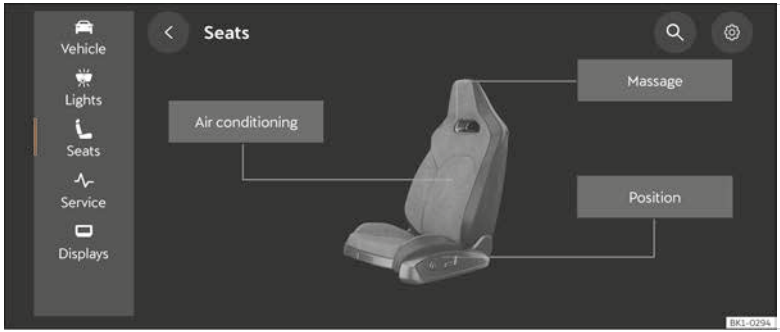



**Fig. 91** Schematic representation: Seats menu

The **Seats** menu provides different submenus depending on equipment:

### Seat positions

- Adjust passenger position via driver: while this function is selected, you can adjust the front passenger seat position using the driver seat position control settings.
- Synchronise passenger position with driver: press and hold the synchronisation button to set the passenger seat to the driver's current position.

### Position settings

You can access driver and passenger position settings in the seat adjustment submenu depending on equipment:

- Driver Easy Entry: activation of this function facilitates driver entry and exit by moving the seat when the door is opened and closed.
- Passenger Easy Entry: activation of this function facilitates passenger entry and exit by moving the seat when the door is opened and closed.

This is also available in menu **Vehicle > Interior > Seats**.

### Seat massage

When the function is activated, the lumbar support moves to massage the lumbar area of the back.

Control of the massage function for the driver and passengers is independent.

### Activating and deactivating the massage function

There are several ways to switch the massage function on and off:

- Press the start/stop button in the **Seats > Massage** main menu.
- Press the button located on the side of the driver and passenger seats. The massage function switches off automatically after a period of operation.

### Setting a massage programme

Select the desired massage programme from the drop-down in the **Seats > Massage** main menu.

### Setting massage intensity

Select the desired massage intensity by pressing repeatedly until the desired level is set using the corresponding button in the **Seats > Massage** main menu.

**Seat air conditioning** >>> page 146

## Memory function

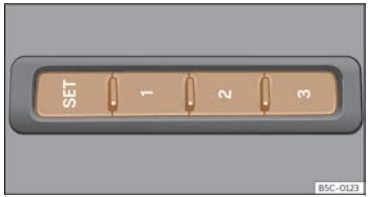



**Fig. 92** On the outer side of the driver's seat: memory buttons.

### Memory buttons

The memory buttons can be used to save and activate settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors.

The settings will also be saved in the user of the online services[1].

### Save the settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors for forward gear

- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Set the gearbox to the neutral position.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Adjust the driver seat and exterior mirrors.
- Press SET for longer than 1 second >>> **Fig. 92**.
- Press the memory button in which to store the settings within approx. 10 seconds. An audible signal confirms that they have been saved.

### Save the settings of the front passenger exterior mirrors for reversing.

- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Set the gearbox to the neutral position.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Press whichever memory button you want.
- Select reverse gear.
- Adjust the front passenger exterior mirror so that you can see, for example, the kerb edge well.
- The set position for the mirrors is automatically saved and assigned to the key with which you unlocked the vehicle.

### Activating the settings

- With the vehicle stopped and the ignition switched on, press and hold the corresponding memory button until the saved position is reached.
- **OR:** With the ignition switched off and the driver's door open, briefly press the corresponding button.

The front passenger side exterior mirror automatically changes from the position stored for reversing as soon as the vehicle moves forward

[1] Not available in all markets.

at a speed of at least 15 km/h (10 mph) or when the gear selection lever is changed to a position other than **R** ›››  page 137.

### Initialising the seat position memory

If, for example, the driver seat has been replaced, the position memory system must be restarted.

Restarting deletes all memories and assignments of seats with memory functions. The memory keys can then be programmed again.

- Open the driver's door and do not get into the vehicle.
- Change the seat settings from outside.
- Tilt the backrest fully forward.
- Release the control to adjust the inclination and press it again until an audible signal sounds.

### Easy Entry function

Depending on the equipment, the Easy Entry function makes it easier for the driver and/or passenger to enter and exit by moving the seat forwards or backwards respectively.

The function is activated via the driver and/or passenger setting in the settings sub-menu of the seats menu in the infotainment system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Only set the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.**

**Note**

**If the driver's door is opened approx. 10 minutes after the vehicle was unlocked or later, the driver seat and the exterior mirrors do not move automatically.**

## Front centre armrest

**Fig. 93** Front centre armrest

To *raise* the armrest, pull it fully up in the direction of the arrow ›››  Fig. 93 or step by step, depending on how far you want to raise it.

To *lower* the armrest, first lift it to its highest position. Then lower it down.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The front centre armrest may obstruct the driver's arm movements, which could cause an accident and severe injuries.**

- **Keep the storage compartments of the centre armrest closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Never let anyone sit on the centre armrest while the vehicle is in motion, not even a child. This position is incorrect and may cause severe injuries.**

## Rear centre armrest

**Fig. 94** Folding rear centre armrest (schematic view).

There might be a folding armrest in the rear centre seat.

- To *lower* the armrest, pull the cord in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 94**.
- To *raise* the armrest, push it up in the opposite direction to the arrow and press it as far as it will go into the seat backrest.

When the centre armrest is down, do not allow anybody to travel in the centre seat of the rear bench.

**⚠ WARNING**

**To decrease the risk of injuries while driving, the rear centre armrest must always be raised.**

- **When the centre armrest is down, nobody may travel in the centre rear seat, not even a child. An incorrect sitting position may cause severe injuries.**

# Lights

## Vehicle lighting

### Lighting and visibility buttons

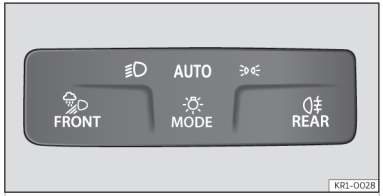



**Fig. 95** Dash panel: light panel.

By pressing the MODE button you can select between (the corresponding indicator lights up):

- Switching on the dipped beam headlights.
- AUTO Automatic control of dipped beam and daytime running light.
- Switching on the side lights. The automatic headlight control AUTO activates at over a speed of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

Additionally, the following light functions can be activated by pressing on the corresponding symbol.

When the function is activated, the corresponding symbol lights up. To deactivate it, you will need to press on the symbol again.

FRONT Turn the fog lights on or off. In addition, a pop-up window with the selected option is temporarily shown in the instrument cluster.

REAR Turning the rear fog lights on or off. In addition, the yellow control lamp on the instrument cluster lights up.

It is always the driver's responsibility to ensure that the vehicle is driven with the correct headlamp settings and the correct lights.

#### Side lights

When the side light is switched on, the side lights in both headlights, certain areas of the rear light clusters, the number plate light and the button lights on the instrument cluster turn on. The automatic dipped beam activates as of a speed of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph).

#### Automatic dipped beam headlight control AUTO

When the automatic dipped beam is switched on, the vehicle's lighting and the lighting of the instruments and controls turn on and off under the following conditions:

- The light sensor has detected darkness.
- The wiper has been on for some time.

When the lights are on, the control lamp lights up in green.

The automatic dipped beam is only an auxiliary function and cannot always identify all situations that may arise during driving with sufficient precision.

If the vehicle has the appropriate equipment, the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system can be used to set the moment that the dipped beam automatically switches on >>> page 34.

#### Cornering light function

The *cornering* light is an additional function to the dipped beam to improve lighting of the side of the road when cornering at low speeds.

When the dipped beam is on, a static cornering light comes on when driving at speeds below about 40 km/h (25 mph) or on very tight bends.

- If the steering wheel is turned or the turn signal is switched on, the corresponding fog light comes on progressively. Once the turn has been made, the *cornering* light progressively turns off.
- When engaging reverse gear, both fog lights turn on at the same time.

#### Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights can increase the vehicle's visibility when driving in daylight and they turn on automatically when the ignition is switched on (if brightness is detected).

### Motorway light

The motorway light is available on vehicles fitted with LED High lights.

- **Activation:** when going above 110 km/h (68 mph) for more than 10 seconds, the dipped beam raises slightly to increase the driver's visibility distance.
- **Deactivation:** when the speed of the vehicle is reduced below 100 km/h (62 mph), the dipped beam immediately returns to its normal position.

### Warning buzzers to warn that the lights have not been switched off

If the ignition is not connected and the driver's door is open, an audible warning signal is heard in the following cases: this will remind you to turn the light off.

- When the parking light is on >>> page 127.
- When the lamp or is on.

If the exit lighting is switched on ("Coming Home" function), when you leave the vehicle there will be no audio warning to warn you that the lights are still on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Accidents can occur if the road is not well lit and other road users cannot see the vehicle or see it with difficulty.**

- **The automatic dipped beam control (AUTO) only switches on the dipped beam when there are no changes in brightness, and not, for example when it is foggy.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The side light or daytime running light does not provide sufficient illumination to see the road properly or to be seen by drivers of other vehicles.**

- **Always switch on the dipped beam headlight at night, in rainy weather or when visibility is poor.**
- **Daytime running lights must never be used when the road is poorly lit due to weather or lighting conditions.**

**Note**

- **The relevant legislation in each country must be observed when using the vehicle's lights.**
- **The dipped beam headlights will only work with the ignition on. When the ignition is switched off, the side light automatically turns on.**
- **The rear fog light can dazzle drivers behind you. You should use the rear fog light only when visibility is very poor.**

**Note**

**When the lights are off or in position AUTO or and the fog lights are switched on, the dipped beam is also switched on regardless of the ambient brightness.**

## Turn signal and main beam lever

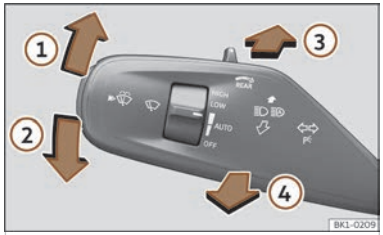



**Fig. 96** Turn signal and main beam lever.

Move the lever to the required position:

1. Right turn light or right-hand parking light (ignition switched off).
2. Left turn light or left-hand parking light (ignition switched off).

③ Turning on the main beam. The blue control lamp ≡D lights up on the instrument cluster.

④ The headlight flasher turns on when the lever is pulled. The control lamp ≡D lights up on the instrument cluster.

Place the lever in its neural position to turn off the corresponding function.

### Comfort turn signals

When the ignition is switched on, move the lever as far as possible upwards or downwards and release the lever. The turn signal will flash three times.

To switch off the comfort turn signal early, immediately move the lever in the opposite direction until you feel resistance and release it.

The comfort turn signals can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system, in the vehicle settings menu ››› page 34.

### Parking light ⊂

The parking lights will only work with the ignition off. If said light is on, an audible warning will sound while the driver's door is open.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Move the turn signal lever up or down.

When the parking light is switched on, the front side light and the tail light on the corresponding side of the vehicle turn on.

### Parking light on both sides

- Switch the ignition off.
- Press the button MODE to select ».
- Lock the vehicle from the outside.

When this is done, only the side lights of both headlights, along with the tail lights, partially light up.

### Automatically switching off the side light or parking light

If the vehicle detects that the 12 volt battery is low on charge, it switches off the side light or parking light, but only after 2 hours of operation, so that the drive system can still be switched on.

If there is insufficient battery capacity for the side light or parking light to remain on for 2 hours, the 12 volt battery may discharge so much that it is impossible to switch on the drive system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using turn signals inappropriately, not using them or forgetting to turn them off can confuse other road users. This could cause an accident with serious consequences.**

- **Always give warning of lane changes, overtaking or turning manoeuvres by activating the turn signals well in advance.**
- **As soon as the lane change, overtaking or turning manoeuvre is complete, switch off the turn signal.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the main beam can cause accidents and serious injuries, as it can distract and dazzle other drivers.**

**ⓘ Note**

- **When you turn the ignition off without having turned the turn signals off, an audible signal sounds while the driver's door is open. It is intended to remind you to turn off the turn signals, unless you want to leave the parking light on.**
- **If the comfort turn signals are on (three flashes) and the comfort turn signal on the opposite side is activated, the active side stops flashing and only flashes once on the newly selected side.**
- **The turn signals only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The *main beam* can only be switched on when the dipped beam is switched on.**
- **In cold or wet weather conditions, the headlights, tail lights and turn signals may be temporarily fogged from the inside. This is normal and has no effect on the service life of the vehicle's lighting system.**

- **The parking light does not activate automatically if the left- or right-hand turn signal is left on and the ignition is disconnected.**

## Main beam assist (Light Assist)

The main beam assist automatically prevents glare from affecting vehicles moving in the opposite direction or ahead in the same direction. In addition, the main beam assist detects illuminated areas and disconnects the main beam headlight when passing populated areas.

Within its limitations, the assist system automatically connects or disconnects the main beam headlight depending on the environmental and traffic conditions, as well as the speed >>> ⚠.

### Switching on the main beam assist

- Switch on the ignition and select mode AUTO on the headlight control >>> Fig. 95.
- From the neutral position, press the turn signal and main beam headlights lever forwards >>> Fig. 96 ③.

When the main beam assist is switched on, the control lamp on the instrument cluster display turns on. When the main beam is on, the blue main beam control lamp on the instrument cluster switches on.

### Switching the main beam assist off

- Switching off mode AUTO on the headlight control >>> Fig. 95.
- **EITHER:** if main beam assist is on, pull the turn signal light and main beam headlights lever back >>> Fig. 96 ④.
- **OR:** if the main beam assistant is on, but the main beam **does not** turn on, press the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to turn the main beam on manually. Pull the turn signal and main beam lever back to switch off the main beam manually, if necessary.
- **OR:** switch off the ignition.

### System limitations

In the following cases, the main beam headlight must be switched off manually because the main beam assist will not disconnect it on time or disconnect it at all:

- On insufficiently lit roads with highly reflective signs.
- If road users have insufficient lighting, e.g. pedestrians or cyclists.
- On tight curves, when the traffic in the opposite direction is partially hidden, on pronounced slopes or inclinations.
- On roads with traffic in the opposite direction and with a central reservation barrier where the driver can see over it e.g. lorry drivers.
- In case of fog, snow or heavy rainfall.
- In case of swirling dust or sand.
- If the windscreen is damaged in the camera's field of vision.
- If the camera's field of vision is misted up, dirty or covered by a sticker, snow or ice.
- If the camera is damaged or if the power supply has been cut off.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The comfort features of the main beam assist must not lead you to take any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver concentration.**

- **You must always control the main beam yourself and adapt it to the light, visibility and traffic conditions.**
- **The main beam regulator may not recognise all driving situations correctly and may operate with limitations in certain circumstances.**
- **When the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the operation of the main beam regulator may be affected. This also applies when the vehicle's lighting installation is modified, e.g. when additional headlamps are installed.**

**NOTICE**

**To avoid affecting the operation of the system, take the following points into consideration:**

- **Clean the field of vision of the camera regularly and make sure it is free of snow and ice.**
- **Do not cover the field of vision of the camera.**
- **Check that the windscreen is not damaged in the area of the camera's field of view.**

**Note**

- **The headlight flasher can be turned on and off manually at any time with the turn signal and main beam lever** >>> page 127.
- **If there are objects that radiate light in the camera's area of influence, e.g. a portable navigation system, this may affect the operation of the main beam assist system.**

## "Coming home" and "Leaving home" function (exterior orientation lighting)

The "Coming home" and "Leaving home" function lights up the vehicle's immediate surroundings when getting into and out of it in the dark.

This light is automatically controlled by a light sensor.

### Turning on the "Leaving home" light

- Unlocks the vehicle (if the automatic dipped beam function AUTO is switched on and the light sensor detects darkness).

### Turning off the "Leaving home" light

- It turns off automatically once the lights off delay time has elapsed.
- **OR**: lock the vehicle.
- **OR**: press the light control as many times as necessary until the instrument cluster displays the setting OFF.
- **OR**: switch on the ignition.

### Turning on the "Coming home" light

- Switch the ignition off.

The "Coming home" light comes on if the automatic headlight control AUTO is switched on and the light sensor detects darkness.

The lights-off delay countdown starts when the last door or rear lid of the vehicle is closed.

### Turning off the "Coming home" light

- It switches off automatically after the set lights-off delay time has elapsed.
- **EITHER:** it is automatically deactivated if, 30 seconds after the function has been activated, any vehicle door or the rear lid is still open.
- **OR**: press the light control as many times as necessary until the instrument cluster displays the setting OFF.
- **OR**: switch on the ignition.

### "Coming home" and "Leaving home" settings

The duration of the lights-off delay can be set in the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system, where the function can also be activated and deactivated >>> page 34.

### Welcome light

The welcome light is a light located on the exterior mirrors facing the ground which is switched on or off if the lights control is in the AUTO position and the "Coming Home" or "Leaving Home" function is switched on or off.

## Dynamic headlight range control

The headlight range is automatically adjusted according to the vehicle load status when they are switched on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the dynamic headlight range control fails or does not work properly, the headlights could dazzle and distract other road users. This could cause accidents and lead to serious injuries.**

- **Immediately go to a specialist workshop and have the headlight range control system checked.**

## Driving abroad

The light beam of the dipped beam lights is asymmetric: the side of the road on which you are driving is lit more intensely.

When a car that is manufactured in a country that drives on the right travels to a country that drives on the left (or vice versa), it is normally necessary to cover part of the headlight bulbs with stickers or to change the adjustment of the headlights to avoid dazzling other drivers.

In such cases, the regulations specify certain light values that must be complied with for designated points of the light distribution. This is known as "Tourist light".

The light distribution of the headlights allows the specific "tourist light" values to be met without the need for stickers or changes being made to the settings.

**Note**

**"Tourist light" is only allowed temporarily. If you are planning a long stay in a country that drives on the other side, you should take the vehicle to an Authorised Technical Service to change the headlights.**

## Troubleshooting

### Turn signal control lamp

The indicator lamp lights up green.

If a turn signal fails, the turn signal light flashes twice as fast.

1. Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

Hazard warning lights on ››› page 66.

### Fault in external lighting

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

There is a total or partial failure of the exterior lighting.

1. Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

# Interior lights

## Instrument cluster and control lighting

The instrument and control lighting brightness can be set in the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system ››› page 34.

The set intensity automatically adapts to changes in ambient brightness in the vehicle.

When the automatic dipped beam light AUTO is turned on, a sensor automatically turns the dipped beam light on or off, along with the instrument and control lighting, depending on the ambient brightness.

## Interior and reading lights

**Fig. 97** Detail of headliner: front interior lighting.

Turns the interior lights on or off.

OFF Door contact connection. The interior lights come on automatically when you unlock the vehicle, open a door or disconnect the ignition. The light goes out a few seconds after closing all the doors, when locking the vehicle or turning on the ignition.

### Reading light

The reading light is touch-operated, each lens is turned on and off individually by pressing in the respective central area. In addition, the intensity of the light can be adjusted according to the pressure exerted.

If you want to turn on the two lenses together you must press the symbol ››› Fig. 97.

### Luggage compartment lighting

When the rear lid is opened and closed, the luggage compartment lighting turns on or off.

### Footwell lighting

The lights in the footwell area below the dash panel (driver and front passenger sides) will switch on when the doors are opened and will decrease in brightness while driving. This intensity can be adjusted via the **Vehicle > Background lighting** main menu. Then select **Individual** mode and open the Brightness tab ››› page 133.

**Note**

**The reading lights go out when the vehicle is closed and locked or a few minutes after turning the ignition off. This prevents the battery from discharging.**

## Background lighting

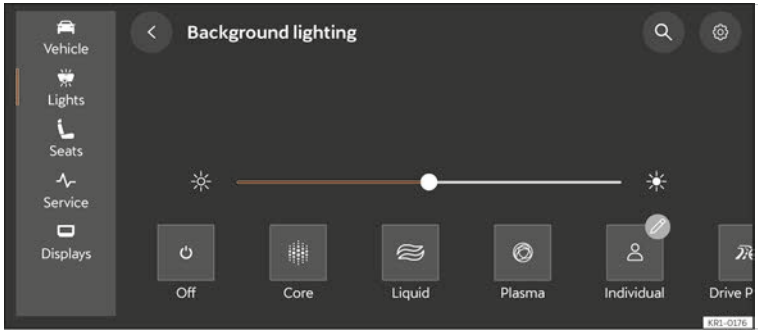



**Fig. 98** Schematic representation: Background lighting.

Background lighting provides lighting in different areas of the interior.

There are predefined versions of **Ambient Light** ››› Fig. 98.

The intensity of the lighting can be adjusted using the function button ☼:

**Lighting profile** Lights up the interior of the vehicle depending on the selected lighting profile.

**Individual** Allows you to set the intensity and change the colour of the background lighting in different areas of the passenger compartment.

**Off** Turns off the background lighting.

# Visibility

## Windscreen wiper and rear window wiper systems

### Wiper lever

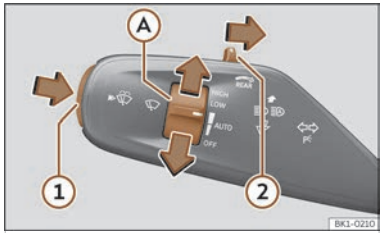



**Fig. 99** Operation of windscreen wipers and rear window wiper system.

Move the button Ⓐ to the required position:

**OFF** Windscreen wipers off.

**AUTO** Intermittent wiping of the windscreen or activates the rain sensor. The windshield is wiped intermittently depending on the speed of the vehicle or the heaviness of the rain.

**LOW** Slow wipe.

**HIGH** Fast wipe.

Button ①:

*Short press:* activates a wiper sweep.

*Long press:* switches on windshield washers and wipers.
The air conditioning switches on air recirculation for approx. 30 seconds to prevent windscreen-washer fluid odour entering the passenger compartment.
With the ignition switched off, press to set the wiper to its service position ›› page 300.

Button ②:

/ Moving the button in the direction of the arrow switches the automatic rear window washer on. When the button is released, it returns to the position **OFF**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If insufficient antifreeze is added to the washer fluid, it could freeze on the glass and impair visibility.**

- **Do not use the wiper system in winter temperatures without first heating the windscreen with the heating and ventilation system. Windscreen washer fluid could freeze on the windscreen and impair forward visibility.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The use of worn or dirty wiper blades reduces visibility and increases the risk of serious accidents and injuries.**

- **Replace the wiper blades whenever they are in poor condition or worn out and no longer clean the windows sufficiently** ›› page 301.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Before driving off and before switching on the ignition, check the following aspects of the wiper blades and the wiper motor to prevent damage to the glass:**

- **The wiper lever is in the neutral position.**
- **You have removed or cleared any snow and ice from the wiper blades and windows.**
- **You have carefully removed any wiper blades that may have frozen from the window. CUPRA recommends an de-icer spray for this purpose.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Turn of the wiper before the glass is completely dry. Using the wipers while dry can damage the glass.**

**Note**

- **When the vehicle stops while the wiper is on, the wiper switches to operating temporarily at the next lower wiping level.**
- **If the driver door is opened when the vehicle is stationary, the wipers return to the starting position and are switched off. If the door is closed or the wiper lever is moved within a few seconds, the wiper turns on again.**
- **In winter, the service position of the wipers can be useful to make it easier to lift the wipers off the windscreen when the vehicle is going to be left stationary** >>> page 301.

## Wiper functions

### Automatic rear window wiper

The rear wiper switches on automatically when the wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged. The automatic rear window wiper activation when engaging reverse gear can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system, in the vehicle settings menu >>> page 34.

**Note**

**The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle is still blocking its path. Remove the obstacle and switch on the wiper again.**

## Rain and light sensor

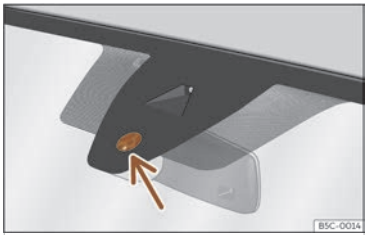



**Fig. 100** Sensitive surface of the rain sensor.

The rain sensor controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper intervals, depending on the amount of rain >>> ⚠.

### Abnormal operation of the rain and light sensor

The possible causes of anomalies and erroneous interpretations *in the sensitive surface area* >>> **Fig. 100** of the rain sensor are, among others:

- **Damaged wipers**: a film of water on the damaged blades may lengthen the activation time, reduce the washing intervals or result in a fast and continuous wipe.
- **Insects**: the impact of insects may cause the wiper to activate.
- **Salt on the road**: in winter, salt spread on the roads may cause an excessively long wipe when the windscreen is almost dry.
- **Dirt**: dry dust, wax, coating on glass (Lotus effect) or traces of detergent (car wash) may reduce the effectiveness of the rain sensor or make it react more slowly, later or not at all. Regularly clean the sensitive surface of the rain sensor >>> **Fig. 100** (arrow) and check for possible damage to the wiper blades.
- **Windscreen crack**: the impact of a stone will trigger a single wipe cycle with the rain sensor on. The rain sensor then detects the reduction of the sensor surface and adjusts itself. The behaviour of the sensor may vary depending on the size of the stone impact.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The rain sensor may not detect rain sufficiently and may not activate the windscreen wipers.**

- **If necessary, switch on the windscreen wipers manually when water hinders the view through the windscreen.**

**Note**

- **The use of an alcohol-based glass cleaner is recommended to remove waxes and coatings.**
- **Do not put stickers on the windscreen in front of the rain sensor. This can cause alterations or failures.**

## Troubleshooting

### Washer fluid level too low

The control lamp lights up in yellow. Refill the washer fluid reservoir at the next opportunity ›››  page 321.

### Windscreen wiper fault

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The wiper does not work.

- Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
- If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.

### Fault in the rain and light sensor

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The wiper does not switch on automatically in the event of rain, although the rain and light sensor is activated.

- Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
- If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.

# Mirrors

## General safety instructions

The exterior and interior mirrors allow the driver to observe vehicles driving behind and adapt his or her driving behaviour accordingly.

For safe driving, it is important for the driver to adjust the exterior mirrors and interior mirror correctly before setting off.

When looking through the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror, it is not possible to see the entire area behind and to the sides of the vehicle. These areas outside the field of view are known as the blind spot. Other road users and objects may be in the blind spot.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Adjusting the exterior mirrors and interior mirror while driving can distract the driver. This could cause accidents and lead to serious injuries**

- **Only adjust the exterior mirrors and interior mirror when the vehicle is stationary.**
- **When parking, changing lanes, overtaking or turning, always keep a close eye on your surroundings, as other road users or objects may also be in the blind spot.**
- **Always make sure that the mirrors are adjusted correctly and that visibility to the rear is not reduced by ice, snow, fogging or other objects.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**A failure to accurately estimate the distance to vehicles driving behind can lead to serious accidents and injuries.**

- **Curved (convex or aspherical) mirrors increase the field of view and objects in them appear smaller and further away.**
- **Curved mirrors do not allow you to precisely calculate the distance to vehicles driving behind, so using them when changing lanes could cause serious accidents and injuries.**
- **If possible, use the interior mirror to precisely calculate the distance to vehicles driving behind you, or to other objects.**
- **Always make sure you have sufficient visibility to the rear.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the mirror is broken.**

- **If it gets out, the electrolyte fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, particularly in the case of people with asthma or similar diseases. Immediately in-**

**hale enough fresh air and get out of the vehicle, or open all windows and doors if this is not possible.**

- **If the electrolyte fluid comes into contact with your eyes or skin, immediately rinse the affected area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical advice.**
- **If the fluid comes into contact with footwear or clothing, rinse immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean thoroughly before using the footwear or clothing in question again.**
- **If the electrolyte fluid is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless advised by a doctor. Immediately seek medical attention.**

**NOTICE**

**Electrolyte fluid may leak if the automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken. This liquid attacks plastic surfaces. Therefore, it should be cleaned as fast as possible with a damp sponge or similar.**

## Interior mirror

### Interior mirror with automatic anti-dazzle function

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors in the mirror measure the light falling on it from behind and in front.

The interior mirror automatically darkens based on the measured values.

If the light falling onto the sensors is blocked or interrupted, e.g. by a sunshade blind or hanging objects, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror does not work or does not work properly. Similarly, the use of portable navigation devices attached to the windscreen or close to the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror can affect the operation of the sensors ››› ⚠.

The automatic anti-dazzle function is deactivated in certain situations, e.g. when reverse gear is engaged.

**WARNING**

**Light from screens of portable navigation devices can cause malfunctions of the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror and may cause serious accidents and injuries.**

- **Abnormal operation of the automatic anti-dazzle function may result in it being impossible to use the interior mirror to precisely calculate the distance to vehicles driving behind, or to other objects.**

## Adjusting the exterior mirrors

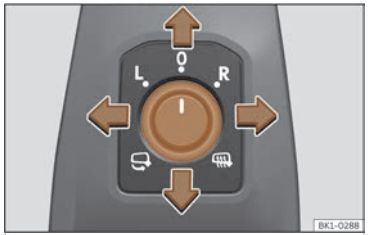



**Fig. 101** Driver's door detail: exterior mirror control.

Turn the control to the corresponding position.

L / R By moving the control to the desired position, adjust the interior mirrors on the left side (L) and on the right side (R) in the desired direction.

The exterior mirror heating turns on. The heating only operates when the ambient temperature is below +20°C (+68°F), and initially at full power. After approx. 2 minutes, its heat depends on the ambient temperature.

Fold the mirrors ››› ⚠.

0 The exterior mirror cannot be adjusted and all functions are deactivated.

### Activating exterior mirror functions

The following exterior mirror functions can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings menu of the infotainment system >>> page 34.

**Note**

**The exterior mirror functions are described below. For left-hand drive vehicles, position L corresponds to the exterior mirror on the driver's side and position R corresponds to the exterior mirror on the passenger's side. Do the opposite for right-hand drive vehicles.**

### Synchronized regulation of the exterior mirrors

The synchronised mirror setting simultaneously adjusts the right hand exterior mirror when the left mirror is adjusted.

- Turn the control to position L[1].
- Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror. The right exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).
- If necessary, correct the setting of the right hand mirror: turn the control to position R[1].

### Folding the exterior mirrors when locking the vehicle

When the vehicle is locked or unlocked from the outside, the exterior mirrors may fold in or out automatically, depending on the equipment. For this purpose, the rotary control has to be in position ⊞, L, R, or 0.

If the rotary control of the electric exterior mirrors is in the folded position, the exterior mirrors remain folded.

### Saving and activating the passenger side exterior mirror setting for reversing

- Unlock the vehicle with the key to which you wish to assign the setting.
- Select reverse gear.
- Adjust the front passenger exterior mirror so that you can see, for example, the kerb edge well.
- Set the gearbox to the neutral position.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The mirror's set position is saved and assigned to the key.

### Activating the passenger side exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Turn the exterior mirror control knob to position R[1].
- Engage reverse gear with the ignition switched on. The right-hand exterior mirror will move to the saved position.

The passenger side exterior mirror leaves the saved reversing position when the vehicle is travelling faster than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph), or if the control is turned from position R to another position.

**WARNING**

**Folding the exterior mirrors in and out carelessly can cause injury.**

- **Only fold or unfold the exterior mirror if there is no one in the path of the mirror.**
- **When moving the mirror, be careful not to pinch your fingers between the mirror and the mirror holder.**

**NOTICE**

- **Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure that the exterior mirrors are folded in to prevent them from being damaged.**
- **The electrically folding exterior mirrors must only be operated electrically, not by hand, as this could damage their electric drive.**

[1] Do the opposite in right-hand drive vehicles.

**For the sake of the environment**

**Do not leave the exterior mirror heating on for longer than necessary. Otherwise it causes unnecessary energy consumption.**

**Note**

**If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.**

# Sun protection

## Sun blind

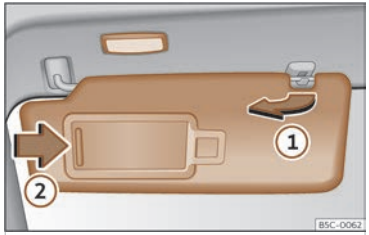



**Fig. 102** Sun visor

**Options for adjusting driver and front passenger sun visors**

- Lower the sun visor towards the windscreen.
- The sun visor can be pulled out of its mounting and turned towards the door ››› **Fig. 102** ①.
- Swing the sun visor towards the door, backwards and lengthwise.

There is a vanity mirror on the sun visor, with a cover. When the cover is opened ② a light comes on.

The light goes out when the vanity mirror cover is closed or the sun visor is pushed back up.

**WARNING**

**Folded sun blinds can reduce visibility.**

- **Always store sun blinds and visors in their housing when not in use.**

**Note**

**The light above the sun visor automatically switches off after a few minutes in certain conditions. This prevents the battery from discharging.**

## Glass roof sun blind

**Fig. 103** On the interior roof lining: function button to operate the sun blind.

The electric sun blind operates while the ignition is switched on and can be opened and closed using the function button on the interior roof trim.

**Opening and closing the sunshade blind**

- *Automatic function*: swipe your finger forward (open) or back (close) over the function button ››› **Fig. 103**. Pressing the function button stops the automatic function.
- *Manual function*: swipe your finger across the function button forwards (open) or backwards (close) and hold until the blind reaches the desired position.

### Anti-trap function of the sunshade blind

The anti-trap function can reduce the risk of injury when closing the sunshade blind ››› ⚠. If the blind encounters resistance or an obstacle when closing, it will reopen immediately.

- Check why the blind did not close.
- Try to close the blind again.
- If the blind still cannot be closed due to an obstacle or resistance, it will reopen immediately. Once open, it can be closed for a short space of time without the anti-trap function.
- If it is still not possible to close the blind, close it without the anti-trap function.

### Closing the sunshade blind without the anti-trap function

- Try to close the blind again.
- If it still cannot be closed, within 5 seconds slide the function button backwards without releasing it ››› Fig. 103 until the blind closes fully. **The blind closes without the intervention of the anti-trap function!**
- If it is still not possible to close the blind, visit a specialised workshop.

If the function button is released during closing, the blind opens automatically.

### The button reacts differently than expected

Moisture, dirt, grease, etc., can limit the operation of the buttons. Make sure the buttons are always clean and dry.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Closing the sun blind without the anti-trap function can cause serious injury.**

- **Always close the blind with care.**
- **Do not allow anyone to remain in the blind travel area, particularly when closing without the anti-trap function.**
- **The anti-trap function does not prevent fingers or other parts of the body from becoming trapped against the roof frame and injuries occurring.**

# Air conditioning

## Heating, ventilation and cooling

### Introduction

The 2-zone climate control heats, ventilates, cools and dehumidifies the passenger compartment as two independent air conditioning zones (driver and front passenger).

The air conditioning can be switched on tap any button in the air conditioning menu directly related to the air conditioning (for example temperatures, AUTO, A/C, etc.).

The use of certain functions that are not directly related to the operation of the air conditioning, such as the heated rear window, will not result in the air conditioning being switched on immediately.

Optimal air conditioning performance is achieved when the vehicle interior is closed. If a great deal of heat accumulates in the interior, ventilating it can accelerate the cooling process.

Some functions and menu tabs depend on the equipment.

#### Operating the air conditioning with voice controls

Depending on the equipment, some of the air conditioning functions can be operated by voice control ››› page 273.

#### Passenger recognition function

The passenger recognition system automatically adjusts the air conditioning, reducing power in non-occupant areas to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption.

When the drive system is active, the vehicle can detect whether a seat is occupied.

The turning down of the air conditioning is indicated as follows:

- *Front passenger area*: on the front passenger temperature selector, which will display ECO instead of the selected temperature.

#### Dust and pollen filter

The dust and pollen filter with activated carbon cartridge helps reduce impurities in the air entering the passenger compartment.

The dust and pollen filter must be changed regularly so that air conditioner performance is not adversely affected.

If filter performance drops sooner than expected because of operation in highly contaminated environments, replace it before the scheduled service interval.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Reduced visibility through the windows increases the risk of serious accidents.**

- **Always ensure that all windows are free of ice and snow, and that they are not fogged, so as to maintain good visibility of everything outside.**
- **Only drive when you have good visibility.**
- **Always ensure that you use the air conditioner and heated rear window to maintain good visibility.**
- **Do not keep air-recirculation mode activated for long periods. If the cooling system is off and recirculation remains on, the windows may mist up quickly, greatly reducing visibility.**
- **Switch air recirculation mode off when it is not required.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Food, medicines and other objects sensitive to heat or cold may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the vents.**

- **Never place food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects close to the air vents.**

**Note**

- When the air conditioning system is switched off, the incoming air from outside will not be dehumidified. To prevent fogging of the windows, CUPRA recommends leaving the cooling system turned on. To do this, press the function button A/C. The icon should light up.
- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure heating and cooling are not impaired, and to prevent the windows from misting over.
- The air from the vents flows through the vehicle interior and is extracted through slots in the luggage compartment designed for this purpose. Therefore, you should avoid obstructing these slots with any kind of object.
- It is advisable to turn on the air conditioning at least once a month, to lubricate the system gaskets and prevent leaks. If a decrease in the cooling capacity is detected, a Technical Service should be consulted to check the system.

## Air conditioning controls

**Fig. 104** Schematic representation: air-conditioning functions.

Ⓐ **Climabar**

Fixed bar at the bottom of the Infotainment System display ››› **Fig. 104** Ⓐ where the following Air Conditioning functions are located:

**Temperature** Tapping on the numbers themselves opens a pop-up window for temperature settings using the symbols ⊕ or ⊖.
**OR:** use the touch zones ① and ② (blue / red) to adjust the temperature of the Air Conditioning ››› **Fig. 104**. You can also change the temperature by swiping your finger right to left across the touch areas.

If seat heating is fitted, pressing the symbol adjusts the seat heating level. To turn off the heating, press the button until the light level is off. It can also be controlled via the main **Seats** menu ››› **page 146**.

**OR:** the seat heating can be controlled by tapping with two fingers at once on touch zones ① (for driver) and ② (for passenger).

MAX The air conditioning defrost/demist function clears the windscreen of ice and condensation. The air is dehumidified and the fan is set to high.

**CLIMA** Press this to access the Air Conditioning menu ››› **page 144**.

REAR Switches the heated window on or off when the drive system is switched on. It switches off automatically after a maximum of 10 minutes. The user must switch it off as soon as the glass is demisted. The system can temporarily switch off the function to avoid possible damage to the battery. The function will be restored as soon as the vehicle's energy management system permits it.

**Favourites (depending on the equipment)**

Except for the temperature buttons and seat-heating buttons, **CLIMA**, MAX and REAR, the remaining Climabar buttons can be customised as follows:

1. Press and hold the button that you want to configure. A box showing all the possible options drops down.
2. When you select an option, the button is programmed with that option.
3. Close the box to return to the infotainment menu.

## Air Conditioning Menu

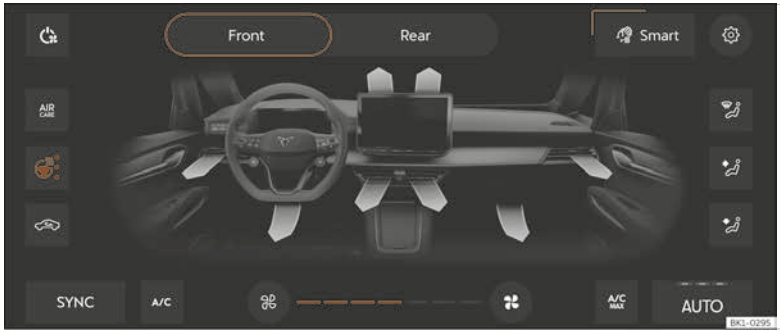



**Fig. 105** Schematic representation: Air conditioning menu.

The following functions are available in the **Air conditioning** menu, depending on the equipment:

Switch air conditioning on/off.

SYNC Equalises all temperature settings to the value selected in the driver zone. To deactivate synchronisation, change the temperature setting for the front passenger. Activates the temperature regulation for the passenger side ››› **Fig. 104** ② to set a different temperature.

**Vents** The colour of the arrows in the image of the vehicle interior indicates the temperature requested depending on the ambient conditions, not the air outlet temperature. The air-outlet direction is selected with the , and buttons.

Switching manual air recirculation on and off ››› **page 145**.

Manual steering wheel heating setting with three heating levels. Press the function button repeatedly to achieve the desired level. To disconnect it, press several times until no LED is on ››› **page 148**.

A/C Switch the air conditioning system on and off.

A/C MAX Switch maximum air conditioning output on and off. Air-recirculation mode is switched on automatically and the air conditioning directs the air automatically to the upper body area.

AIR CARE The air conditioning system contains a filter that can reduce allergen contaminants. The Air Care function activates recirculation and regulates it automatically and continuously as long as there is no risk of misting.

Manual adjustment of fan speed by tapping or .
**OR:** by pressing or swiping your finger on the lines until the desired fan speed is reached.

AUTO In this mode, the system automatically regulates the interior temperature, fan speed and air distribution for optimal thermal comfort. The AUTO mode will deactivate as soon as manual changes are made to the fan speed, air distribution, windscreen demisting or air recirculation. Repeatedly pressing the mode button AUTO sets the function to gentle, medium or high ventilation levels.

### Smart submenu

Submenu where different smart and/or automatic functionalities are located, depending on the version.

Hand warm: automatically adjusts climate control for a set time to heat air via the front vents.

Cool feet: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to cool the footwell area.

Demist the windscreen: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to demist the windscreen.

Warm feet: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to heat the footwell area.

Fresh Air: automatically adjusts the air conditioning for a certain time to ventilate the vehicle interior.

Fast cooling: automatically adjusts the air conditioning to ventilate the vehicle interior for a certain amount of time.

Fast heating: automatically adjusts the air conditioning to heat the vehicle interior for a certain amount of time[1].

### Settings submenu

Submenu where the following settings are located:

- Automatic recirculation: to switch automatic air recirculation on and off >>> page 145.
- Heated steering wheel switched on at start of journey depending on temperature: select one of the three heating levels and/or Off from the dropdown menu >>> page 148.

## Air recirculation

Air recirculation mode prevents the ambient air from entering the interior.

When the outside temperature is very high, it is advisable to select air recirculation mode for a short period to refresh the vehicle interior more quickly.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is disconnected when MAX is pressed or when a sensor detects that the vehicle's windows may mist up.

### Switching the manual air recirculation mode on and off

- Press the button to switch manual air recirculation on or off.

**WARNING**

**Stuffy or stale air will increase fatigue and reduce driver concentration possibly resulting in a serious accident.**

- **Never leave the fresh air fan turned off or use the air recirculation for long periods of time; the air in the vehicle interior will not be refreshed.**

**NOTICE**

**In vehicles with an air conditioner, do not smoke when air recirculation is switched on. The smoke may be deposited on the cooling evaporator and on the active combination filter and cause permanent unpleasant odours.**

**Note**

**When the outside temperature is very high, briefly switching on the air recirculation mode helps to cool the vehicle interior more quickly.**

[1] Available depending on equipment.

## Seat heating

**Fig. 106** Schematic representation: Seats menu

Depending on equipment, the front seats can be electrically heated in three levels.

### Turning on the seat heating

There are several ways to switch on the front seat heating:

- Press the symbol in: main menu **Seats > Heating > Front**.
- Tap the symbol on the **Climabar** ›››  page 143.
- Tap with two fingers at once on touch zones ① (for driver) and ② (for passenger) ›››  Fig. 104.

### Controlling seat heating

- Press the corresponding seat function button to switch on the seat heating to maximum power.
- Press the function button of the corresponding seat repeatedly until the desired level is set.
- To switch off seat heating, press the corresponding seat icon several times until no LED is on.

The seat heating will switch off automatically when no person is detected on the seat. The indication on the infotainment system turns grey after approx 2 seconds. If the passenger sits down again while the drive system is still switched on, the seat heating switches on again automatically.

The seat heating can be switched on again manually even if the seat is unoccupied.

### Smart heated seat

Availability depending on the equipment. This is an smart function that automatically activates and regulates the driver and front passenger seat heating for greater comfort.

The seat heating for the driver's seat and front passenger seat can be adjusted separately to achieve fully adapted comfort. In addition, in

the case of the driver, the function can be personalised, depending on the user registered in the vehicle.

To access the smart heated seats function, the CUPRA CONNECT **personalisation** service must first be activated››› page 248.

- To activate/deactivate the function go to the seat heating submenu, and press on the **Automatic heating** button below the image of the corresponding seat ››› Fig. 106.

**Note**

- **Seat-heating learning will not be performed after using seat pre-heating or stationary air conditioning.**

The smart heated seats function requires a period for learning usage habits. The start of the learning process is indicated by the information text **Learning 0%**, shown above the function on/off button. During this process, the learning percentage increase will be shown in this informative text, until 100% learning is achieved.

The learning progress is also shown in the progress bar around the on/off button. During the learning process, the word "Automatic" on the activation button remains unlit.

Seat heating level 3 (maximum) needs to be used to ensure that habits are learned correctly.

During the learning period, it is recommended to use the seat heating at different ambient temperatures to achieve optimal autonomous operation.

Once learning reaches 100 %, automatic mode is activated. This mode is also indicated by an A next to the relevant seat button in the climate bar, which is always visible at the bottom of the screen. In addition, the word "Automatic" on the on/off button will be illuminated.

The heating can be configured at any time. If the automatic mode is activated, the text **Optimising** is displayed and the automatic mode will take into account this new learning or modification that the user has made to the seat heating (e.g. changing the heat setting, etc.).

To reset the process and restart the learning period, go to the ⚙**Settings > Seat heating settings > Restore driver/front-passenger profile** submenu.

Tap ⓘ to access information about the function.

**Note**

**Please note the following for the smart heated seats feature:**

- **The system may reset the learning process if it has not been satisfactory.**
- **Separate driver's seat learning will be required for each registered user.**
- **The passenger seat learns regardless of the active registered user.**
- **The use of the stationary air conditioning function with electricity consumers** **››› page 149** **may affect the learning time of the function.**

### Cases in which heat seating should not be switched on

Do not switch seat heating on if any of the following conditions are met:

- The seat is occupied by a person with limited perception of pain or temperature.
- The seat is not occupied.
- The seat has a cover.
- A child seat has been installed on the seat.
- The seat cushion is wet or damp.
- The outdoor or vehicle interior temperature is higher than +25°C (77°F).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Children and people who, due to medication, paralysis or chronic illnesses (e.g. diabetes), cannot perceive pain or temperature — or have limited perception — may suffer burns to the back, buttocks or legs when using seat heating.**

- **People with limited pain and temperature thresholds must never use seat heating.**
- **If an abnormality in the device's temperature control is detected, have it checked by a specialist workshop.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the fabric of the cushion is wet, this can adversely affect the operation of the seat heating, increasing the risk of burns.**

- **Make sure the seat cushion is dry prior to using the seat heater.**
- **Do not sit on the seat with clothing that is wet or damp.**
- **Do not leave clothing that is wet or damp on the seat.**
- **Do not spill liquids on the seat.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heaters, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure to a single point on the seat cushion or backrest.**
- **Liquids, sharps objects and insulating materials (e.g. covers or child seats) can damage the seat heating.**
- **In the event of odours, switch off seat heating immediately and have it inspected by a specialised workshop.**
- **If the original seat upholstery is replaced by another material, seat heating may overheat or its operation may be limited.**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Seat heating should remain on only when needed. Otherwise, it is unnecessary energy consumption.**

## Steering wheel heating

The selected steering wheel heating level will be displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the air conditioning menu.

### Adjusting steering wheel heating via the infotainment system

- In the air conditioning menu, press the steering wheel heating function button . The heating initially switches on at the maximum level.
- Press the function button repeatedly to set the desired level.
- To switch off steering wheel heating, press the function button several times until no LED is on.

### Cases in which the steering wheel heating switches on and off automatically

If the drive system is restarted within about 10 minutes, the steering wheel heating switches on automatically at the last set level.

### Steering wheel heating when moving off

Steering wheel heating switches on automatically at low outside temperatures. The function is activated/deactivated via the submenu **Settings > Switch on at start of journey depending on temperature** ››› page 144.

### Automatic disconnection

Steering wheel heating will be switched off automatically when any of the following conditions are met:

- Electrical energy consumption is too high.
- The steering wheel heating system is faulty.
- If the ignition is switched off.

## Troubleshooting

**or The concentration of $CO_2$ in the air in the vehicle interior is too high**

The control lamp lights up red or yellow.

The following message may be displayed on the instrument cluster display: **Health risk! High CO2 concentration. Open windows!** or **Health risk! CO2 very high. Open all windows now!.**

- Open all windows immediately.
- Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

**The air conditioning does not work or the $CO_2$ concentration cannot be measured**

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The following message may be displayed on the instrument cluster display: **Air conditioning system not working correctly. Visit a workshop.**

- Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

**The cooling system A/C cannot be switched on or its operation is limited**

The A/C cooling mode operates when the driver's seat is occupied.

- Switch on the fan.
- Check the air conditioning's fuse ››› page 310.
- Change the active combined filter ››› page 343.
- If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.

**Change the temperature unit (air conditioning).**

The temperature display can be changed from Celsius to Fahrenheit on the Infotainment System display using the function button **> Settings > Units**.

**Water or water vapour under the vehicle**

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak!

When the outside humidity is high and the ambient temperature is low, condensation water may evaporate when the stationary air conditioning is operating. In this case, steam may come out from under the vehicle. This does not mean that the vehicle has any damage.

# Stationary air conditioning

## Introduction

With the stationary air conditioning you can cool, ventilate and heat the vehicle interior while the vehicle is parked. In winter, you can also demist the windscreen and leave it free of ice and snow (if the layer is thin).

The stationary air conditioning is powered by a socket, if the vehicle is plugged in, or by the high-voltage battery otherwise. The stationary air conditioning can be programmed and controlled in the infotainment system and by using the My CUPRA App, thanks to the CUPRA CONNECT technology.

You can find information about the app, its availability and the necessary requirements for its use, as well as compatible terminals, on the Internet ››› page 246.

**NOTICE**

**Never place food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects close to the air vents. Food, medicines and other objects sensitive to heat or cold may be damaged or made unsuitable for use by the air coming from the vents.**

**Note**

**Using the stationary air conditioning without connecting the charging cable reduces the vehicle's range. At extreme exterior temperatures, the heating or cooling power of the stationary air conditioning may be insufficient to reach the desired temperature.**

## Operating the stationary air conditioning

The stationary air conditioning only works if the high voltage battery is sufficiently charged.

The stationary air conditioning can be used without the charging connector being plugged in. In this case, stationary air conditioning draws the required electrical energy from the high-voltage battery.

### Immediately air condition the parked vehicle (only if the driver is inside the vehicle)

- Switch the ignition off.
- Press in the Infotainment system's departure menu >>> page 36.

The vehicle will be air-conditioned for approx. 30 minutes. The function switches off automatically. For this, the drive system must be switched off.

The vehicle can also be air-conditioned before a desired departure time >>> page 150.

### Immediately air condition a parked vehicle (only if the driver is not in the vehicle)

- Press the immediate on icon in the Infotainment system without turning on the vehicle's ignition.

### Setting the desired temperature

- Open the **Air conditioning** menu.
- Set the desired temperature using ⊕ and ⊖.

### Switching off the stationary air conditioning

- Connect the drive system.
- **OR:** Press the immediate on/off button in the mobile App or on the MyCUPRA website.
- **OR:** Press the immediate on/off icon in the infotainment system (while the vehicle is switched off). It is only possible to switch it off if the stationary air conditioning was switched on using this button.
- **OR:** Press the air conditioning off button in the **Air conditioning** menu of the infotainment system (while the vehicle is off).

### The stationary air conditioning switches off automatically

- After approx. 30 minutes if the vehicle is air-conditioned by "Air condition now" with the ignition switched off.
- After approx. 15 minutes if the drive system has not been switched on by one hour after the scheduled departure time.
- When the state of charge of the high voltage battery drops excessively.

**Note**

**Noises may be heard while the stationary air conditioning is running, related to its operation.**

## Programming the stationary air conditioning

The stationary air conditioning can be programmed in the Infotainment system for a scheduled departure time. You can set the desired temperature of the vehicle interior for the vehicle's planned departure time.

Based on the desired temperature, the vehicle calculates the time that the stationary air conditioning needs to be switched on to reach this temperature by the departure time. The maximum pre-operation time of the stationary air conditioning is approx. 30 minutes before the departure time.

### Air conditioning the vehicle for departure

- Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Press **Departure** to open the timer menu.

- Set the scheduled departure time.
- Activate the timer using the checkbox.

The earliest scheduled departure time is displayed in the infotainment system's departure menu, and can be switched on and off there >>> page 36.

### Stationary air conditioning with additional electrical comfort consumers

If the vehicle is going to be air conditioned before departure, the electrical comfort consumers, such as seat heating, steering wheel heating or the heated rear window, can also be switched on automatically before the departure time. Comfort electrical consumers, depending on equipment, are activated only at low temperatures.

To enable the use of these consumers:

- Open the **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Tap **Air conditioning**.
- Select the seats whose comfort consumers should be connected along with the stationary air conditioning. Only these seats will be heated before the departure time.
- To turn on the window heating before the departure time, activate the **Automatic window heating** function

The maximum pre-operation time of the electrical comfort consumers is approx. 10 minutes before the departure time.

If the air conditioning is switched on immediately, the electrical comfort consumers are also activated, depending on the equipment.

### Air conditioning the vehicle during high-voltage charging

While the vehicle's high voltage battery is being charged, regardless of whether it is with alternating current (AC) or direct current (DC), the vehicle can be air conditioned before the scheduled departure time. This can be set in the infotainment system, under charging settings >>> page 85.

### Immediate activation of the rear window heating

The heated windscreen can be switched on or off using the My CUPRA App , whether or not the stationary air conditioning is switched on.

### Air-conditioning the vehicle after unlocking it

- Open the infotainment system's **Stationary air conditioning** menu.
- Press ⚙.
- Check the **Air condition the vehicle after unlocking** check box by pressing it.

The vehicle will be air conditioned for 5 minutes when the doors are unlocked.

### Check the schedule

When the ignition is switched off, the infotainment system displays the next time that is active and the set functions.

# Driving

## Driving indications

### Pedals

- Make sure that you can always press the pedals without any problems.
- Ensure that the pedals can return unimpaired to their initial positions.
- Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened during the trip and do not obstruct the pedals ››› ⚠.

Only use floor mats which leave the pedals clear and which are secured to prevent them from slipping. You can obtain suitable floor mats from a specialised dealership. Fasteners for floor mats are fitted in the footwells.

#### Wear suitable footwear

Always wear shoes which support your feet properly and give you a good feeling for the pedals.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Restricting pedal operation can lead to critical situations while driving.**
- **Never lay or fit floor mats or other floor coverings over the original floor mats. This would reduce the pedal area and could obstruct the pedals. Risk of accident.**
- **Never place objects in the driver footwell. An object could move into the pedal area and impair pedal operation.**

### Economical driving style.

An appropriate driving style reduces consumption, environmental pollution and wear and tear on the electric drive system, brakes and tyres. Some tips that are good for the environment and your wallet can be found below.

#### Drive with anticipation

An erratic driving style reduces range. Frequent accelerating and braking can be avoided by keeping an eye on the traffic. Keeping a sufficient distance from the vehicle in front helps you to drive with anticipation.

#### Take advantage of braking energy recuperation

If Eco assist ››› page 183 is deactivated in the infotainment system, position **D** is engaged and the accelerator pedal is not depressed, the car will coast.

If the assistant is activated in the infotainment system, position **D** is engaged and the accelerator pedal is not depressed, the vehicle automatically recuperates energy. While doing so, it adapts to the driving situation and external conditions, such as vehicles in front and speed restrictions. During recuperation, energy from the moving vehicle is used to charge the high-voltage battery ››› page 157. This causes the vehicle to slow down.

If the accelerator pedal is not depressed while in position **B** ››› page 163, *Gear selector*, very intense recuperation occurs.

This also increases when the brake pedal is depressed.

#### Avoid full throttle

At excessively high speeds, rolling resistance and aerodynamics increase along with the force required to move the vehicle. This reduces the vehicle's range. Never drive at the vehicle's maximum speed.

#### Perform regular maintenance

Regular maintenance is essential for economical driving and increases the service life of the vehicle.

### Tyre pressure

Very low tyre pressure not only causes tyre wear, but also increases tyre rolling resistance, which reduces the vehicle's range. Use tyres with optimised rolling resistance.

Adapt tyre pressure to the load:

- Please note the information on the tyre pressure sticker >>> page 329.
- Tyre pressure loss indicator >>> page 339.

### Remove unnecessary weight

Energy consumption can be reduced if the luggage compartment is emptied of items such as snow chains or unused child seats before setting off.

To keep the vehicle's aerodynamic drag as low as possible, remove exterior accessories, such as the ski rack, bike rack or roof rack, when they are no longer needed.

### Saving energy

Comfort consumers, such as the air conditioning or the heated windscreen and window, require energy from the high-voltage battery. If you wish to increase the vehicle's range:

- Set higher vehicle interior temperatures in summer and lower temperatures in winter. If the outside temperature is high, ventilate the vehicle interior before setting off.
- Use the stationary air conditioning when charging the battery with an external power supply >>> page 149.
- Switch off the comfort consumers when they have completed their task.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**

**For the sake of the environment**

**CUPRA dealers can provide you with further information about correct vehicle maintenance and spare parts, e.g. new, particularly energy-efficient tyres.**

## Driving with a loaded vehicle

In order to achieve appropriate driving characteristics when the vehicle is loaded, please note the following:

- Place all luggage securely >>> page 289.
- Accelerate with particular care and precaution.
- Avoid sharp braking and sudden manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual.
- If applicable, please note the information about the roof rack.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Loads that move around could seriously endanger the vehicle's stability and safety, extend the braking distance during hard or emergency braking and lead to serious accidents and injuries.**

- **Secure the load correctly to prevent it from moving around.**
- **Secure heavy objects with suitable lashing straps or tie-down belts.**
- **Ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not transport large amounts of liquid in the vehicle interior. If the liquid leaks out, it could get into the orange high voltage cable connectors. This could damage the electrical system and the high voltage battery.**

## Driving with the rear lid open

Driving with the rear lid open is particularly dangerous. Secure all objects and the open rear lid correctly and take any necessary measures.

Driving with the rear lid open increases the aerodynamic drag of the vehicle, along with the energy consumption of the electric drive system. This therefore considerably reduces

the vehicle's possible range. CUPRA therefore recommends that you do not drive with the rear lid open.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving with the rear lid unlocked or open can cause serious injury.**

- **Always drive with the rear lid closed.**
- **Place all objects securely inside the luggage compartment. Otherwise, loose objects could fall out of the luggage compartment and injure road users driving behind.**
- **Always drive carefully and with special care and anticipation.**
- **Avoid braking and sudden manoeuvres, as the open rear lid could move uncontrollably.**
- **When transporting objects that protrude from the luggage compartment, mark them accordingly to warn other road users. Please bear in mind all legal provisions.**
- **Never use the rear lid to support or secure objects protruding from the luggage compartment.**
- **If a luggage rack is fitted on the rear lid, remove it and the load when you have to drive with the rear lid open.**

**NOTICE**

**An open rear lid changes the height and, in some cases, the length of the vehicle.**

**Note**

**Depending on the country, it may be forbidden to drive with the rear lid open. Please observe the legal regulations of the country in question.**

## Driving on flooded roads

To prevent damage to the vehicle driving on flooded roads, take the following into account:

- Water should **never** come above the lower edge of the bodywork.
- Drive at pedestrian speed.
- Never stop the vehicle in the water, drive in reverse or disconnect the drive system.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction form waves that can raise the water level so high that your vehicle will not be able to cross the water safely.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After driving through flooded zones, braking effectiveness can decrease if the brake discs or pads are damp** >>> page 169.

**Note**

- **Driving through flooded areas may severely damage vehicle components such as the electric drive system, drive train or electrical system.**
- **Avoid driving through salt water (corrosion)** >>> page 345.

## Trips abroad

The vehicle has been manufactured for a specific country and meets the approval regulations in force in that country at the time it was manufactured.

If you are going to use the vehicle abroad temporarily or for a short period of time, please observe the relevant instructions.

Some countries have special safety regulations and provisions that the vehicle may not comply with. Before travelling abroad, CUPRA recommends that you seek information from one of your dealers about the legal provisions in force in your destination country.

If you are going to sell the vehicle in another country or use it there for a longer period of time, please observe the legal regulations in force in the country in question.

In some cases it may be necessary to install or remove certain equipment at a later date, and to deactivate certain functions. Sets and types

of services may also be affected. In particular, this can occur if the vehicle is to be used in another climatic region for a long period of time.

Due to the different frequency bands around the world, the factory-fitted infotainment system may not work in another country.

Due to differing legal regulations in place, charging the high-voltage battery in other countries may only be permitted at a reduced charging current. The charging cable limits the charging current based on the infrastructure that is used. If the settings are different, it is charged at the lowest value >>> page 90.

**Note**

- **CUPRA cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or lack of availability of genuine spare parts.**
- **CUPRA accepts no liability if the vehicle does not meet the legal requirements in force in other countries and continents, or if it only partially meets them.**

## Electric drive system functions.

### Delivery of power from the electric engine

The maximum torque of the electric engine is available immediately after pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Brake energy recuperation (charging)

When braking the vehicle, electric power is generated through the electric engine and stored in the high-voltage battery >>> page 157. This also occurs to a lesser extent when the vehicle moves by inertia or drives downhill in the deceleration phase.

As the high-voltage battery's state of charge increases, recuperation reduces along with the engine braking effect. When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, no energy recuperation takes place and the engine braking effect is not available >>> ⚠.

Recuperation can be displayed in the instrument cluster or on the infotainment screen.

### Slow travel function

The slow travel function consists of driving slowly, at about 10 km/h (6 mph), forward or reverse without pressing the accelerator pedal. The slow travel function is activated automatically:

- When the drive system is on and the selector lever is in position **D** or **R**. With one-pedal driving in position **B**, energy recuperation is available down to standstill.

The slow travel function deactivates if:

- The selector lever is moved to **N**, the electronic parking brake is applied, or Auto Hold is active.

**⚠ WARNING**

**An electric vehicle emits very little noise when it is in operation, both when stationary and when driving. This means that other road users and pedestrians (including children) may not hear or notice it, or only with difficulty. This can lead to accidents and injuries, e.g. in residential areas, when manoeuvring or reversing.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.**

- **When the drive system is engaged and gear position D/B is selected or reverse gear R is engaged, the vehicle should be stopped by pressing the brake pedal.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**As the state of charge of the high-voltage battery increases, the engine braking effect caused by the recuperation of the brake energy is reduced and may even be completely cancelled out.**

- **Slow down before starting a long distance with a steep descent.**
- **During a long distance with a steep descent, reduce the speed with the vehicle brake.**

## One-pedal driving

One-pedal driving allows you to brake and accelerate using the accelerator pedal. The selected recuperation level can be shown in the Digital Cockpit, depending on the selected display configuration.

### Activating one-pedal driving

To activate One-pedal driving, do the following:

1. Select position **B** on the gear selector.

   To brake the vehicle to a standstill, release the accelerator pedal.

   **Or:** To accelerate the vehicle, press the accelerator pedal.

Depending on the force applied to the pedal, one-pedal driving may respond differently.

### Availability

One-pedal driving is temporarily unavailable in the following cases:

- When driving with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

### Deactivating one-pedal driving

To deactivate one-pedal driving, proceed as follows:

1. Exit position **B**.

### Recuperation levels

The recuperation levels for one-pedal driving can be set in the **Vehicle** menu of the infotainment system. The last selected energy recuperation level is saved.

- **Standard** recuperation level.
- **Strong** recuperation level.

### Take control of vehicle warning

If the automatic deceleration provided by one-pedal driving is insufficient or system limits are reached, a message in the instrument cluster will prompt you to press the brake. In addition, the red or yellow warning lamp will illuminate and an audible warning will sound. Take control of the vehicle ››› ⚠.

### Efficient driving

To achieve the most efficient driving style, drive with the **Range** or **Comfort** profile and with Eco Assist activated.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Strong recuperation can cause loss of traction and skidding, especially on slippery roads. This can lead to loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious or fatal injury.**

- **Activate permanent strong recuperation only when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and when vehicle deceleration and your driving style do not endanger other road users.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**One-pedal driving operates exclusively within the system limits. One-pedal driving may not respond or may respond with a delay. If you are not careful, there is a risk of accidents and serious injury, including death.**

- **You are responsible at all times for ensuring that the vehicle decelerates and stops.**
- **Be prepared to brake the vehicle at any time.**
- **Stay alert at all times and do not rely solely on the system. The responsibility for all driving tasks always rests with the driver.**
- **Always adapt your speed and distance from vehicles ahead to visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Take control of the vehicle immediately if an indication is shown on the digital instrument cluster display indicating that the**

driver should take control, or if the deceleration provided by one-pedal driving is insufficient.

- Brake if the vehicle begins to roll unintentionally, for example after the driver takes over.

**⚠ WARNING**

When driving a loaded vehicle with one-pedal driving, the braking effect depends on the selected regenerative-braking level. Driver intervention may be required to achieve sufficient braking. Insufficient braking can increase the risk of accidents and cause serious or fatal injury.

- You are responsible for ensuring that the vehicle decelerates and stops.
- Be prepared to apply the brakes at any time.
- Stay alert at all times and do not rely solely on the system. The responsibility for all driving tasks always rests with the driver.

**Note**

- One-pedal driving is available in all driving profiles.
- Depending on equipment, display of the selected B mode recuperation level is not available on all screens.
- In addition, the mileage is shown in the menu for selecting the recuperation levels.

## Brake energy recuperation (charging)

When braking the vehicle and when the vehicle moves by inertia or travels downhill in the deceleration phase, electric power is generated by the electric engine and stored in the high-voltage battery. The electric motor then operates as an alternator and produces a engine braking effect. This process is called brake energy recuperation.

The engine braking effect can be more or less intense, depending on the position of the gear selector ››› page 163. If the recuperation is very intense, the brake light of the vehicle may also be switched on. As the high-voltage battery's state of charge increases, recuperation reduces along with the engine braking effect. When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, no energy recuperation takes place and there is no engine braking effect. When the vehicle detects that road conditions do not allow safe contact between the wheels and the road surface, energy recuperation is automatically reduced, along with the engine braking effect. The power display provides information about the availability of recuperation and the engine braking effect ››› page 18.

The vehicle recuperates energy differently depending on the selected gear position and the infotainment system settings:

- Position **D** selected and Eco Assist switched off››› page 183: no recuperation takes place. There is no recuperation level with the **Range** or **Comfort** profile. In the **Performance** and **CUPRA** profiles, the recuperation levels differ, with **CUPRA** being higher.
- Position **D** selected and Eco Assist activated ››› page 183: automatic recuperation. The recuperation level is automatically selected based on navigation data and the traffic situation.
- Position **B** selected: intense recuperation.

The vehicle also recovers energy when the brake pedal is depressed.

### Eco Assist

Eco assist helps the driver to make efficient use of the vehicle's engine braking effect ››› page 183. It selects the recuperation level based on navigation data and traffic situation.

The assistant can be switched on and off in the infotainment system's vehicle settings.

### Driving down slopes

On descents, position **B** should be selected whenever possible.

Never let the vehicle roll downhill with position **N** neutral selected.

**⚠ WARNING**

**As the high-voltage battery's state of charge increases, the engine braking effect drops and may be completely cancelled out. This puts much greater demand on the vehicle's brakes.**

- **When charging the high-voltage battery in high-altitude locations (e.g. on top of a mountain pass), never fully charge it. In this way, when descending the mountain the engine braking effect through recuperation will be enabled.**
- **Slow down before starting a long distance with a steep descent.**
- **During a long distance with a steep descent, reduce the speed with the vehicle brake.**

## Energy recuperation with the steering wheel levers

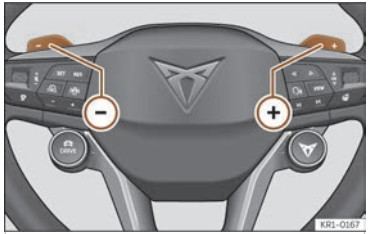



**Fig. 107** Multi-function steering wheel: energy recuperation levers.

The energy generated during braking is stored in the high-voltage battery during recuperation. With a higher level of recuperation, the braking force also increases after the accelerator pedal is released.

### Automatic recuperation

- Select mode **D** on the gear selector lever.
- Activate the automatic recuperation **ECO** assist ››› page 183.

The instrument cluster display shows **A**.

- Pressing the steering wheel levers **+** or **–** temporarily activates the manual selection of the energy recuperation level.››› Fig. 107 Automatic recuperation is reactivated by pressing the accelerator pedal again.

When automatic recuperation is selected ››› page 183, the only possible way that the steering wheel levers react is for retention.

**Note**

**The steering wheel levers will not perform any function in the following cases:**

- **While pressing the accelerator with ECO Assist activated.**
- **ACC activated.**
- **When the accelerator pedal is released, the automatic recuperation adjusts the braking energy recuperation intensity to suit the current driving situation.**
- **Automatic recuperation can also take place in Mode B of the gear selector lever with the ACC switched on. The instrument cluster displays A.**

### Selecting the recuperation level manually

- Select mode **D** on the gear selector lever.
- Deactivate the automatic recuperation **ECO** assist ››› page 183.
- Select the energy recuperation level with the steering wheel levers **+** or **–** ››› Fig. 107.
  - Tap **–** to choose a higher recuperation level.
  - Tap **+** to choose a lower recuperation level.

**Note**

**If no recuperation level is selected, the vehicle will move without recuperation braking after the accelerator pedal is released.**

**Display on the instrument cluster display**

Light recuperation

Medium recuperation

High recuperation

Automatic recuperation

When in manual recuperation mode, the instrument cluster will display a warning about the recuperation level.

When **B** mode is selected on the selector lever, two recuperation levels are obtained each time you release the accelerator pedal, equivalent to the standard recuperation level and the strong recuperation level.

When the **Performance** or **CUPRA** driving profile is selected, two different recuperation modes are available depending on the profile, with a stronger setting in the **CUPRA** profile. This recuperation level is activated each time you release the accelerator pedal and will remain active until changed using the steering wheel paddles.

**Note**

- **The more the high-voltage battery is charged: the less braking power the recuperation system will have.**
- **Recuperation also takes place when the brake pedal is depressed.**

**WARNING**

**High recuperation of braking energy can cause a loss of traction or the vehicle to skid, especially on slippery roads. This can cause loss of control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.**

- **Activate high recuperation of braking energy continuously only if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and if other road users are not at risk due to your vehicle's deceleration behaviour and driving style.**

## Troubleshooting

**Now only manoeuvring is possible! Charge. Check the manual**

The control lamp lights up in red to warn you that the system's power is very limited and the vehicle may soon stop in the middle of the road.

A message appears in the instrument cluster and an audible warning sounds.

The air conditioning comfort functions are restricted >>> page 141.

This may occur due to the following conditions:

- **Very low state of charge of the high-voltage battery.**
  - The control lamp comes on while the vehicle is moving. From this moment onwards, the vehicle can be started **twice** >>> page 161.

  If traffic conditions permit, move the vehicle onto the right hand side of the road and park it safely, or go to a charging station if possible.
- **Temperature and state of charge of the high-voltage battery.**
  - The control lamp turns on before the drive system is switched on. Only manoeuvring is possible (at a speed of up to 7 km/h [4 mph]).

  CUPRA recommends that you charge the high-voltage battery and prepare the car for departure >>> page 150.

**Note**

**If you are planning to depart in low outside temperatures, CUPRA recommends pre-heating the vehicle while it is parked >>> page 150. Doing so also heats up the high-voltage battery. This increases the available power.**

**Performance restricted. Check the manual**

The control lamp lights up yellow to warn you that the power has decreased significantly and may decrease further.

A message appears in the instrument cluster and an audible warning sounds.

The air conditioning comfort functions are restricted ››› page 141.

As soon as the battery power increases again, the control lamp turns off.

Depending on the state of charge, CUPRA recommends:

- When the state of charge is low, the high-voltage battery must be charged.
- With a high state of charge and very high or low outside temperatures, the high voltage battery heats up or cools down while driving. After a certain amount of time, the available power increases again.

# Connecting and disconnecting the drive system

## Switching the ignition on/off

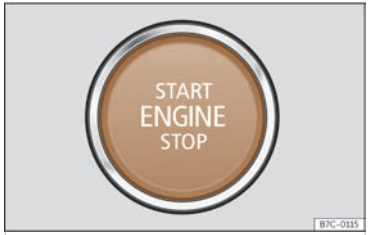



**Fig. 108** Starter button

Some vehicle functions are activated when the driver approaches the vehicle with the corresponding key.

### Switching on the ignition

- Press the brake pedal.
- **OR**: press the ignition/start button once. The ignition/start button is located on the right hand side of the steering column.

**Note**

**The ignition and drive system can only be switched on if there is a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.**

### Switching the ignition off

With the ignition on and the vehicle stopped, press the ignition/start button once.

**OR**: leave the vehicle when it is stopped and the electronic parking brake is applied.

The ignition will also switch off when the vehicle is stopped, the brake pedal is not depressed, the electronic parking brake applied and the driver releases the seat belt on his/her seat.

### Automatic ignition disconnection

If the driver leaves the ignition on but walks away from the vehicle, taking the vehicle key with him/her, the ignition switches off automatically after a certain period of time. If the front bonnet is opened while the ignition is switched on, it does not switch off automatically. The electronic parking brake is applied automatically when you leave the vehicle.

If no valid key is detected in the vehicle interior after the ignition has been switched off, the system cannot be switched on again without a valid key. An indication is shown on the instrument cluster.

### Breath alcohol ignition interlock device (breathalyser)

The vehicle is ready for the installation of a breath alcohol ignition interlock device (breathalyser).

After installing a breath alcohol ignition interlock device, it will always be necessary to pass a breathalyser test before the ignition can be switched on.

Some vehicle functionalities may be limited.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.**

- **If the gear selector is operated while the ignition is switched on, the drive system switches on immediately under certain circumstances** >>> page 161.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle keys are used negligently or without proper attention, accidents and serious injuries can occur.**

- **Never leave any key inside the vehicle when exiting. Otherwise, a child or unauthorised person could lock the vehicle, switch on the drive system or the ignition and operate the electrical equipment, such as the windows.**

## Connecting the drive system

### Requirements for connecting the drive system

The drive system can be connected when the following conditions are met:

- The level of charge of the high-voltage battery is sufficient.
- There is no charging cable plugged in.
- The temperature of the high-voltage battery is within the operating range.
- There is a valid key inside the vehicle.
- The seat belt is fastened.

### Connecting the drive system

- Depress the brake pedal and select a gear position >>> page 163. Visual and audio indications are given when the drive system switches on.
- If it is not possible to connect the drive system, repeat the procedure. If necessary, perform an emergency start >>> page 163.

### Automatic connection of the drive system

The vehicle's ignition can be switched on without pressing the start button by automatic driver detection.

1. Enter the vehicle.

   The air conditioning and infotainment system are available.

2. Press the brake pedal.

   Shown in the instrument cluster PARK: vehicle on, stationary, parked state.

3. Select **D** or **R** on the gear selector

   READY Shown in the instrument cluster and an audible signal sounds: vehicle ready to drive.

### Recognise whether the drive system is on or off

- With the drive system on, the instrument cluster shows the speed indicator.
- With the drive system off, the instrument cluster shows the vehicle image.

**⚠ WARNING**

**An electric vehicle emits very little noise when it is in operation, both when stationary and when driving. This means that other road users and pedestrians (including children) may not hear or notice it, or only with difficulty. This can lead to accidents and injuries, e.g. in residential areas, when manoeuvring or reversing.**

## Disconnecting the drive system

It is possible to switch off the vehicle ignition without pressing the start button.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop >>> page 208. If the Auto-Hold function is not active, tap **P** on the gear selector >>> page 209.

   The vehicle is still ready to be driven.

2. Exit the vehicle (without pressing the start button).

   Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that it is stopped correctly.

   The vehicle is switched off by automatic driver detection

3. Activate door locking. The instrument cluster switches off.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When leaving the vehicle, always ensure that the electronic parking brake is applied (the red control lamp (P) must be lit on the instrument cluster) and that all doors, windows, rear lid and front bonnet are fully closed and locked. Also ensure that the vehicle has fully stopped.**

## Never leave the vehicle with the drive system connected

If after stopping the vehicle you leave it with the drive system switched on and a gear selected, the ignition and drive system switch off automatically under certain conditions.

This protects the vehicle against unauthorised use.

The electronic parking brake is applied automatically ››› page 209.

If you then wish to continue driving, you have to turn the ignition on again ››› page 160, e.g. by depressing the brake pedal, along with the drive system ››› page 161. If applicable, observe instrument cluster indications.

### Automatic operation of the side light

If the dipped beam is switched on when the ignition switches off automatically, the side light will turn on until the vehicle is locked, or for a maximum of approx. 15 minutes.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When leaving the vehicle, always ensure that the electronic parking brake is applied and that all doors, windows, rear lid and front bonnet are fully closed and locked.**

## Electronic immobilizer

The electronic immobiliser helps to prevent the drive system from being connected with an unauthorised key and, consequently, the vehicle being put in motion.

The vehicle key has an integrated chip which automatically deactivates the electronic immobiliser if there is a valid key inside the vehicle interior.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when there is no longer a valid key inside the vehicle.

For this reason, the vehicle's drive system can only be connected with a correctly coded Original CUPRA key. This type of key can be purchased from a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

For this reason, the engine can only be started with a correctly coded Original CUPRA key. This type of key can be purchased from a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The correct operation of the vehicle is only guaranteed with original CUPRA keys.**

## e-Sound

e-Sound is an electronically generated engine sound to warn other road users of the presence of the electric vehicle.

e-Sound switches on when the drive system is switched on.

As the speed increases, the e-Sound slowly fades.

**⚠ WARNING**

**e-Sound volume and audibility may be limited if there is snow or heavy soiling in the front grille area. This can cause accidents.**

- **Before setting off, check that the front grille area is not too dirty and clean it if necessary.**
- **The driver should always assume that other road users have not heard the vehicle, even if e-Sound is switched on.**

## Troubleshooting

### Fault in the electric drive system or the high-voltage on-board network

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

A message to this effect appears in the instrument cluster.

There is a fault in the electric drive system or the high-voltage on-board network.

- Go immediately to a specialised workshop and request the electric drive system be checked.

It is possible to continue driving.

### The vehicle key is not recognized

A message to this effect appears in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle key's button battery is almost or fully run out, the key may not be recognized.

An emergency start must be performed:

- Place the vehicle key on the base of the central armrest box, as close to the symbol as possible.
- Depress the brake pedal or press the ignition/start button.
- The ignition is switched on.

### The drive system cannot be switched off

An emergency disconnection must be performed:

- Stop the vehicle.
- Press the ignition/start button twice within a few seconds, or press and hold it once.
- The drive and ignition system switches off.

### e-Sound does not work

The control lamp lights up yellow and an audible signal sounds.

A message to this effect appears in the instrument cluster.

- Contact a specialised workshop.

It is possible to continue driving.

### The drive system cannot be connected

If an unauthorised vehicle key is used or there is a system fault, an indication will appear in the instrument cluster.

- Use an authorised key.
- If the fault persists, seek specialist assistance.

# Gear selection

## Gear selector

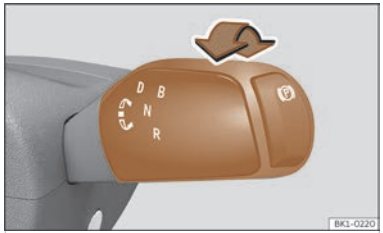



**Fig. 109** Gear selector with the electronic parking brake button.

The vehicle has a forward gear **D/B** and a reverse gear **R**.

The gear selector has a button for the electronic parking brake. To change from neutral **N** to another position, switch on the ignition, depress the brake pedal and turn the selector in the desired direction >>> **Fig. 109** (arrow):

### D – Permanent forward drive position

The electric drive system is in the normal program (automatic brake energy recuperation when Eco assist is activated >>> **page 183**).

### B – Intense braking energy recuperation

Intense recuperation of braking energy during deceleration phases ››› page 157.

### – Change between D and B

Change between **D** and **B** by turning the gear selector forwards one position from **D/B** ››› Fig. 109. The selector always returns to the initial position. Turning it forwards again changes back to **D**.

### (P) – Electronic parking brake

The drive wheels are locked mechanically. Only apply it when the vehicle is stationary ››› page 209.

### N – Neutral

The electric drive system is in the neutral position. No movement is transmitted to the wheels and the braking effect of the electric motor does not occur.

### R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear is selected. Only select this position when the vehicle is stationary.

### Driving down slopes

When driving downhill, the braking energy recuperation should be activated whenever possible ››› page 157.

### Stop and start moving uphill

You should use the Auto-Hold function when the vehicle's drive system is switched on and you stop the vehicle or start driving uphill ››› page 211.

When stopping uphill with a gear selected, always prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards by depressing the brake pedal or applying the electronic parking brake. Do not release the brake pedal until you want to move off.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the wrong gear position is selected, control of the vehicle may be lost, resulting in an accident and serious injury.**

- **Never accelerate when selecting a gear position.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and the vehicle skidding, especially on slippery roads. This could cause loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injury.**

- **Only accelerate quickly if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and if your vehicle's acceleration behaviour and driving style do not endanger other road users.**
- **Always adapt the driving style to traffic conditions.**
- **When the TCS is disconnected, the drive wheels may skid, especially if the road is wet, slippery or dirty. This may mean that the vehicle can't be steered or controlled.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle is left unattended with the drive system connected, accidents and serious injuries can occur.**

- **Never leave the vehicle unattended with the drive system connected.**
- **Always switch off the ignition. When doing so, the electronic parking brake is applied automatically.**
- **When parking or leaving the vehicle, always check that the electronic parking brake is applied.**
- **When leaving the vehicle, always make sure that all the doors, windows, rear lid and bonnet are fully closed and locked.**
- **When the drive system is switched on and gear position D/B or R is selected, the vehicle should be stopped by depressing the brake pedal.**
- **Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.**

**NOTICE**

- **When stopping uphill while a gear is selected, do not depress the accelerator to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards. Press the brake pedal to avoid unnecessarily overloading the electric drive system.**
- **Never allow the vehicle to move with the neutral position N selected, especially when the drive system is switched off.**

## Troubleshooting

**Electric drive system overheated**

The warning lamp lights up red.

The electric drive system has overheated. A warning in this regard is displayed in the Digital Cockpit.

- **Stop the vehicle immediately!**
- Park the vehicle outdoors as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Disconnect the drive system.
- Do not top up coolant!
- Seek specialist assistance.

**and (ABS) braking energy cannot be recuperated**

The control lamps light up yellow.

There is a failure in the brake energy recuperation. Range may be limited.

- Contact a specialised workshop.

**NOTICE**

**The electric drive system may be damaged if the vehicle is moved while the ignition and electric drive system switched off, or with the 12-volt battery discharged for a long period of time, or if driven at high speed. The vehicle can only be towed if certain conditions are met** >>> page 306.

**NOTICE**

**The system's cooling capacity is reduced if an accessory restricts the air inlet or could damage any cooling-system component. Seek specialist assistance.**

# Steering

## Information relating to different vehicle processes.

To make the vehicle more difficult to steal, always lock the steering before leaving it.

### Steering

On vehicles with electromechanical steering, the power steering automatically adjusts according to the driving speed, the steering wheel torque and the orientation of the wheels. The electromechanical steering only works with the drive system connected.

If the power steering does not work or does not work properly, considerably more force than usual will have to be applied to move the steering wheel.

### Electronic steering column lock

The steering column locks electronically:

- Stop the vehicle and apply the electronic parking brake >>> page 209.
- If the ignition is switched on, the ignition/start button is pressed **or**
- Open the driver's door and get out of the vehicle; this switches the ignition off. The steering column is locked.

### Steering assist

This assists the driver in critical situations. It recommends turning the steering wheel to perform a corrective manoeuvre (counter-steering), turning slightly to avoid skidding >>> ⚠.

**WARNING**

**If the power steering does not work, much more force is required to turn the steering wheel, which can make it difficult to control the vehicle.**

- **The power steering only works with the drive system connected.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Along with the ESC, steering assist helps the driver to control the vehicle's steering in some critical driving situations. However, the driver is ultimately responsible for steering the vehicle at all times. Power-assisted steering does not remove this responsibility.**

## Troubleshooting

**Steering fault**

The warning lamp lights up or flashes red.

There is a fault in the electromechanical steering or the electronic steering column lock.

- **Stop driving!** Seek specialist assistance.
- If the warning lamp **lights up** red, the steering may be stiff because the power steering is not working.
- If the warning lamp **flashes** red, the steering column cannot be unlocked.
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed on its own wheels.

**Steering fault**

The control lamp lights up or flashes yellow.

The steering is stiffer or reacts more sensitively than usual.

The control lamp **lights up and remains lit**:

- Switch the drive system back on and drive slowly for a short distance.
- Contact a specialist workshop if the control lamp remains on.

The control lamp **flashes**:

- Turn the steering wheel slightly from one side to the other.
- Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
- Consider the warnings shown on the instrument cluster display.
- If the control lamp continues flashing after the ignition has been switched on, do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.

# Drive Profiles

## Introduction

The driver can use the drive profiles to adapt various features of the vehicle's systems to the current driving situation, the desired driving comfort and an economical driving style. Some of the systems that can be adapted are the suspension, steering, drive system and air conditioning.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various drive profiles can be selected. The degree of influence of the vehicle's systems on the different drive profiles depends on the vehicle's equipment.

**Vehicles with adaptive suspension (DCC)**

When driving, the adaptive suspension (DCC) continuously adapts the suspension to the terrain and the driving situation in question. When doing so, the DCC also takes into account the vehicle's configuration in the selected drive profile.

## Selecting a drive profile

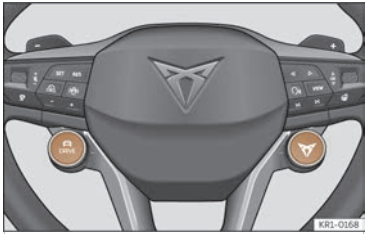



**Fig. 110** Multifunction steering wheel: DRIVE and CUPRA buttons for selecting and changing the drive profile.

The drive profile can be selected when the ignition is switched on and the vehicle is stationary or moving >>> ⚠.

### Selecting a drive profile

- Access the main **Drive Profile** menu. The available profiles will be displayed.
- **OR:** With the Infotainment System turned off, pressing on the **Drive Profile** icon, will display the available drive profiles.
- **OR:** Press the [1] button on the multifunction steering wheel >>> **Fig. 110** to activate the **Cupra** drive profile.
- **OR:** Repeatedly press the [1] button on the multifunction steering wheel >>> **Fig. 110** to switch between drive profiles.

### Displaying the drive profile information

- To display more information on the selected drive profile, press **Information** in the infotainment system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Adjusting the drive profile while driving can distract attention from traffic and cause accidents.**

- **Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.**

### Kick-down

Depending on the version, the kick-down device allows maximum acceleration with the gear selector in the **D/B** position in any drive profile.

To use it, fully depress the accelerator pedal through the point of resistance. This uses the vehicle's maximum acceleration.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Please note that if the road surface is slippery or wet, the kick-down feature could cause the driving wheels to spin, which could result in skidding.**

## Launch Control

Launch Control provides a different driving experience and a more sporty feel when starting from a standstill.

This function is not available for all CUPRA vehicles; it is only available on some higher power versions.

### Requirements

- The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
- The driving profile must be in CUPRA mode.
- The selector lever must be in position **D** or **B**.
- To activate this function, a minimum battery level is required and the drive system must be free of faults.
- This function is not available when towing or on steep gradients.

### Activate Launch Control

1. Firmly press the brake pedal with your left foot and keep it pressed.
2. While keeping the brake pedal pressed, simultaneously press the accelerator fully with your right foot (Kick-down function). This is the preparation phase for Launch Control. It is maintained for up to 10 seconds if the brake pedal is not released. A bar graph countdown is shown.

   The instrument cluster will show a pop-up to indicate that the function is active, while the vehicle will vibrate and the seat belt will be tensioned more firmly.

   Specific sounds will also follow the description above, together with flashing or movement of the interior lights.
3. After you quickly release the brake pedal while keeping the accelerator fully pressed, the dynamic launch phase begins.

   In the launch phase, the instrument display, sounds and lights change to give the driver a different driving experience.

[1] Depending on the version.

After sustained acceleration and once the vehicle reaches a certain speed, Launch Control switches off automatically and settings return to the CUPRA mode of the driving profile.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Only use the Launch Control program when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your manner of driving and accelerating the vehicle does not inconvenience or endanger other road users. When using ESC Sport or ESC OFF (where available), the driven wheels may start to spin and the vehicle may lose grip, especially on slippery roads. Accident hazard!**

**NOTICE**

**Accelerating with the Launch Control programme places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear. Launch Control is not available on steep gradients and is not recommended when the vehicle is fully loaded.**

**Note**

- **With a low battery state of charge, Launch Control activation will not be available.**
- **After several accelerations with Launch Control, some vehicle components may be hot. Functionality remains available, but performance may be limited to prevent damage. Full performance will be available again after a cooling period.**

## Characteristics of drive profiles

| Drive profile | Characteristics |
|---|---|
| **Range** | Sets the vehicle to a low consumption status, favouring an energy saving driving style by limiting the maximum speed and power. |
| **Comfort** | It permits more relaxed and comfortable driving, for example on long motorway journeys. The performance is superior to **Range**[a] mode. |
| **Performance** | It gives the vehicle an overall dynamic behaviour, allowing for sportier driving. |
| **CUPRA**[b] | It gives the vehicle a distinctly sporty character to get every last bit of performance out of it.<br>Selecting the CUPRA drive profile activates the **eBoost** function, which allows more power to be delivered when the accelerator pedal is depressed. |
| **Individual** | Allows personalisation of the configuration. The functions that can be set depend on the vehicle equipment. |

[a] On models fitted with dynamic chassis control (DCC) it permits a gentle adjustment of the drive train.
[b] Depending on the version.

**Note**

**When you switch the ignition off and on again, the Comfort drive profile is activated by default.**

## Troubleshooting

**Fault in the dynamic chassis control (DCC)**

The control lamp lights up in yellow. The instrument cluster display may display the message **Fault: Suspension.**

- Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.

**The drive profiles or vehicle systems do not behave as expected**

- Please note that different vehicle systems are configured according to the selected drive profile.

# Braking system

## Information about the brakes

During the first 200 to 300 km, **new brake pads** do not provide maximum braking power and still have to "settle" ››› ⚠. **When running in the brake pads, the emergency braking distance is longer** than after they have been run in. During the run-in, avoid sharp braking and situations that place a lot of demand on the brakes, e.g. driving too close to another vehicle.

**Brake pad wear** depends to a large extent on the conditions in which the vehicle is used, and driving style. If the vehicle is frequently used in city traffic and for short distances, or for sporty driving, brake pad thickness should be checked regularly at a specialist workshop.

Driving with **wet brakes**, e.g. after driving through water, in heavy rain or after washing the vehicle, braking performance may be affected by wet brake discs, or even frozen discs in winter. The driver should be ready to brake harder.

If **the brake discs and pads have a layer of salt on them**, the braking performance is reduced and the braking distance increases. When driving on salted roads without braking for some time, the layer of salt should be removed by carefully applying the brakes a few times ››› ⚠. Braking intensity should be higher than the deceleration achieved by brake energy recuperation, in order to clean off the layer of salt with the brake pad friction.

**Corrosion** on the brake discs and **dirt** on the brake pads increase if the vehicle is left unused for a long time, or if it is not driven for many kilometres or the brakes are used insufficiently. If, due to the energy recuperation effect, the brakes are not used, or are rarely used, or if there is corrosion, it is advisable to clean the discs and pads by braking hard several times when driving at high speeds. When doing so, select gear **N**, so that energy recuperation is not used when braking. Make sure that you do not endanger any other vehicles or road users ››› ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Driving with worn brake pads or a defective brake system can lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

- **If you suspect that the brake pads are worn or that the brake system is faulty, have the brake pads checked immediately by a specialist workshop and replaced if they are worn.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The braking performance of new brake pads is not optimal.**

- **During the first 300 km, new brake pads do not provide maximum braking power and still have to "settle". This can be counteracted by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.**
- **When brake pads are new, drive with extra care to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injury or loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **Only perform hard braking to clean the brake system when permitted by the traffic situation. Do not endanger the occupants of other vehicles. Accident hazard!**
- **When running in new brake pads, do not drive too close to other vehicles or cause situations that would require the brakes to be applied heavily.**

**⚠ WARNING**

When the brakes overheat, their braking performance drops and the braking distance increases.

- When driving downhill, particular demand is placed on the brakes and they heat up very quickly.
- When on a long downhill, reduce speed and select a higher braking energy recuperation level. This makes use of the electric motor braking effect and the brakes are not required as much.
- If you wish to retrofit a front spoiler, integral trim or other accessories, ensure that the air inlet around the brakes is not reduced, as otherwise the brake system could overheat. Please also note the information on brake fluid ››› page 320.

**⚠ WARNING**

Wet, frozen or salt-covered brakes take longer to brake and increases the braking distance.

- Test the brakes carefully.
- Always dry the brakes and free them from ice and salt by braking repeatedly, if permitted by visibility, weather, road surface and traffic conditions.

**⚠ WARNING**

When braking manoeuvres are started automatically, the brake pedal may move automatically in the application direction. Do not put your foot under the brake pedal. Risk of injury!

**Note**

Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when it is not necessary to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in increased brake travel and wear. Please consider the important notes on brake fluid ››› page 320.

**Note**

- Regularly check the thickness of the front brake pads visually through the holes in the rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, the wheels should be removed for a more thorough inspection. To do so, CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.
- When inspecting the front brake pads, the rear axle drum brake shoes should also be checked. The check is made through a hole provided for this purpose in the rear of the drum. A plug has to be removed for this purpose. To do so, CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

### Troubleshooting

**Defect in the brake system**

The warning lamp lights up red. A message may also be displayed.

**Stop driving!**

- Inform a specialist workshop and request a brake system inspection.

**Brake pad wear indicator**

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The front brake pads are worn.

- Contact a specialised workshop immediately.
- Get **all** the brake pads inspected and replace if necessary.

## Brake assist systems

### Information relating to brake assist systems

Brake assist systems can help the driver in critical driving or braking situations. The driver is responsible for driving safely ››› ⚠.

When the brake assist systems are regulating the brakes, the brake pedal may move or make noises. Even so, continue to brake with the necessary force and control the trajectory of the vehicle if necessary.

Depending on the equipment, the ESC and TCS settings can be changed in the vehicle.

- The ESC, ABS and TCS can only operate correctly if the four wheels are fitted with the stipulated tyres ››› ⚠.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESC, TCS and EDS also cease to function.

### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

The ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve stability in certain driving situations ››› ⚠.

### Traction control (TCS)

The TCS reduces the driving force on skidding wheels and adapts this force to suit the road surface conditions. The TCS facilitates starting, acceleration and hill climbing ››› ⚠.

### Electronic brake pressure distribution (EBV)

Electronic brake force distribution (EBV) regulates the braking force between the front and rear axles. Excessive braking of the rear axle is avoided and the vehicle remains stable during the braking operation.

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS),

The ABS can prevent the wheels from locking up under braking until shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop, and helps the driver maintain control of the steering and the vehicle ››› ⚠.

### Brake assist systems (BAS)

Brake assist systems (BAS) can help to reduce the braking distance. The brake assist system increases the pressure exerted by the driver when the brake pedal is depressed quickly in an emergency.

### Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDS automatically brakes skidding wheels and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheels.

### Multi-collision brake

The multi-collision brake automatically triggers braking if the airbag control unit detects a collision in the event of an accident.

Automatic braking requirements:

- The driver is not pressing the accelerator pedal.

### Electromechanical brake servo (eBKV)

With the ignition switched on, the electromechanical brake servo (eBKV) supplements the force exerted by the foot by increasing the pressure that the driver exerts on the brake pedal ››› ⚠. When a driver assistance system applies the brakes, e.g. ACC when regulating the speed, or during emergency braking, the brake pedal may move automatically.

After disconnecting the ignition, the assistance of the brake servo is progressively reduced. If you continue to hold the vehicle in place with the brake pedal, messages are displayed on the instrument cluster display. In this case, the brake servo function is restricted.

Once stopped, immobilise the vehicle to prevent it from moving ››› page 208.

### Brake energy recuperation

Hydraulic braking by the driver is combined with the electric motor's drag torque to recuperate energy during braking.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Smart brake assist technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and only works within the limits of the systems. Driving at high speed on icy, slippery or wet road surfaces can cause a loss of control of the vehicle and serious injury to the driver and passengers.**

- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Never take any risk that compromises safety.**

- Brake assist systems cannot prevent an accident if you are driving too close to other vehicles.
- Always use suitable tyres. Driving stability depends on tyre grip.
- Always leave the area under the pedals free so that the brake pedal can move unhindered.

**⚠ WARNING**

The efficiency of the ESC can be significantly reduced if components or systems that affect the driving dynamics are not properly maintained or are not working properly. This can particularly occur if changes are made to the suspension or unauthorised rim/tyre combinations are used.

- Ensure that vehicle conversions and modifications are only made by specialised workshops.
- Always use suitable tyres. Driving stability depends on tyre grip.

**⚠ WARNING**

When driving without a brake servo or with restricted brake servo functions, the braking distance can increase considerably and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake servo is not working, the brake pedal has to be pressed harder, as the braking distance increases due to the lack of assistance from the servo brake.
- Always leave the area under the pedals free so that the brake pedal can move unhindered.

## Connecting and disconnecting the ESC and TCS

The ESC is switched on automatically when the engine is started, and only works when the engine is running and includes the ABS, EDS and TCS systems.

### Disconnecting and connecting the ESC in "Sport" mode

The ESC in "Sport" mode can be turned on or off in the infotainment system: press the function button **Vehicle > Exterior > Brakes > ESC Menu** >>> page 34.

When "Sport" mode is connected, the interventions of the ESC to stabilise the vehicle, and the traction control (TCS) interventions are limited. In addition, the control lamp lights up on the instrument cluster.

### Disconnecting and connecting the ESC

Depending on the version, ESC can be switched off/on via the infotainment system: press **Vehicle > Exterior > Brakes > ESC menu** >>> page 34.

When ESC is switched off, the traction control (TCS) is still activated, but its intervention is limited. In addition, the control lamp lights up on the instrument cluster.

**⚠ WARNING**

The ESC Sport mode should only be switched on if the traffic conditions and your driving ability allow you to do so safely.

- With ESC in Sport mode, the stabilising function will be limited for sportier driving. There is a risk of skidding and losing control of the vehicle.
- If ESC is deactivated, the vehicle stabilisation function is not available.

**⚠ WARNING**

For safety reasons, ESC can only be switched off when the vehicle is stationary or moving at a speed of less than 10 km/h (6 mph).

**Note**

If the "Sport" or "ESC OFF" modes are selected, the cruise control disconnects.

**Note**

**During driving in B mode, "ESC OFF" cannot be selected. This restriction ensures correct stability control operation under high recuperation conditions. When the ESC deactivation menu is unavailable, the option appears greyed out, indicating it cannot be selected at that time.**

## Troubleshooting

### The electromechanical brake servo is not working

**Stop driving**

The warning lamp lights up red.

A message is displayed as appropriate. Depress the brake pedal hard because the braking distance will increase due to the lack of brake assist from the brake servo.

- You should obtain professional assistance immediately.

### There is a fault in the electromechanical brake servo

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

A message is displayed for a few seconds.

Depressing the brake pedal may cause vibrations. The brake pedal has to be pressed harder because the braking distance increases due to the reduced brake servo assistance.

- Contact a specialised workshop.

### The ABS does not work properly or does not work at all

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

- Contact a specialised workshop. The vehicle's brakes still work without the ABS.

### The ESC or TCS is regulating

The control lamp flashes yellow.

### ESC fault

The control lamp lights up in yellow. The ESC has been switched off.

There is a fault or defect.

- Turn off the ignition and turn it on again.
- If possible, drive for a short distance at 15-20 km/h (9-12 mph).
- If the control lamp is still on, go to a specialised workshop.

### The brake assist systems make noises

When the described brake assist systems intervene, you may hear noises.

**WARNING**

- **When the ignition is switched on, the status of the brake system and the brake assist functions is automatically checked. The control lamps on the instrument cluster light up briefly and then go out. Any indicator lamp that remains on indicates a fault. Seek qualified technical assistance immediately.**
- **If the brake system warning light comes on together with the control lamp, the ABS regulation function may not work and the rear wheels may lock relatively quickly when braking. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle! If possible, slow down and drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist workshop to have the brake system inspected. During this journey, avoid heavy braking and any sudden manoeuvres.**
- **If the indicator lamp does not go out, or comes on while driving, it means that the ABS function cannot work properly, is not available and will not work during braking. Go to a specialised workshop as soon as possible.**

# Assistant systems

## General notes

### Safety advice

**⚠ WARNING**

- Responsibility for driving rests with the driver at all times. The drive assist systems are not a replacement for driver attention. Focus all your attention on driving and be prepared to intervene at all times.
- Use the drive assist systems only when conditions allow. The driving style must always be suitable for the weather, visibility, road and traffic conditions.
- In order for drive assist systems to react correctly, sensors and cameras must operate without limitations. Please read the notes on sensors and cameras in this chapter.

**Note**

- Keep in mind the specific rules of each country, especially when it comes to driving, formation of an emergency corridor, braking distance, speed, parking position, wheel position, etc. The driver is solely responsible for always complying with the specific regulations of each country.
- The area in front of and around the radar sensor should not be covered with adhesives, additional headlights or similar items, as this could have a negative impact on the operation of the assistants. If the vehicle is not properly repaired or structural modifications are made to it, the operation of the assistants may be affected.
- The repair and adjustment of sensors and cameras requires special knowledge and tools. This is why CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT network dealer.

### System limits

**⚠ WARNING**

- Drive assist systems can not overcome the laws of physics. Depending on the circumstances, a collision may not be avoidable.
- Warnings, notices and control lamps may not be displayed on time, or may be displayed incorrectly, e.g. if a vehicle approaches too quickly.
- Corrective interventions by drive assist systems (e.g. interventions in the steering or brakes) may be insufficient or may never occur, depending on the circumstances. As a driver, you must be prepared to act at all times.

**Note**

- Due to the system's detection limits in the surroundings, the systems may not give warnings or intervene on time, or they might do so even if it is not desired. In addition, the auxiliary systems may incorrectly interpret a manoeuvre and, as a result, warn the driver in an unexpected manner.

### Button for the assist systems

**Fig. 111** Left side of the multifunction steering wheel: button for driver assistance systems (depending on the version).

The button for the driver assistance systems is located on the multifunction steering wheel. This button can be used to switch the driver assistance systems in the **Assistants** menu on and off.

- Press the button to open the **Assistants** menu.
- Select the relevant driver assist system. A tick indicates that the driver assist system is selected.
- Next, confirm the selection by pressing the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The assist systems can also be switched on and off in the infotainment system, in the vehicle settings menu ››› page 34.

# Drive assist sensors and cameras

## Front radar

**Fig. 113** Detection area.

The vehicle may be fitted with radar sensors on the front bumper ››› Fig. 112.

The front radar detects any objects in its detection zone ››› Fig. 113 and provides support for the following functions:

- Front Assist ››› page 192.
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ››› page 184.

The radar can have a range of up to 160 m (520 ft) depending on road and weather conditions.

Side radars ››› Fig. 112 detect objects in their detection zone in order to prevent the vehicle from colliding with crossing vehicles when entering an intersection or junction. These radars provide support to the:

- Junction assist function ››› page 194.

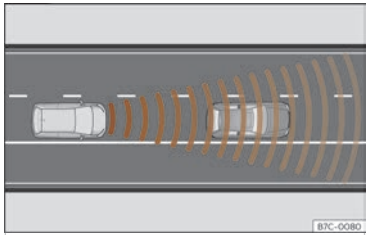



**Fig. 112** On the front bumper: front and side radar sensors.

### Automatic deactivation of supported functions

The front sensors deactivate automatically when, among other reasons, it is detected that they are permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice on top of the sensor.

If the sensor is deactivated, the instrument cluster will temporarily display the message **"Driver assist now limited. Front sensors without visibility"** accompanied by an audible signal.

Due to the front sensor systems not being able to see, each of the ACC and Front Assist functions will be shown as permanently disabled.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The visibility of the radar sensors can be impaired by dirt or environmental influences, such as rain, fog, snow, mud, dust, insects, etc.**
- **Clean the sensor area on the bumper as indicated in ››› page 347, *Cleaning the exterior*. When the radar sensor starts correctly detecting again, the message disappears from the screen and the functions become available again.**

**NOTICE**

- **If the radar sensors are dirty or poorly adjusted, the Front Assist or Junction assist system may give unnecessary warnings and apply the brakes inappropriately.**
- **The operation of the radar sensors can be affected by strong reflections of the emitted signal. This may occur, for example, in an enclosed car park or due to the presence of metallic objects (e.g. guard rails or sheets used in road works).**
- **The sensor may not be adjusted correctly if it receives an impact. This may compromise the system's efficacy or disconnect it. If you have the feeling that the radar sensor is damaged or adjusted incorrectly, switch off the Front Assist, ACC and Junction assist functions to avoid any damage. If this occurs have it adjusted.**
- **The rear bumper should only be painted with paint authorised by CUPRA. Junction assist functions may be limited or work incorrectly if other paints are used.**

## Interior camera

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with a camera on the interior rear view mirror. This camera detects the driver and his/her driving behaviour to provide support to the:

- Attention monitor ››› page 24.

**NOTICE**

**Take the following points into consideration to ensure the camera's functionality is not affected:**

- **Do not cover the field of vision of the camera.**
- **Adjust the mirror correctly.**

## Front camera

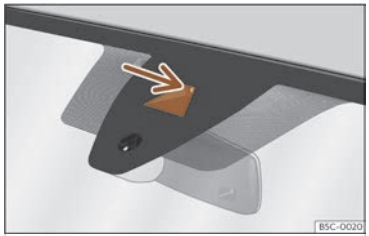



**Fig. 114** On the windscreen: field of vision of the Lane Assist system camera.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be fitted with a front camera on the front windscreen. This camera detects lane boundaries (lines) to provide support for the following functions:

- Lane Assist ››› page 196.
- Travel Assist ››› page 198.
- Emergency assist ››› page 203.

### Automatic deactivation of supported functions

The front camera automatically switches off when, among other things, it detects that it is permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice.

If the camera is deactivated, the instrument cluster will temporarily display the message **"Driver assist now limited. Front sensors without visibility"** accompanied by an audible signal.

Due to the front sensor systems not being able to see, each of the Lane Assist, Travel Assist and Road Sign Recognition functions will be shown as permanently disabled.

**NOTICE**

**To avoid affecting the operation of the systems, take the following points into consideration:**

- **Clean the field of vision of the camera regularly and make sure it is free of snow and ice.**
- **Do not cover the field of vision of the camera.**
- **Check that the windscreen is not damaged in the area of the camera's field of vision.**

## Rear radar

**Fig. 115** Rear view of the vehicle: radar sensor areas.

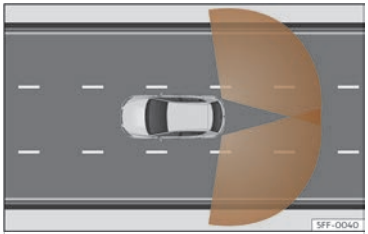



**Fig. 116** Sensor detection zones.

The rear radar sensors are located on the left and right of the bumper and are not visible from the outside ››› **Fig. 115**. The sensors monitor both the blind spot and traffic behind the vehicle ››› **Fig. 116**.

They support the following functions:

- Side Assist ››› **page 205**.
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert ››› **page 234**.
- Exit Warning ››› **page 235**.

### Automatic deactivation of supported functions

The rear radar sensors deactivate automatically when, among other reasons, one of the sensors is detected to be permanently covered. This may be the case if, for example, there is a layer of snow or ice in front of one of the sensors.

The relevant text message will appear in the instrument cluster display.

### Control lamps

Side Assist function not available

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function not available.

Exit Warning not available.

**NOTICE**

- **The radar sensors on the rear bumper may be damaged or shifted in the event of a collision, for example, when entering or exiting a parking space. This may result in the system disconnecting itself, or at least potential diminished functionality.**
- **In order to ensure that the radar sensors work properly, keep the rear bumper free of snow and ice and do not cover it.**
- **The rear bumper should only be painted with paint authorised by CUPRA. The lane departure warning's functions may be limited or work incorrectly if other paints are used.**
- **The visibility of radar sensors may be affected due to leaves, snow, dense haze or dirt, among others. Clean the area in front of the sensors.**
- **Never use auto lane changing or the rear cross traffic alert if the radar sensors are dirty.**
- **Radar operation may also be affected if objects such as bicycle racks or luggage racks interfere with the visibility of the radars.**

## Ultrasound sensors

The bumpers are fitted with ultrasound sensors to perform the following functions:

- Automatic parking system ››› **page 216**
- Park assist plus ››› **page 213**.

**NOTICE**

- **Damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arch and vehicle underbody can modify the orientation of the sensors. This can affect the park assist function. Have the function checked by a specialised workshop.**
- **A number plate or number plate holder with dimensions that exceed the space for the number plate, or a curved or deformed number plate can cause false detections or a loss of sensor visibility.**

**Note**

- **In order to guarantee good operation, keep the sensors clean, free of snow and ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects.**
- **If you use high-pressure or steam equipment for cleaning, do not apply it directly, unless you do so very briefly, and always keep a distance of more than 10 cm away.**
- **Fitting certain accessories to the front of the vehicle, such as a plate holder with advertising, may interfere with the operation of the Park Assist.**

## Area View system

**Fig. 117** On the rear bumper: location of the rear assist camera.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, it can be fitted with 1 or 4 cameras that provide support to the following functions:

- Top View Camera ››› page 232.
- Rear View Camera ››› page 230.

**WARNING**

**Fitting a number plate frame may interfere with the view shown on the screen, as it may reduce the camera's field of vision.**

**NOTICE**

- **In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the cameras clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects. The camera can be cleaned by operating the wiper.**
- **Never use abrasive cleaning products to clean the camera lens.**
- **Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lens. Doing so could damage the camera.**

# Cruise control system

## Introduction

The cruise control system (GRA) helps maintain a constant speed set by you.

### Speed range

The cruise control system is available when driving in forward gear at a speed of over approx. 20 km/h (15 mph).

### Temporarily switching off the cruise control

The saved speed can be exceeded at any time, e.g. for overtaking. The cruise control is suspended during acceleration and is then resumed with the saved speed.

### Status display

When the cruise control system is selected, the instrument cluster display shows the saved speed and the system status:

Lights up grey.
Cruise control is selected but control is not active.

Lights up green.
Cruise control is selected and control is active.

If there is no speed saved, the instrument cluster display shows --- instead of the speed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If it is impossible to drive with sufficient braking distance and at a constant speed, using the cruise control system may cause accidents and serious injuries may occur.**

- **Do not use Travel Assist when visibility is bad, on steep roads, on windy roads or in slippery conditions (such as snow, ice, rain or loose gravel), or on flooded roads.**
- **Only use the cruise control system on paved roads with a firm surface.**
- **Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **After use, always switch off the speed limiter to prevent the speed being regulated against your wishes.**
- **It is dangerous to use a set speed which is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.**

## Operating the cruise control

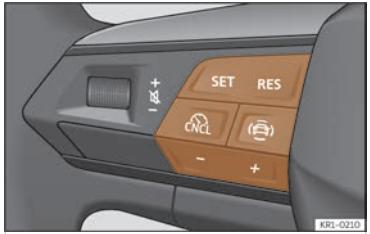



**Fig. 118** On the multifunction steering wheel: cruise control operation buttons.

### Connecting

- Press the button.

Then select "**Cruise control system**" from the driving assistants menu.

Regulation has not yet taken place.

### Start regulation

- While driving, press the button SET.

The cruise control system saves and regulates the current speed.

### Adjusting the speed

While the GRA is set, the stored speed can be adjusted:

| | |
|---|---|
| RES | + 1 km/h (1 mph) |
| SET | - 1 km/h (1 mph) |
| + | + 10 km/h (5 mph) |
| – | - 10 km/h (5 mph) |

### Interrupting regulation

- Briefly press the button or press the brake pedal.

The speed is saved.

### Reinstating the cruise control

- Press the RES button.

The cruise control system resumes the saved speed and regulates it.

## Troubleshooting

### Fault in the speed regulator

The control lamp switches on yellow.

Abnormal operation. Switch off the cruise control system and take the vehicle to a specialist workshop.

**The adjustment is interrupted unexpectedly**

- The vehicle has exceeded the saved speed for a long time.
- No forward gear has been selected.
- A brake assistance system, e.g. TCS or ESC, has intervened.
- Front Assist has braked the vehicle.
- If the fault continues, disconnect the Emergency Assist and consult a specialised workshop.

# Speed limiter

## Introduction

The speed limiter helps the driver not to exceed a set speed.

### Speed range

The speed limiter helps avoid exceeding a programmed speed, from 30 km/h (20 mph) approx. and faster.

### Driving with the speed limiter

The speed limiter can be overridden at any time by fully depressing the accelerator pedal and, depending on equipment, beyond the resistance point. As soon as the saved speed is exceeded, the green indicator light flashes and an audible warning signal may sound. The speed is saved.

The limiter is reactivated automatically after returning to lower than the set speed.

### Status display

When the speed limiter is selected, the instrument cluster display shows the saved speed and the system status:

**Lights up grey**
The speed limiter is selected but adjustment is not active.

**Lights up green**
The speed limiter is selected and control is active.

**⚠ WARNING**

**After use, always switch off the speed limiter to prevent the speed being regulated against your wishes.**

- **The speed limiter does not relieve the driver of their responsibility to drive at the appropriate speed. Do not drive at high speed if not necessary.**
- **Using the speed limiter under adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause serious accidents, e.g. aquaplaning, snow, ice, leaves, etc. Only use the speed limiter when the status of the road and the weather conditions allow it.**

## Operating the speed limiter

**Fig. 119** On the multifunction steering wheel: buttons to control the speed limiter.

### Connecting

- Press the button.
- Then tick "**Speed limiter**" in the driver assist menu by scrolling the right steering wheel wheel and press **OK** on the multifunction steering wheel.

Regulation has not yet taken place.

### Start regulation

- While driving, press the button **SET**.

The current speed is saved as a limit speed.

### Adjusting the speed

The programmed speed can be set:

**RES** + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

\+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

**Interrupting regulation**

- Press the button.

The speed is saved.

**Reinstating the cruise control**

- Press the RES button.

The limiter will re-activate as soon as the vehicle is moving at a speed lower than the saved one.

## Troubleshooting

**LIM The speed limiter is not available**

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

- Malfunctions: Switch off the speed limiter and go to a specialist workshop.

**Regulation is interrupted unexpectedly**

- You have deactivated Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or the vehicle's traction control (TCS).
- The brakes have overheated. Wait for the brakes to cool down and check the operation again.
- If the fault continues, consult a specialised workshop.

For safety reasons, the speed limiter only stops regulating completely when the driver briefly releases the accelerator or manually deselects the system.

# Speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment

## Introduction

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment automatically adapts a maximum speed that you have saved to the detected speed limits.

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is an additional function of the speed limiter and uses the infotainment system's dynamic road sign display >>> page 26 and navigation data.

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is available depending on the equipment, but not in all countries.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The smart technology of the speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and only works within the limits of the system. Never allow the greater convenience offered by this function to induce you to take any risk that compromises safety. Serious accidents and injuries can occur if the speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is used carelessly or unintentionally. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Always adapt your speed to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Always pay attention to traffic and always keep the vehicle's surroundings in mind.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If the road sign recognition system is not working properly or the navigation data is not updated, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation. In addition, the speed adjusted by the system may not suit your driving style.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If you drive without any active guided route, if you leave the route calculated by the navigation system or if the position of the vehicle cannot be determined correctly because the GPS does not provide accurate data, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation.**

- **Always use up to date navigation data.**
- **Always take into account the speed limit. In the case of speed limits that are not included in the navigation data, the speed limit may be exceeded.**

**Note**

**Please also note the information of relevance to safety on the speed limiter** >>> page 180.

## Limitations of proactive speed adjustment

In addition to the limitations of the dynamic road sign display system >>> page 26, the speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment has the following limitations inherent to the system:

- The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment only recognises road signs showing a speed limit.
- Road signs that indirectly show a speed restriction, e.g. signs at the entrance to towns, are only recognised on the basis of navigation data.
- If a warning is given of a speed restriction based on navigation data, without it being detected by the dynamic road sign display, the indicated speed will be adjusted to the most recently saved speed.
- The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment is not available for speed restrictions lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph) that are detected. In this case, a relevant message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.
- The predictive speed limiter will stop limiting speed at motorway entries or exits so you can take control according to road and traffic needs.

## Activate proactive speed adjustment

The speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment can be activated in the infotainment system's assistants menu.

## Driving with proactive speed adjustment

- Activate the traction control system in the "Speed" menu >>> page 34.
- Switch on the speed limiter and start the control >>> page 180.
- When the system recognises a new speed limit, a warning is displayed on the instrument cluster. This speed will be stored in the speed limiter.

km/h The system has recognised a new speed limit and uses it for regulation.

**Indication of regulation in progress**

Adjustment due to a roundabout.

Adjustment due to a junction.

Adjustment due to a road layout.

**Interrupting speed adjustment**

- Press the multifunction steering wheel button **RES** or release and press the accelerator twice. The last saved speed is resumed.
- Press the **SET** button on the multifunction steering wheel. The current speed is taken.
- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel. The system switches to a passive state.

**Adjust the displayed speed using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel**

**RES** + 1 km/h (1 mph)

**SET** - 1 km/h (1 mph)

**+** + 10 km/h (5 mph)

**–** - 10 km/h (5 mph)

If you adjust the indicated speed excessively, the proactive speed adjustment is interrupted.

**Note**

- **When a speed restriction is recognised, the proactive speed adjustment also adapts the saved speed, even if the speed limiter is not active.**
- **If the speed of travel exceeds the speed limit detected by the road signal detection system, a relevant warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display.**
- **When merging onto a motorway or dual carriageway, the recommended speed is automatically saved as the desired speed.**

## Troubleshooting

**A message is displayed indicating that proactive speed adjustment is not currently available or not offered in your country.**

- If this message is displayed for a longer period of time and proactive speed adjustment is available in your country, please contact a specialist workshop.

**Note**

**Depending on the anomaly in question, additional information may be displayed in Vehicle status** >>> page 35.

# Eco Assist

**Fig. 120** Eco Assist indication (schematic representation).

Eco Assist helps you to drive with anticipation and low energy consumption by means of situation-dependent instructions superimposed on the digital instrument cluster and/or the headup display (HUD)

When you approach places such as a junction, a roundabout or a section of road with a speed limit, the symbol is displayed along with an event on the digital instrument cluster >>> **Fig. 120**.

As soon as you follow the indication and take your foot off the accelerator, the vehicle adapts, based on the selected drive profile and distance to the event, brake energy recuperation and speed.

Eco Assist uses the trip data from the infotainment system and the sensors of certain driver assistance systems. If no destination guidance is active, the most likely route is used.

Pressing the accelerator can cancel the intervention of the assistance at any time.

Eco Assist can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system, in the assistance system settings >>> page 34.

Eco Assist is temporarily deactivated if:

- The **Performance** or **CUPRA** drive profile is used.
- Driving with adaptive cruise control (ACC).

When these conditions no longer exist, the assistance is reactivated if it is switched on in the assistance system settings.

Eco Assist is available depending on equipment and not in all countries.

### Symbols

Take your foot off the accelerator

Approaching a junction on the left

Approaching a junction on the right

Approaching a motorway slip road or exit

Approaching a roundabout

Approaching a junction

Approaching a left curve

Approaching a right curve

Approaching a speed limit, example.

Approaching a traffic light.

Approaching a Stop sign.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The system uses brake energy recuperation to reduce speed and does not apply the vehicle's brakes.**

- **Always be prepared to brake if deceleration is not sufficient.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Road signs on the road and traffic regulations have priority over eco-driving notes.**

**Note**

- **The appearance of the symbols may vary slightly depending on the equipment and model. System updates may modify or expand the symbols.**
- **When the system is active, Eco Assist may also increase recuperation without displaying any indication. This can occur in situations such as when the accelerator pedal is released when a vehicle is driving in front. In this case, energy recuperation is adapted to match the speed of the vehicle in front without any indication being displayed.**

# ACC - Adaptive Cruise Control

## Introduction

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) maintains a constant speed set by the driver. When approaching another vehicle in front, the ACC detects it and adapts the speed automatically, maintaining a distance set by the driver.

### Does my vehicle have ACC?

Your vehicle has ACC if it has a configuration menu in the infotainment system.

### Speed range

You can set a speed between 20 km/h (15 mph) and the maximum speed of the vehicle.

The ACC can bring the vehicle to a standstill if a vehicle in front stops.

### Driving with ACC

You can override the ACC at any time. Braking interrupts the ACC. If you accelerate, regulation is interrupted during acceleration and then resumed.

### Driver intervention prompt

ACC is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. This means that the driver will have to control the speed and distance from other vehicles in certain situations. In this case, the instrument cluster display **will tell you to intervene** by applying the brake, and an audio warning will be played.

### Radar sensors

The ACC uses the front radar technology. Read its maintenance instructions and information about its limitations ››› page 174.

**⚠ WARNING**

The ACC's technology cannot overcome the system's inherent limitations or change the laws of physics. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- Always be prepared to brake or accelerate.
- If you press the accelerator pedal the ACC will stop working. Therefore, it will not brake or request any braking intervention.
- Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use the ACC in poor visibility, or on roads that are steep, with lots of curves or slippery.
- Never use ACC when driving off-road or on unpaved roads.
- The system may not react in time to stationary obstacles (such as a traffic jam queue), particularly at high speeds. React soon enough to avoid a hazardous situation.
- The system may not react to stopped vehicles in the same lane. You must react early enough yourself in this case.
- The system does not react to people, animals or vehicles that are crossing or approaching in the opposite direction.
- If you are driving with a spare wheel fitted, the ACC system could automatically switch off. Switch off the system when starting off.
- Brake immediately if the ACC does not slow down enough.
- Brake immediately when a driver intervention instruction is displayed on the instrument cluster display.
- If the vehicle continues to move involuntarily after a driver intervention prompt, brake the vehicle.
- The brake pedal may move downwards during braking. Be careful not to position your foot under the pedal.

**Note**

If the ACC does not work as described in this chapter, do not use it until it has been checked by a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

## ACC operation

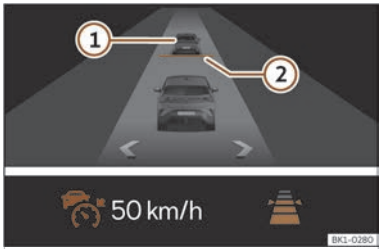



**Fig. 121** On the instrument cluster display: ACC active.

**Fig. 122** On the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the ACC.

>>> **Fig. 121**

(1) Vehicle detected in front. It will light up if the distance to the vehicle is set.

(2) Distance selected.

### Connecting

- Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel >>> Fig. 122.
- Then tick "**ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)**" in the driver-assist menu by scrolling the right steering-wheel wheel and press OK on the multifunction steering wheel.

The ACC does not regulate anything yet (standby).

### Start regulation

Activating the ACC system also automatically activates the ESC and traction control (TCS).

- To start regulation, press the SET button >>> Fig. 122.

The ACC saves the current speed and maintains the set distance. If the current speed is outside the predefined speed range, ACC adjusts the speed to the nearest limit of the range.

Depending on the driving situation, the following control lamps come on:

**Lights up green**
ACC connected, no vehicle detected in front.

**Lights up green**
ACC connected, vehicle detected in front.

When the ACC is in standby, the indicator lamps light up in grey.

### Program the speed

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

### Program the distance setting

The distance can be set to one of five levels, from very short to very long:

- Press the button and then + or – button >>> Fig. 122.
- Alternatively, press button as many times as necessary to set the desired distance.

Keep in mind each country's regulations on minimum braking distances.

### Suspend regulation (standby)

- Briefly press button >>> Fig. 122 or press the brake pedal.

The ACC indicator lamp is grey; the speed and distance are saved.

If the traction control or ESC is switched off, the ACC regulation is automatically interrupted.

### Reinstating the cruise control

- Press the RES button. The ACC regulates to the last speed and distance setting.
- **OR**: Press SET button to regulate to the current speed.

### Exceeding the speed regulated by the ACC

While driving with the ACC switched on, the driver can increase speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. ACC regulation is suspended until you release the accelerator pedal >>> .

### Changing the drive profile

The drive profile selected can affect ACC acceleration and braking behaviour >>> page 166.

**WARNING**

**Before driving off, check that the road is clear. The radar sensor may not detect obstacles that could be on the road. This can lead to an accident and serious injury. Press the brake if necessary.**

**NOTICE**

**If you increase speed using the accelerator pedal, the ACC may not be able to safely adjust the speed or the distance due to the limitations of the system.**

- **Be prepared to react if required by the situation.**

## Special driving situations

**Fig. 123** On the instrument cluster display: ACC active, vehicle detected on the left.

Be aware of the limitations and warnings described at the beginning of this chapter ›››  page 184, *Introduction*.

### Avoid undertaking on the right[1)]

If a vehicle is detected in the left lane that is travelling at a speed slower than that set by the driver, it will brake the vehicle within the comfort limits of the system to avoid passing it on the right ›››  Fig. 123.

You can cancel this regulation by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The function works at speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph). It may not be available in certain countries.

### Overtaking

When the turn signal is switched on for overtaking, the ACC reduces the distance from the vehicle in front to help with the overtaking manoeuvre. The set cruising speed will not be exceeded.

The function works at speeds over 80 km/h (50 mph). It may not be available in certain countries.

### Stop&Go function

The ACC can bring the vehicle to a standstill if the vehicle in front stops.

The ACC remains active and the message **ACC is ready to start** is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds. You can extend or reactivate this warning by pressing the **RES** button or by grabbing the wheel if your vehicle is fitted with Travel Assist. During this time, the vehicle will move off again if the vehicle in front moves forwards.

To move off when the message **ACC is ready to start** is not longer displayed, once the vehicle in front has moved off:

- Press the accelerator pedal.
- **OR**: press the **RES** button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- **OR**: grab the steering wheel again if your vehicle has Travel Assist.

### Stopped vehicles

ACC can react to stationary vehicles provided the stationary vehicle is recognised in time. ACC will comfortably brake to a stop behind the vehicle, within the limits of the system.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the message ACC ready to start is displayed on the instrument cluster display and the vehicle in front moves off, your vehicle will move off automatically. In this case, any obstacles in the road may not be detected. This may cause serious accidents and injuries.**

- **Always check the road before moving off, and apply the vehicle brakes yourself if necessary.**

## ACC system limitations

The limits of the ACC system mean that it is not appropriate in all situations ›››  ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 185.

CUPRA recommends increased caution when using the function in the following cases ›››  ⚠:

- Heavy rain, snow or fog.
- When going through tunnels.
- On stretches of road with roadworks.

[1)] Or on the left, in countries that drive on the left hand side of the road.

- On routes with curves, e.g. on mountain roads.
- On off-road routes.
- In covered car parks.
- On roads with embedded metal objects such as train or tram tracks.
- On roads with loose gravel.

Pay special attention when using ACC in the following situations:

### On curves

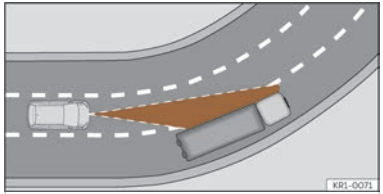



**Fig. 124** Vehicle on a bend.

The ACC may not detect the vehicle in front on a curve, or may regulate the distance from vehicles in other lanes ››› **Fig. 124**.

### Vehicles outside the sensor zone

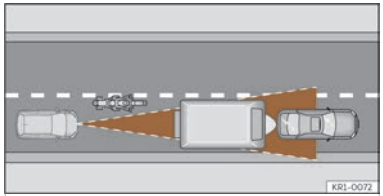



**Fig. 125** Motorcyclist ahead out of range of the radar sensor.

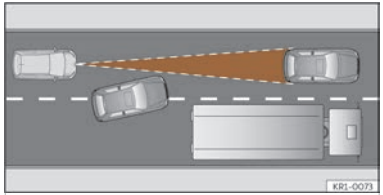



**Fig. 126** Vehicle changing lanes.

In the following situations the ACC may not react, or may react slowly or inappropriately:

- Vehicles that are not aligned while driving or that are outside the sensor's detection area, such as motorcycles ››› **Fig. 125**.
- Vehicles that move into your lane, a short distance from your vehicle ››› **Fig. 126**.
- Vehicles with loads or accessories that protrude from the sides, rear or roof.

### Objects that are not detected

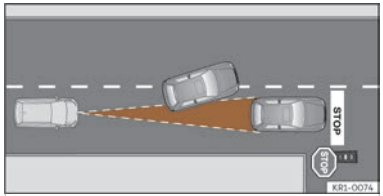



**Fig. 127** A vehicle turning and another stationary.

The ACC function only detects and reacts to vehicles moving in the same direction. Therefore it does not detect:

- People
- Animals
- Vehicles travelling in the opposite direction or crossing the road.
- Other stationary obstacles

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using the ACC in the above situations can cause serious accidents and injuries, and you could break the law.**

## Troubleshooting

**ACC not available**

The indicator lamp lights up yellow:

- The radar sensor is dirty or adjusted incorrectly. Take into account the warnings described at the beginning of this chapter ››› page 175
- There is a fault or a defect. Turn off the vehicle's ignition and turn it on again after a few minutes.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop.

**The ACC does not work as expected**

- Make sure that the conditions are met for the radar sensor to operate properly ››› page 175.
- If the brakes overheat, regulation stops automatically. Wait for them to cool down and check the operation again.

**The following conditions may lead the ACC not to react:**

- The accelerator or brake is depressed.
- No gear is engaged or the vehicle is in gear **R**.
- The vehicle is reversing.
- ESC is operating.
- The driver is not wearing his/her seat belt.
- A vehicle brake light is faulty.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Driving on an excessive slope.

# Predictive speed and events adjustment

## Introduction

The predictive speed adjustment adapts the speed to the speed limits detected and to the road layout (curves, crossings, roundabouts, traffic lights, etc.).

Predictive speed adjustment is an additional function of the ACC ››› page 184 and uses the road signal detection system ››› page 26 and the navigation data of the infotainment system.

Predictive speed and events adjustment is available depending on equipment, although not in all countries.

**Reaction at the end of a traffic jam**

Vehicles with Car2X technology (depending on the equipment and not in all countries) can interact with other vehicles in their vicinity. This allows your vehicle to receive information about the presence of a traffic jam ahead and to reduce speed in time.

Requirements:

- Car2X activated in the infotainment system.
- The option to react at the end of traffic jams is activated in the infotainment system ››› page 190.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The predictive speed and events adjustment smart technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only works within the limits of the system. Never allow the enhanced convenience of this function to induce you to take any risk that compromises safety. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Always adapt your speed to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Always pay attention to traffic and always keep the vehicle's surroundings in mind.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If the road sign recognition system is not working properly or the navigation data is not updated, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation. In addition, the speed adjusted by the system may not suit your driving style.**
- **Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself. If you drive without any active guided route, if you leave the route calculated by the navigation system or if the position of the vehicle cannot be determined correctly because the GPS does not provide accurate data, the speed may change unexpectedly and suddenly or may not be suitable for the current traffic situation.**
- **Always use up to date navigation data.**

- **Always take into account the speed limit. In the case of speed limits that are not included in the navigation data, the speed limit may be exceeded.**

**Note**

**Also note the information related to the ACC relevant to safety** ›››  page 184.

## Limitations of the predictive speed adjustment

In addition to the limitations of the road sign detection system ›››  page 26 and the limitations of the ACC, predictive speed adjustment has the following limitations inherent to the system:

- Predictive speed adjustment only recognises road signals that show a speed limit. Predictive speed adjustment does not take right-of-way rules into account.
- Road signs that indirectly show a speed restriction, e.g. signs at the entrance to towns, are only recognised on the basis of navigation data.
- On roads that are not included in the navigation data, or that are included with low accuracy, predictive speed adjustment is not available.
- If a speed limit is notified based on the navigation data without it being detected by the road signal detection system, the indicated speed will be adjusted to the speed that was saved the last time.
- Predictive speed adjustment is not available for speed limits below approx. 20 km/h (approx. 15 mph).

## Activate predictive speed and events adjustment

In the infotainment system, in the assist services menu, you can individually adjust the type of incident the vehicle should react to ›››  page 34:

- Response to road layout.
- Response at permitted speeds.
- Reaction to a traffic jam.
- Response to Stop signs.
- Response to traffic lights.
- Response to local average speed.

To enable “Response to local average speed”, activate Travel Assist with online data ›››  page 198. These data also improve recognition capability for all other predictive ACC adjustment types.

## Driving with predictive speed adjustment

- Connect the ACC ›››  page 185.
- Set the distance and speed.
- Activate the predictive speed adjustment.

As soon as the system recognises a speed limit or a relevant road layout during the route, a warning will appear on the instrument cluster display. This warning will indicate the reason and the speed to which the vehicle will adjust due to said limitation.

### Indication of turning intention

If the turn signals are activated to indicate the intention to turn, the predictive cruise control can reduce the speed at the next available turn.

The predictive cruise control does not detect the intention to turn in the following situations:

- A dashed line is recognised in the direction in which the turn signal is activated.
- The turn signals are not activated sufficiently far in advance.

### Indication of regulation in progress

Adjustment due to a speed limit.

Adjustment due to the end of a speed limit.

Adjustment due to a roundabout.

Adjustment due to a junction.

Adjustment due to a road layout.

Regulation due to a traffic jam.

Adjustment due to red traffic light.

Adjustment due to a green traffic light.

Adjustment due to a STOP sign.

Response to local average speed.

In the event of adjustment due to a speed limit, the detected speed will be saved as the new desired speed. In the event of adjustment due to the road layout, the vehicle will accelerate again after leaving the reason for the adjustment behind and the speed will be adjusted to the saved speed.

Curve control speeds depend on the selected driving profile >>> page 166.

### Interrupting speed adjustment

- During the warning, press the button RES.
- During the regulation, press the button SET.

### Adjust the announced speed

The announced speed can only be adjusted in the event of adjustment due to a speed limit.

**Multifunction steering wheel:**

RES + 1 km/h (1 mph)

SET - 1 km/h (1 mph)

\+ + 10 km/h (5 mph)

– - 10 km/h (5 mph)

If you adjust the indicated speed excessively, the predictive speed adjustment is interrupted.

**Note**

- **When a speed limit is recognised, the predictive speed adjustment also adapts the saved speed even if the ACC is switched off. However, it will not regulate.**
- **If the speed of travel considerably exceeds the speed limit detected by the road signal detection system, a relevant warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display.**
- **In the event of joining a highway without a speed limit, the recommended speed is automatically saved as the desired speed. If a higher speed has previously been saved for a motorway without a speed limit, this is used instead of the recommended speed.**

## Troubleshooting

**A message is displayed indicating that predictive speed adjustment is not currently available or not available in your country.**

- If this message is displayed for a long time and predictive speed adjustment is available in your country, contact a specialised workshop.

**Note**

**Depending on the anomaly in question, additional information may be displayed in Vehicle status** **>>> page 35**.

### Switch between driver assistance systems

Depending on the equipment, you can switch to the following driver assistance systems:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Cruise control system.
- Speed limiter.

1. Press the multifunction steering wheel button and scroll the right knurled wheel to select the desired driver assist system.
2. Press the OK button to confirm the selection.

# Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist)

## Introduction

The objective of the system is to prevent head-on collisions against objects that may be in the vehicle's path or minimise the consequences of such impacts.

Front Assist detects different road users, such as other vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and motorcycles, using a camera on the top of the windscreen and three radar sensors on the front of the vehicle ››› page 175.

Depending on several factors and how critical the situation is, the system operates in a staggered manner.

First by informing the driver, and if there is no or insufficient reaction, then by activating an autonomous emergency braking or an evasive manoeuvre as indicated by the conditions that will be discussed in the following points.

The system can be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is pressed or the steering wheel is turned firmly.

Depending on the equipment and the country, Front Assist also includes the following functions:

- Pedestrian protection ››› page 193
- Cyclist protection ››› page 193
- Dodge assist ››› page 193
- Oncoming vehicle braking when turning ››› page 193
- Junction assist ››› page 194

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Front Assist is a driving assistance function that can never replace the driver's attention.**
- **Front Assist cannot change the laws of physics or replace the driver in terms of keeping control of the vehicle and reacting to a possible emergency situation.**
- **Following a Front Assist emergency warning, pay immediate attention to the situation and try to avoid the collision where appropriate.**

## Warning levels and brake assist system

Front Assist is active from 5 km/h (3 mph). Depending on different conditions (vehicle speed, speed and type of object recognised, etc.), some of the stages described below are omitted to optimise the performance of the system.

### Safety distance warning

If the system detects that you are driving too close to the vehicle in front, it will warn the driver with this indication on the instrument cluster display.

The timing of the warning varies depending on driver behaviour, vehicle speed and relative speed between the two vehicles.

The safety distance warning is active from approx. 65 km/h (40 mph).

### Advance warning

If the system detects a possible collision with the vehicle in front, it alerts the driver by means of an audible warning and an indication on the instrument cluster display .

The warning moment varies depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour. At the same time, the vehicle will prepare for a possible emergency braking ››› ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 192.

When Front Assist is connected, the indications of other functions on the screen may be hidden.

### Critical warning

If the driver fails to react to the **advance warning**, the system may actively intervene in the brakes and generate a brief jolt to warn the driver of the imminent danger of a collision.

### Automatic braking

If the driver also fails to react to the **critical warning**, the system may initiate independent emergency braking by progressively increasing the braking in accordance with the criticality of the situation.

### Driver emergency braking assistance system

If the driver, after the critical warning, starts braking but the system detects that the brake is not being applied with sufficient force, the braking intensity will be increased. This brake assist only occurs if the pedal is pressed firmly.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The system cannot prevent a collision, although it can significantly minimise the consequences by reducing the speed and the force of the impact.**
- **If Front Assist applies the brakes, the brake pedal is "harder".**
- **Automatic interventions by Front Assist on the brakes may be interrupted by pressing the accelerator or moving the steering wheel.**
- **Front Assist may decelerate the vehicle until it stops completely. However, the brake system does not halt the vehicle permanently. Use the foot brake!**

## Pedestrian and cyclist recognition

The system recognises pedestrians and cyclists who travel in the same lane and direction and pedestrians and cyclists who transversely cross the vehicle's path.

Pedestrian and cyclist recognition technology cannot exceed the physically prescribed limits and works exclusively within the system's limits. The responsibility for braking always depends on the driver.

The pedestrian and cyclist recognition can cause undesired warnings and braking interventions, e.g. with a hidden radar sensor or a dirty camera field of vision.

Be ready to take charge of the vehicle at any time.

The pedestrian and cyclist recognition operating speed range is lower than that of Front Assist.

## Dodge assist

Dodge assist helps the driver avoid an obstacle in critical conditions.

Once the Front Assist has activated a critical warning, if the driver intends to dodge the object, the swerve assist will help correct the trajectory. The driver must start and finish the manoeuvre, as this is an assistance system and not an autonomous one.

The system is active between approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) and 150 km/h (90 mph).

### Limitations

This system does not react to objects crossing the path of the vehicle or to animals. The basic limitations of Front Assist must also be taken into account››› page 194.

## Turn-off assist

Turn-off assist can avoid a collision with a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction, by braking the vehicle itself when the intention is to turn.

This system is active **up to 25 km/h** (15 mph).

### Limitations

The turn-off assist function is available if you have indicated your intention to turn by activating the turn signal, you have turned the steering wheel and the turning path has started.

It only reacts to vehicles that are in the path of the vehicle (not to animals, people, etc.).

The basic limitations of Front Assist must also be taken into account››› page 194.

## Junction assist

Junction Assist can prevent the vehicle from colliding with a vehicle crossing the road as it enters an intersection or junction.

If there is a risk of collision when exiting an exit or entering a junction, Junction Assist can issue a visual and audible warning and brake the vehicle. This can reduce the risk of an accident.

### Displays

At low speeds, the park assist display uses coloured segments to show detected crossing traffic.

**Fig. 128** In the infotainment system: junction assist display.

*Yellow segment:* Junction assistant has detected crossing traffic. Pay attention and be prepared to brake.

*Red segment:* Junction assist has detected a potential collision with crossing traffic. Brake!

Depending on the situation, the coloured arrows are also shown in the Head-up Display (HUD) or in the instrument cluster. These indicate the direction from which cross traffic is approaching.

### Speed range

Junction assist is available in a speed range from 0 km/h (0 mph) to around 65 km/h (close to 40 mph).

### Limitations

Junction assist does not react to road users who are hidden by structures or other road users. Road users leaving a place where they were concealed may be detected with a delay.

Always keep in mind the basic limitations of the Front Assist >>> page 194 system.

## System limitations

Front Assist has certain limitations inherent to the system. Thus, in certain circumstances, some of the reactions may be inappropriate from the driver's standpoint. So pay attention and intervene if necessary.

**The following conditions may cause Front Assist not to react or to do so too late:**

The indication will be shown on the instrument cluster display in the first few instants of driving after switching on the ignition, due to the system's initial auto-calibration.

### Unrecognised objects

- Vehicles travelling outside the range of the sensors at a close distance to your vehicle.
- Vehicles that suddenly change to the lane on which your vehicle is travelling.
- Pedestrians that cannot be recognised because they are partially or totally hidden.
- Objects such as walls, posts, fences, trees or garage doors.
- Loads and accessories of other vehicles that protrude over the sides, rear or top.
- Pedestrians or cyclists standing or approaching in the opposite direction.

### Operating limitations

In the following situations, Front Assist may not work, or may work in a limited or unwanted way:

- If Front Assist or the front camera are disabled or broken.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera are dirty or covered.

- On taking tight bends or complex paths.
- When pressing the accelerator firmly or at full throttle.
- If the ESC is adjusting or is broken.
- If several brake lights of the vehicle or electrically connected trailer are damaged.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- In case of snow or heavy rain.
- In case of dazzling sun or total darkness.
- Entrances and exits of tunnels.
- In complex driving situations (such as traffic islands, cut-through roundabouts, etc.), Front Assist may issue warnings and unnecessarily intervene in braking.

For more details, see section >>> page 174, *System limits*.

## Manual activation and deactivation of the function

Front Assist indicators appear on the instrument panel display.

Front Assist is active whenever the ignition is switched on. When the vehicle is started, Front Assist may not be available for a short period of time while the system starts. During this phase, the instrument cluster display will display the following indication .

When Front Assist is deactivated, so too are the advance warning and the distance warning functions.

CUPRA recommends leaving Front Assist activated except in the situations explained in section page 195, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist*.

### Activating and deactivating Front Assist

With the ignition switched on, Front Assist can be deactivated or activated as follows:

- Via the infotainment system: main menu **Assist systems > Brake assist system > Front Assist** >>> page 34.
- **OR:** Select the corresponding menu option using the button for the assistants systems >>> page 174.

OFF This indication will be displayed in the instrument cluster when Front Assist is deactivated.

Each time the ignition is switched on, Front Assist will reappear as active.

### Switching distance warning on and off

The distance warning can be switched on/off in the infotainment system via main menu **Assist systems > Brake assist system > Front Assist** >>> page 34.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the distance warning will reappear as active.

CUPRA recommends having the safety distance warning activated, with the exceptions described in section page 195, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist*.

### Activating or deactivating the swerve and turn and junction assist

Avoidance and turn assistants can be switched on/off in the infotainment system via main menu **Assist systems > Brake assist system > Front Assist** >>> page 34.

Whenever the ignition is switched on, the swerve and turn and junction assist will reappear as active.

CUPRA recommends having the swerve and turn assistance systems activated, with the exceptions described in section page 195, *Temporarily deactivating Front Assist* .

### Temporarily deactivating Front Assist

In the following situations Front Assist should be deactivated due to the system's limitations:

- When the vehicle is to be towed.
- If the vehicle is on a test bed.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera is faulty.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera has suffered a violent blow.
- If it intervenes several times unnecessarily.
- If the radar sensor or the front camera is temporarily covered by an accessory.
- When the vehicle is going to be loaded onto transportation.
- If the windscreen is damaged in an area that covers the vision of the front camera.

# Lane Assist system

## Introduction

The Lane Assist System helps the driver stay in his/her lane within the physical limits of the system. This function is not suitable and is not designed to keep the vehicle automatically in the lane.

Using the camera located in the windscreen, the Lane Assist system detects the lane boundaries dividing the lanes in which the vehicle is travelling. If the vehicle gets too close to the detected lane limits, the system alerts the driver through a corrective motion of the steering wheel. The driver can cancel the steering corrective action at any time.

No warning will be given when the turn signals are activated, given that the Lane Assist system understands that a lane change is required.

### System limits

Use the Lane Assist system only on large, well-maintained motorways and highways.

The system is not available under the following conditions:

- The speed limit allowed is below approx. 60 km/h (35 mph).
- The system has not detected any lane lines.
- On tight bends.
- Temporarily in very sporty driving situations.
- If the driver firmly rectifies a system intervention.
- If a lane marking is crossed despite system intervention.
- If the driver does not react to a request to intervene.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The intelligent technology in the Lane Assist system cannot change the limits imposed by the laws of physics and by the very nature of the system. Careless or uncontrolled use of the Lane Assist system may cause accidents and injury. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness or manoeuvres when driving.**

- **Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead in line with visibility, weather conditions, the condition of the road and the traffic situation.**
- **Always keep your hands on the steering wheel so it can be turned at any time. The responsibility of staying in the lane is always the driver's.**
- **The Lane Assist system does not detect all road markings. The road surfaces, road structures or objects in poor condition can be incorrectly detected as road markings under certain circumstances by the Lane Assist system. Immediately counter any unwanted intervention of the system.**
- **Please observe the indications on the instrument cluster and act as is necessary if the traffic situation permits.**
- **In the following situations there may be undesired interventions of the system or it may not intervene at all. In these situations, special attention is required from the driver and, where appropriate, the temporary deactivation of the lane assist warning system:**
  - **In very sporty driving situations.**
  - **In adverse weather conditions and roads in poor condition.**
  - **When passing through road works.**
  - **Before gradient changes of grade and river beds.**
- **Always observe the vehicle surroundings carefully and drive proactively.**
- **When the area of vision of the camera becomes dirty, covered or is damaged, the Lane Assist system function can be affected.**

## Driving with the Lane Assist System

**Fig. 129** On the instrument cluster display: indications of the lane assist system.

① Yellow line: The system intervenes assisting on the represented side.

② White line: Lane line detected. The system is ready to intervene on the displayed side. When the line is grey, the lane line is detected but the system is in a passive state or not available for intervention.

Depending on the equipment, additional details of the lane marking line currently detected by the camera, e.g. dashed road markings, can also be displayed on the instrument cluster display.

Depending on the equipment, there is also an indication on the Head-up-Display >>> page 18.

### Control lamps

**Lights up grey**
Lane departure warning system switched to passive and not available for the lane.

**Lights up green**
Lane Assist system active and available.

**Lights up yellow**
The Lane Assist system is intervening by adjusting the steering.

### Switching the lane assist system on or off

In some countries, the Lane Assist system is always activated when the ignition is switched on. The connection status is shown in the **Assist systems** menu of the infotainment system. This menu can also be used for activation and deactivation.

The Lane Assist system is designed to actively intervene as of approximately 65 km/h (40 mph) and if it has detected the lane boundaries (system status: active).

When a turn signal is activated, the system temporarily switches to a passive state in the indicated direction and is available for operation in the opposite direction.

An energetic rotation or rectification of the steering wheel by the driver causes the system to temporarily switch to a passive state.

OFF When Lane Assist is switched off, the yellow disconnection warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster (depending on the country).

**Note**

**If a system fault persists, Lane Assist may switch off automatically.**

### Reduced mode

You can select the reduced mode of Lane Assist in the **Assistants** menu of the infotainment system. Reduced mode allows the driver, depending on equipment and in certain situations, to cross lane boundaries without system intervention.

Depending on equipment, if driver fatigue is detected, reduced mode is deactivated and cannot be reactivated until the vehicle has been brought to a stop.

### Driver intervention prompt

If the steering is not corrected manually, the system prompts the driver an indication on the instrument cluster display and audible warnings.

If no reaction is obtained from the driver, the system switches to a passive state.

Depending on the equipment, Emergency Assist is activated.

Regardless of the steering manoeuvres, an indication on the instrument cluster display and audible warnings also prompt the driver to drive in the middle of the lane if the steering correction lasts longer than reasonable.

**Steering wheel vibration**

With Lane Assist active, if the vehicle crosses a detected lane boundary, the steering wheel may vibrate.

## Troubleshooting

**The lane departure warning assistant is not available**

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A relevant warning is also displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault or a defect. Turn the drive system off and on again.
- The field of vision of the camera is dirty. Clean the windscreen ››› page 345.
- The camera has decreased visibility due to accessories or adhesives.

If the camera's field of view is affected by dirt, snow, accessories, stickers or other obstructions, the following temporary message may appear on the instrument cluster, accompanied by an audible warning:

**"Driver assist limited now. Front sensors without visibility."**

See more information on this topic in the section "*Drive assist sensors and cameras*" ››› page 175.

**" Lane Assist availability is limited"**

The information message may be displayed in the following situations:

- There is a problem with one or more close range traffic detection sensors.
- There is a problem with the attention monitor.

Observe the warnings and notes in "*Sensors and cameras for driver assist*" ››› page 175.

**The system behaves differently than expected**

- The camera has been altered or damaged, e.g. because of damage caused to the windscreen. Check for visible damage.
- Do not mount objects on the steering wheel.

If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop.

> **Note**
>
> **After switching on the ignition, it may take a few seconds before a fault is detected in the system.**

> **Note**
>
> **If lane assist is not available, Emergency Assist and Travel Assist are not available either.**

# Travel Assist

## Introduction

Travel Assist combines adaptive cruise control (ACC) and the adaptive lane guidance function. Within the limitations of the system, the vehicle can maintain a distance from the vehicle in front that is preselected by the driver and remain in the preferred position within the lane.

Travel Assist uses the same sensors as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Assist. Therefore, carefully read the information about the ACC ››› page 184 and the Lane Assist ››› page 196 and take into account the limitations of the systems and the indications given in the information.

**How to know if the vehicle is fitted with Travel Assist**

The vehicle is fitted with Travel Assist if the Travel Assist option appears when the button on the multifunction steering wheel is pressed.

### Speed range

Travel Assist regulates at speeds over 0 km/h (0 mph). The set speed can be adjusted at speeds over 20 km/h (15 mph).

### Driving with Travel Assist

Travel Assist automatically controls the accelerator pedal, the brakes and the steering. In addition, Travel Assist may, within its limitations, decelerate the vehicle until it stops behind another that stops, and automatically start again.

You can override assisted adjustment at all times.

### Status display

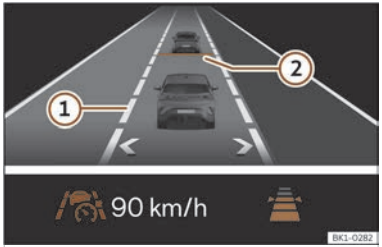



**Fig. 130** On the instrument cluster display: display of active regulation (schematic representation).

① The colour of the lane markings indicates the status of the adaptive lane guidance function.

- *Green:* adaptive lane guidance function active.
- *Grey:* passive adaptive lane guidance function.

② Distance set.

Depending on the equipment, there is also an indication on the Head-up-Display ›››  page 18.

Depending on the equipment, additional details, e. g. dashed road markings and vehicles in front, can also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Control lamps indicate the status of the system on the instrument cluster display:

Indicator lamp green: Travel Assist active, adaptive cruise control and adaptive lane guidance function are active.

Partially green lamp: Travel Assist active, adaptive cruise control active and adaptive lane guidance function passive.

Grey lamp: Travel Assist deactivated, not regulating.

### Driver intervention prompt

If you remove your hands from the steering wheel, after a few seconds the system asks you to take over the steering with an indication on the instrument cluster display and audible warnings.

If you do not react, Travel Assist is deactivated.

Depending on the equipment, Emergency Assist activates in its place.

### Travel Assist with online data

Travel Assist with online data uses online map data to improve operation (depending on equipment and not available in all countries or markets).

This makes it possible to increase the availability of Travel Assist in certain driving situations, e.g. when the road markings are incomplete or missing on one side of the road.

Requirements:

- Your subscription to CUPRA CONNECT is activated.
- Your subscription to CONNECTED TRAVEL ASSIST is activated.
- It is enrolled with privacy set to share data and share location.
- You have an Internet connection.
- Travel Assist is active and you are driving on a road with sufficient online data obtained from vehicles that previously drove on that road.

**Note**

To improve CONNECTED TRAVEL ASSIST operation, is is advisable to enable “Vehicle Innovation and Development” consent in “Vehicle permissions” in the My CUPRA App.

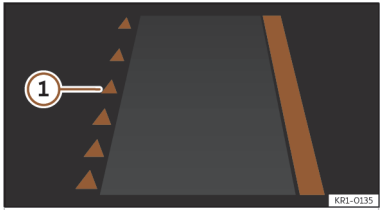



**Fig. 131** Representation when using online data.

① Line with triangles: lane boundary displayed via the online data.

**WARNING**

The Travel Assist smart technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only works within the limits of the system. If Travel assist is used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.

- Bear in mind the system limitations and the indications regarding the control of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Assist.
- Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use Travel Assist when visibility is bad, on steep roads, on windy roads or in slippery conditions (e. g., snow, ice, rain or loose gravel), or on flooded roads.
- Do not use Travel Assist offroad or on roads where the surface is not firm. Travel Assist has been designed for use on paved roads only.
- Travel Assist does not react to people or animal or vehicles crossing your path or which approach you head-on in the same lane.
- Brake immediately if Travel Assist does not slow down enough.
- Brake immediately when instructed to do so on the instrument cluster display, or if Travel Assist does not reduce speed sufficiently.
- Brake when the vehicle continues to move forward without it being desired after an indication to brake.
- If possible, do not wear gloves while driving. The system could interpret this as no driving activity.
- Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times, to ensure you always have control over the steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle in its own lane.
- Always be prepared to adjust the speed yourself.

**Note**

Online services provided and activated through CUPRA CONNECT (depending on device and country) may enhance the operation of Travel Assist when connected to the Internet.

## Operating Travel Assist

**Fig. 132** Left side of the multifunction steering wheel

### Switch on and start regulation

The Travel Assist function is activated via the driving assistance menu displayed on the instrument cluster.

1. Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
2. Then select the **Travel Assist** option from the menu.

Depending on the driving situation, the vehicle switches to the following system statuses in Travel Assist:

- If the ACC was already regulating, Travel Assist maintains the current speed and the preset distance to the vehicle in front.

When lane markings are detected, the vehicle is also kept in the lane by steering movements.

- If ACC was not already regulating, Travel Assist remains selected but in a passive status (not regulating).

Press the **SET** button.

Travel Assist switches to the active system status, depending on the driving situation.

The indicator lamp for the driving situation lights up on the instrument cluster display. A message is also displayed.

### Interrupting regulation

1. Briefly press the button .

   **OR:** press the brake pedal.

   The set distance remains saved.

### Switch to ACC or speed limiter

1. Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.
2. Then select the **ACC** or **Limiter** option from the menu.

   The vehicle switches from Travel Assist to the ACC or speed limiter system status corresponding to the driving situation.

### Making other adjustments

All other aspects of Travel Assist are controlled like the ACC ›››  page 185.

## Using the lane change assist

Lane Change Assist uses the same sensor system as Side Assist. Therefore, read the information on Side Assist ›››  page 205 carefully and observe the limits of the system and the notes that it displays.

Operating the indicator on a motorway, provided the prerequisites are met and no vehicles are detected nearby, allows the vehicle to perform an assisted lane change.

### Prerequisites

Lane change assist is only available, depending on the vehicle's equipment, when driving forwards on multi-lane motorways included in the Infotainment system's navigation data, and when travelling faster than 65 km/h.

Travel Assist must also be activated.

### Status display

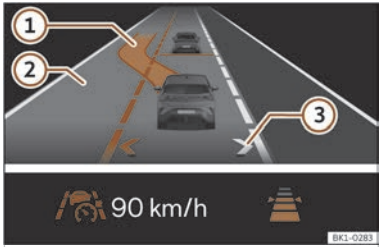



**Fig. 133** On the instrument cluster display: lane change assist display (schematic representation).

① Green track on the overtaking lane: lane change is in progress.

② Adjoining lane highlighted: changing lanes is possible on the respective side.

③ Arrows in the vehicle's own lane show that the assisted lane changing function is switched on.

- *Grey arrow:* changing lanes to the respective side of the lane is not possible.
- *White arrow:* changing lanes to the respective side of the lane is possible.

According to the driving situation, the following symbols also light up in the instrument cluster:

Lane assist active, manoeuvre not available.

Lane assist active, manoeuvre available (arrow direction highlighted).

Lane assist active, manoeuvre in execution.

### Activating and deactivating lane change assist

You can activate and deactivate assisted lane change in the **Assistants** menu of the infotainment system.

1. Open the assistant in the **Lane** menu.
2. Activate or deactivate assisted lane changing.

> **Note**
>
> **If a fault occurs in the system, lane change assist may automatically switch off or be interrupted during the lane change.**

### Activating lane change assist while driving

Once the prerequisites have been met and the programmed speed has been set with the **SET** button:

1. Press the **SET** button again.

   This activates lane assist. The arrows of your own lane on the instrument cluster display are grey >>> Fig. 133 ②

### Changing lanes

If the system detects no objects in the detection field of the sensor system and an assisted lane change to an adjacent lane is possible, the corresponding lane is shown in the instrument cluster display next to the driver's own lane. The arrow on the corresponding side of the lane is displayed in white >>> Fig. 133 ②.

1. When the comfort turn signal is activated on the desired side, the vehicle changes lane. A message is also displayed.

When changing lanes, the vehicle automatically activates the turn signal on the corresponding side. Once the lane change is complete, the turn signal automatically switches off.

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> **The sensor system cannot reliably detect all objects in the surroundings and operates exclusively within the limits of the system. If you use the lane change assist irresponsibly, accidents and serious injuries can occur. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**
>
> - **Before changing lanes, make sure it is safe to do so. In particular, rapidly approaching objects may not be detected in time.**
> - **Keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times and be prepared to control your own speed and direction of travel.**

### Turning off the lane change assist

- It turns off if the steering wheel is turned sharply.
- **OR:** by pressing the button.
- **OR:** by pressing the brake pedal.

Lane change assist is deactivated.

## Troubleshooting

### Travel Assist is not available or does not work as expected

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A relevant warning is also displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault in the sensors. Check the causes and solutions described in the information about the ACC >>> page 188 or the Lane Assist >>> page 198.
- There is a fault or a defect. Turn the drive system off and on again.
- The system limits are exceeded.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

**Grip the steering wheel**

The warning lamp lights up white and a message is then shown on the instrument cluster display.

- You released the steering wheel for a few seconds. Take hold of the steering wheel and take control of the vehicle.

**Grip the steering wheel**

The warning lamp lights up red and a message is shown on the instrument cluster display. Depending on the situation, an audio warning sounds or the steering wheel vibrates.

- You have let go of the steering wheel for a long time, or the system limits have been reached. Immediately take hold of the steering wheel and take control of the vehicle.

**Travel Assist disconnects automatically**

- There is a fault or a defect. Turn the drive system off and on again.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

**Regulation is interrupted unexpectedly**

- *Vehicles without lane departure warning:*

You have turned on the turn signal.

**Assisted lane changing is interrupted or unavailable**

A message about this is shown on the instrument cluster display.

- The vehicle has stopped detecting lane markings.
- You have let go of the steering wheel
- You are applying too much force to the steering wheel.
- You have turned on the turn signal too many times, or the turn signal lever is stuck.
- The driving speed is lower than around 65 km/h.
- The vehicle has detected objects in the vicinity that prevent an assisted lane change.
- You are not on a multi-lane motorway.

# Emergency Assist

## How it works

Emergency Assist can detect whether the driver is inactive and can automatically keep the car in its lane and stop it altogether if necessary. This way the system can actively help avoid an accident or reduce its consequences.

Emergency Assist uses the same sensors as Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Lane Assist Therefore, carefully read the information about the ACC >>> page 184 and Lane Assist >>> page 196 and take into account the limitations of the systems and the indications given in the information.

Emergency assist always available after the ignition has been switched on and is activated if the following conditions are met:

- Travel Assist or Lane Assist is switched on.
- The system has detected at least one lane boundary to the left or right of the vehicle.

**Note**

**If emergency assist is faulty, it may switch off automatically.**

**Note**

**If Lane Assist is unavailable, Emergency Assist is also unavailable.**

**Driver intervention prompt**

If Emergency Assist detects that the driver is not actively doing anything, he or she is prompted to take control of the vehicle by audio warnings and a brief application of the brake. In addition, a warning is shown on the instrument cluster display and the volume of the infotainment system is lowered.

Depending on equipment, proactive occupant protection is activated at the same time.

**System intervention**

If the driver does not respond, the Emergency Assist system is activated.

One of the following indicator lamps lights up in the instrument cluster, depending on the situation:

The system is regulating, lane guidance is activated.

The system is regulating, passive lane guidance.

You can cancel the adjustment at any time by moving the steering wheel, over-accelerating or braking.

While the emergency assistant is in operation, other road users are warned as follows:

- The hazard warning lights are switched on soon after.
- The horn sounds (depending on the speed).
- If the system performs an assisted lane change, the corresponding turn signal will activate.

On motorways and dual carriageways, the vehicle can change lane towards the hard shoulder and brake to a stop there, taking road traffic into account.

The following happens as soon as the vehicle stops:

- The electronic parking brake is activated.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The vehicle interior lighting comes on.
- Depending on the features, an emergency call (eCall) is made.

**WARNING**

**The Emergency Assist smart technology cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. The driver is responsible for driving the vehicle.**

- **Adapt your speed and safety distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Emergency Assist cannot always avoid accidents or serious injuries by itself.**
- **If the radar sensor or the camera are covered or have been altered or damaged, the system may inappropriately apply the brakes or intervene in the steering.**
- **The Emergency Assist does not react to people or animal or vehicles crossing your path or which approach you head-on in the same lane.**

**WARNING**

**If Emergency Assist intervenes inopportunely, serious accidents and injuries may occur.**

- **If the vehicle behaves differently than expected, interrupt the intervention of the Emergency Assist by over-accelerating, braking or moving the steering wheel.**
- **Do not use Travel Assist or Lane Assist. Have the system checked by a specialised workshop.**

## Troubleshooting

**Emergency Assist not available**

The control lamp lights up in yellow. A relevant warning is also displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault or a defect. Turn the drive system off and on again.
- If the problem persists, switch off the Emergency Assist and go to a specialised workshop.

# Lane departure warning (Side Assist)

## Introduction

The lane departure warning uses radar sensors to monitor the areas behind the vehicle >>> page 6. The system does this by measuring the vehicle's distance from other vehicles and its speed differential. The lane departure warning will not work at speeds of less than approx. 15 km/h (9 mph).

Lane width is not detected individually, but is rather pre-configured in the system. Thus if you are driving in wide lanes or in between two lanes, the indications may be incorrect. Furthermore, the system can detect vehicles driving in the lane next to you (if there are any), and can also detect stationary objects such as dividers, and thus give an incorrect indication.

### Physical limitations inherent to the system

In some situations the lane departure warning may not interpret the traffic situation correctly. I.e. in the following situations:

- on tight bends;
- in the case of lanes with different widths;
- in areas with significant gradient changes;
- in adverse weather conditions;
- in the case of special constructions to the side of the vehicle, e.g., high or irregular dividers.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The smart technology incorporated into Side Assist cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. Accidents and severe injury may occur if Side Assist is used negligently or involuntarily. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Adapt your speed and safe distance to the vehicle in front of you at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Keep your hands on the wheel at all times to be ready to intervene in the steering at any time.**
- **Pay attention to the control lamps that may come on in the external interior mirrors and on the instrument cluster, and follow any instructions they may give.**
- **The lane departure warning could react to any special constructions that might be present to the sides of the vehicle, e.g. high or irregular dividers. This may cause erroneous warnings.**
- **Never use the lane departure warning on unpaved roads. The lane departure warning has been designed for use on paved roads.**
- **Always pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings.**
- **The control lamps of the lane departure warning may have limited functionality due to solar radiation.**

**Note**

**If Side Assist does not work as described in this chapter, stop using it and contact a specialised workshop.**

## Driving with Side Assist

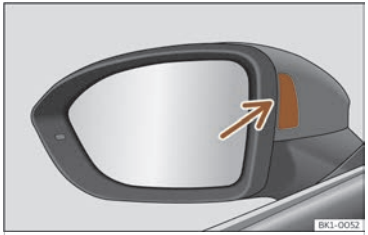



**Fig. 134** Control lamp of the lane departure warning.

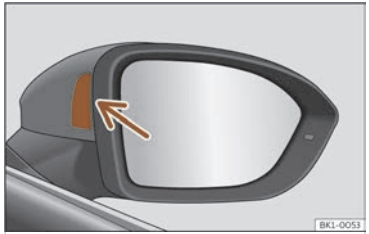



**Fig. 135** Control lamp of the lane departure warning.

### Connecting and disconnecting

Side Assist can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistants** menu in the infotainment system.

When the lane departure warning is ready to operate, the indications in the control lamps will turn on briefly as confirmation.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

### Indication on the exterior mirror

The control lamp provides an indication on the corresponding side regarding the traffic situation behind the vehicle, if it is deemed to be critical. The ››› **Fig. 134** control lamp on the left-hand side indicates the traffic situation to the rear left of the vehicle, and the ››› **Fig. 135** control lamp on the right-hand side indicates the traffic situation to the rear right of the vehicle .

In the case of retrofitted tinted windows or windows with tinted film, the indications of the external mirrors may not be seen clearly.

Keep the external mirrors clean and free of snow and ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other similar materials.

| It lights up |
|---|
| It turns on once briefly: the lane departure warning is activated and ready to operate, i.e. when activating the system. |
| It lights up continuously: the lane departure warning has detected a vehicle in the blind spot. |

| Flashes |
|---|
| A vehicle has been detected in the adjacent lane and the turn signal has been switched on in the direction of the detected vehicle. |
| For vehicles that are also equipped with Lane Assist ››› **page 196**, a warning to switch lanes will also appear even though the turn signal has not been switched on (Lane Assist “Plus” ››› **page 206**). |

The control lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should turn off after approximately 2 seconds. This is the time taken for the function check.

If there are no indications from the control lamp of the lane departure warning, this means that the lane departure warning has not detected any other vehicles at the rear area.

When the exterior lighting is low, the brightness of the control lamps dimmed. The user can modify the intensity of the control lamps with up to 5 levels in the infotainment system menu.

### Lane assist Plus.

The Lane Assist Plus function can be used by activating the **Lane Assist** ››› **page 196** and **Side Assist** functions. In this case its functions are expanded as described below.

If the driver initiates a lane change manoeuvre in a potential critical situation:

- The lamp flashes on the corresponding side even though the turn signal has not been activated.
- The steering wheel vibrates to warn the driver of the risk of collision.
- torque is applied to correct the steering and return the vehicle to its lane.

**Driving situations**

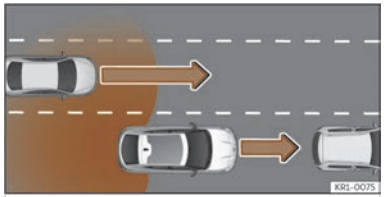



**Fig. 136** Overtaking with traffic behind the vehicle.

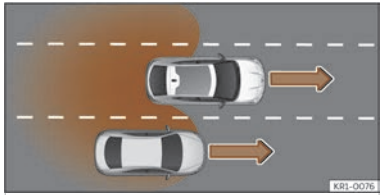



**Fig. 137** Overtaking in the central lane and then joining the right lane.

In the following situations, an indication will be displayed by the control lamp ››› **Fig. 134** , ››› **Fig. 135** (arrow):

- When being overtaken by another vehicle ››› **Fig. 136**.
- When overtaking another vehicle ››› **Fig. 137** with a speed difference of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph). If the vehicle is passing at a considerably higher speed, no indication will be displayed.

The faster the vehicle approaches, the sooner an indication will be displayed in the control lamp, because the lane departure warning takes into account the speed differential with other vehicles. Thus even though the distance from the other vehicle is identical, the indication will appear sooner in some cases and later in others.

# Parking and manoeuvring

## Park the vehicle

### Parking

When parking your vehicle, all legal requirements should be observed.

1. Press the brake pedal and keep it pressed.
2. Connect the electronic parking brake >>> page 209. The drive system is switched off. The control lamp (P) next to the gear selector lights up red.
3. On slopes, turn the steering wheel so that if the parked vehicle were to start moving, it would steer toward the kerb.
4. Remove your foot from the brake pedal.
5. Exit the vehicle >>> ⚠. Watch out for other road users!
6. Take all vehicle keys with you and lock it.

To avoid damage or hazardous situations, always park the vehicle on a suitable parking surface >>> ⓘ.

#### Rear seat warning

The function depends on the vehicle's equipment.

When the ignition is switched off, a text message in the infotainment system reminds you not to leave any passengers in the rear seats >>> ⚠.

If a rear door was used before the trip, a text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster and an audible warning may sound. This warning can be activated/deactivated in the infotainment system menu **Settings > Screen settings > Rear seat warning**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle is parked incorrectly, it could roll away, even on gentle slopes. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.**

- **When parking, always carry out the operations in the stipulated order.**
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is applied and that the control lamp (P) next to the gear selector is red on the instrument cluster.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If children, people who may need assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries can occur.**

- **Never leave children, people who may need assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle. They could operate the gear selector and release the electronic parking brake. The vehicle could be set in motion.**
- **Never leave children, people who may need assistance, or animals in the vehicle. Depending on the season, very high or low temperatures can be reached inside a closed vehicle.**
- **Always take all vehicle keys with you when leaving the vehicle.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The presence of irregularities on the ground, sand or mud can cause damage to the vehicle and mean that it cannot be parked properly.**

- **Always park the vehicle on firm and flat ground.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Components on the underside of the vehicle, such as bumpers, spoilers and running gear components, can be damaged when running over objects protruding from the ground.**

- **Drive carefully when entering buildings, on ramps, driving over kerbs or fixed markings, and on descents.**

# Electronic parking brake

## Using the electronic parking brake

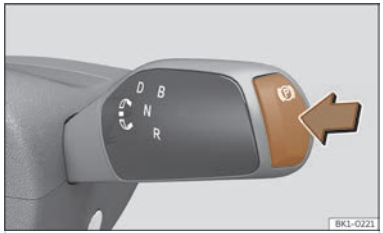



**Fig. 138** On the gear selector: electronic parking brake button.

### Connecting

- While the vehicle is stationary, press the button Ⓟ ››› **Fig. 138**.
- **OR:** when the ignition is switched off, the electronic parking brake is applied automatically.

Ⓟ When the electronic parking brake is applied, the control lamp on the instrument cluster next to the gear selector lights up red.

### Switching off

- Depress the brake pedal and select position **D**, **B**, **R** or **N** on the gear selector.
- The control lamp Ⓟ on the instrument cluster goes out.

### Automatic application when exiting the vehicle incorrectly

The electronic parking brake may be applied automatically if the system detects an attempt to exit the vehicle improperly. For example:

- no seat presence detection,
- seat belt unfastened,
- door open.

The electronic parking brake also holds the vehicle in the neutral **N** position.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle is left incorrectly, it could roll away. This could lead to accidents, serious injury and property damage.**

- **When parking the vehicle, always perform the appropriate operations in the indicated order** ››› page 208, *Parking*.
- **Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electronic parking brake is applied and that the control lamp Ⓟ on the instrument cluster, next to the gear selector, is lit up red.**

### Deactivating roll-away protection

If you do not want the electronic parking brake to be applied automatically, e.g. in a car wash or if you want to push or tow the vehicle, the vehicle's ability to roll can be maintained ››› ⓘ.

With the vehicle stationary, press down the brake pedal and select the **N** position on the gear selector.

- Confirm the message **Deactivate roll-away protection** in the infotainment system.
- **OR:** open the vehicle settings in the infotainment system **Vehicle > Exterior > Brakes > Deactivate the "*Roll-away protection function*"**.

When the ability to roll is activated, a message is permanently displayed on the instrument cluster display. If necessary, an audio warning sounds.

Deactivate the rolling:

- Press the Ⓟ button ››› **Fig. 138**. The electronic parking brake is activated.
- **OR:** switch off the ignition by pressing the ignition/start button.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Do not allow the electronic parking brake to apply automatically in an automatic car wash facility. This can cause damage to the vehicle.**

- **Activate the vehicle's ability to roll.**

### Emergency brake function

Only use the emergency brake function in an emergency, if the vehicle cannot be stopped by pressing the brake pedal ››› ⚠ !

- Press and hold the button. The vehicle will brake sharply. At the same time, an audio warning will be heard.

**Note**

**If ESC Sport or ESC OFF mode is selected, ESC will be reactivated automatically.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and serious injury.**

- **Never use the electronic parking brake to stop the vehicle, unless it is an emergency. The braking distance is considerably longer. Always use the brake pedal.**

## Troubleshooting

### The holding force in the current situation is too small

The control lamp next to the gear selector flashes red. The vehicle is stopped. A message is also displayed in this regard on the instrument cluster display.

It is not possible to park the vehicle safely on an uphill slope.

- Park the vehicle somewhere else, or on a level surface.

### and / Defect in the electronic parking brake

The control lamp flashes red next to the gear range indicator. The instrument cluster display also shows the red brake system lamp or the yellow central warning lamp ⚠.

There is a fault in the system.

1. Engage a gear range.
2. Press the electronic parking brake button again.

If the control lamp lights up in red and **PARK** is displayed without any other warning lamp lighting up on the instrument cluster, the vehicle is correctly immobilised.

**Variant 1: (yellow) remains lit**

1. If the yellow central warning lamp does not turn off, visit a specialised workshop immediately.

**Variant 2: (red) remains lit**

**Stop driving!**

1. If the red braking system lamp does not turn off, do not continue driving!
2. Seek specialist assistance.

### Electronic parking brake button faulty

If the control lamp next to the gear range indicator flashes red when the electronic parking brake button is pressed.

The electronic parking brake button is faulty.

1. Switch off the ignition to apply the electronic parking brake automatically.
2. Visit a properly qualified specialist workshop immediately.

### The electronic parking brake does not release

The charging connector is plugged in.

**OR:** the 12-volt battery is discharged.

- Use the jump start ››› page 302.

### ⚠ and Brakes too hot

The control lamp lights up in yellow. An audio warning signal may also sound. If applicable, a message to this effect is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible.
2. Apply the electronic parking brake and leave the vehicle stopped with the ignition switched on until another message is displayed.
3. Next, go immediately to a properly qualified specialised workshop and request an inspection of the system.

### The electronic parking brake makes noises

- When the electronic parking brake is applied and released, noises may be heard.
- The system performs automatic and audible checks sporadically in the parked vehicle if some time elapses without the electronic parking brake being used.

## Auto Hold function

The Auto Hold function holds the vehicle at a standstill and prevents it from moving without it being necessary to depress the brake pedal.

### Requirements

- The driver's door is closed.
- The drive system is connected.

When the **N** position is selected, the Auto Hold function **is not** activated or, if activated, it deactivates. Therefore, the vehicle will not be safely held ››› ⚠.

> **Note**
>
> **During driving in B mode**››› page 163, *Gear selector***, Auto Hold will always be active.**

### Connecting

- Press **Vehicle > Exterior > Brakes**.
- Enable the **Auto Hold** function.

Just because the Auto Hold function is switched on does not mean that it holds the vehicle at a standstill ››› ⚠.

The Auto Hold function will be switched on the next time the drive system is switched on.

### Keeping the vehicle stopped with the Auto Hold function

- Make sure that the Auto Hold function is switched on.
- Stop the vehicle with the brake ››› page 208.

HOLD When the Auto Hold function is active, the control lamp on the instrument cluster lights up green.

The vehicle is held at a standstill. The brake pedal can be released ››› ⚠

When the vehicle starts to move or the requirements of the Auto Hold function are not met, the vehicle is no longer held.

### Switching off

- Switch off the Auto Hold function in the infotainment system: **Vehicle > Exterior > Brakes** ››› page 34.

The Auto Hold function will be switched off the next time the drive system is switched on.

The Auto Hold function can only be switched off when the brake is depressed ››› ⚠.

When the Auto Hold deactivation menu is unavailable, the option appears greyed out, indicating it cannot be selected at that time.

> **⚠ WARNING**
>
> **The smart technology of the Auto Hold cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only operates within the limits of the system. Never allow the enhanced convenience of the Auto Hold function to induce you to take any risk that compromises safety.**
>
> - **If the vehicle has to be immobilised, make sure that the control lamp HOLD is lit up in green or (P) in red on the instrument cluster. If the control lamp is green, the Auto Hold function holds the vehicle; when it is red, the electronic parking brake holds the vehicle.**
> - **Never leave the vehicle with the drive system on and the Auto Hold function activated for any reason.**
> - **The Auto Hold function cannot always keep the vehicle stopped on an uphill, or brake it sufficiently on a downhill, e.g. on slippery or icy surfaces.**

> **NOTICE**
>
> **Always deactivate the Auto Hold function before entering an automatic car wash facility. Failure to do so could cause damage due to the automatic application of the parking brake.**

# General information on parking systems

## Automatic brake operation

The automatic braking feature of a parking system is used to reduce the danger of collision when an obstacle is detected during a parking manoeuvre.

### Braking functions

Depending on the equipment, the following systems are available:

- Park assist plus manoeuvre braking function >>> page 213.
- Rear cross traffic alert emergency brake function >>> page 234.
- Automatic park assist emergency brake function >>> page 216.

### Infotainment system lamps

Coloured lamp: system deactivated, the system does not brake when it detects an obstacle although the sensors still detect it.

### Requirements

- The vehicle is moving between approx. 3 km/h and 8 km/h when manoeuvring
- A parking system is switched on.

The brakes are not automatically operated when park assist is switched on automatically while moving forward.

### What happens in the event of automatic braking?

If there is an obstacle, the system brakes the vehicle to a standstill and keeps it stationary for approx. 2 seconds. **Press the brake!**

### Activate

- Automatic braking is activated when the driver switches a parking system on.

### Deactivating

- The automatic brake operation function deactivates when a park assist system is switched off.
- **OR:** to temporarily deactivate the manoeuvre braking function, press the Ⓐ function button on the park assist screen and change the setting.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never allow the automatic braking operations of park assist systems to lead you to take any risk that compromises safety. In certain situations, the automatic braking intervention may only work in a limited way or not work at all. Collisions with obstacles can injure people and damage the vehicle. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Pay attention and do not rely solely on park assist systems.**
- **Always be prepared to brake and control the steering yourself.**
- **Do not take any risks that compromise safety.**
- **Act in accordance with the warnings and driving recommendations of the parking systems.**

**Note**

- **Switch off the parking system if the automatic brakes operate excessively, e.g. when driving off-road.**
- **After the park assist's manoeuvre braking function has braked the vehicle, it deactivates for the next 5 metres of movement in the same direction, and becomes active again after changing gear or changing the position of the gear selector.**

## Troubleshooting

**The parking system behaves differently than expected**

There can be several causes:

- The system requirements are not met.
- The sensors are dirty or iced over
››› page 347.
- Some noise sources, such as a jackhammer or a cobblestone surface can interfere with the ultrasound signal.
- The vehicle has damage in the sensor area, e.g., due to an impact when parking.
- The sensor detection zones are blocked by an accessory, e.g., a bicycle carrier.
- Paintwork or structural modifications have been made in the sensor area, e.g., at the front of the vehicle or on the running gear.

Also take into account the messages displayed on the infotainment system display.

**Sensor not visible or the parking system has been switched off.**

If a sensor fails, that sensor zone is permanently switched off. The affected sensor zone may be displayed on the infotainment system with a symbol and a greyed-out graphic segment. If necessary, the parking system switches off the affected zone.

If the park assist is not working properly, a continuous audible signal sounds for a few seconds when it is switched on. If applicable, a message to this effect is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- Check if one of the causes indicated above has occurred.
- Once the source of the problem has been eliminated, the system may be reconnected.
- If the problem persists, consult a specialised workshop.

# Park Distance Control Plus (Park Pilot)

## Description

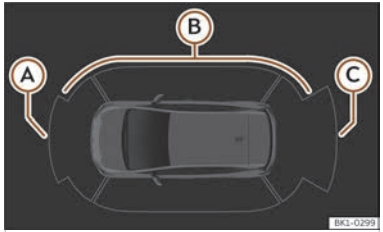



**Fig. 139** Park assist view on the Infotainment system display.

**Park assist plus** assists the driver by giving visual and audio warnings about obstacles detected in front of and behind the vehicle.

The bumpers are fitted with sensors. When an obstacle is detected, it is indicated by audible signals and in the Infotainment system ››› Fig. 139.

When moving close to an obstacle, it is possible to know if the obstacle is in front of the vehicle or behind it according to the sound frequency.

The approximate measurement range of the sensors is:

Ⓐ 1.20 m

Ⓑ 0.90 m

Ⓒ 1.60 m

As you approach the obstacle, the frequency of the audible signals will increase. The signal will sound continuously at around 0.30 m: Stop the vehicle!

If the separation is maintained, the volume of the warning starts to decrease after about 2.5 seconds and for the next 2.5 seconds it fades away until is it completely inaudible.

**Error messages**

If a an error or fault message is displayed on the instrument cluster in Park Assist, there is a fault.

If the fault doesn't disappear before switching off the ignition, it will not be indicated next time the park assist is connected.

If a rear sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in the front area are detected. If a front sensor is faulty, only the obstacles in the rear area are displayed. The symbol is displayed.

We recommend taking the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have the fault repaired.

### Park assist settings

Parking system indications and acoustic settings, as well as the various assistants, are adjusted in the **Settings** menu. Open the parking settings by pressing the P button or by engaging reverse gear.

**⚠ WARNING**

- Always pay attention, by looking directly, to traffic and the area around the vehicle. Assistance systems are not a replacement for driver awareness. Responsibility always lies with the driver.
- The sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not detected. Pay special attention to children and animals.
- Always keep the surroundings in sight: use the mirrors for additional help.

**NOTICE**

Park assist plus functions can be affected by various factors which may cause damage:

- Under certain circumstances, the system does not detect or display certain objects:
  - Chains, trailer draw bars, bars, fences, posts and thin trees.
  - Objects that are located above the sensors, such as protrusions in a wall.
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures, such as wire mesh fences or powder snow.
- Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect these objects or people wearing such clothes correctly.
- Sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. This may prevent them from detecting people or objects.
- If the system warns you of the proximity of a low obstacle, please note that after being detected by the system, the obstacle in question may disappear from the measurement sensors as the vehicle moves closer, and the system will no longer warn of its presence. In certain circumstances, objects such as high kerbs that could damage the underside of the vehicle are not detected.
- If the parking distance warning system is ignored, the vehicle could suffer considerable damage.
- Damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel arch and vehicle underbody can modify the orientation of the sensors. This can affect the park assist function.

  Have the function checked by a specialised workshop.
- A number plate or number plate holder with dimensions that exceed the space for the number plate, or a curved or deformed number plate can cause false detections or a loss of sensor visibility.

**Note**

- The Infotainment System display has a slight time delay.
- In certain situations, the system can give a warning even though there is no obstacle in the detected area:
  - Rough or cobbled surfaces or surfaces with long grass.
  - External ultrasound sources, such as other vehicles equipped with ultrasound systems.
  - Heavy rain or snow, hail or dense exhaust gases.
  - If the number plate is not properly secured to the surface of the bumper.
  - Gradient changes.

- **In order to guarantee good operation, keep the sensors clean, free of snow and ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects.**
- **If you use high-pressure or steam equipment for cleaning, do not apply it directly, unless you do so very briefly, and always keep a distance of more than 10 cm away.**
- **Fitting certain accessories to the front of the vehicle, such as a plate holder with advertising, may interfere with the operation of the Park Assist.**
- **We recommend that you practice parking in an area without traffic.**
- **The volume and tone of the signals and indications can be changed.**

## Operating Park Assist Plus

### Switching on and off manually

- Open the parking assist menu via the P button (top of the screen) or by engaging reverse gear.

### Automatic activation

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** if you drive forward at a speed of less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and you encounter an obstacle, it is detected when it is optically approx. less than 95 cm. away, or acoustically approx. 50 cm. away. If the automatic connection is activated, a reduced display is shown.
- **OR:** if the vehicle moves back a certain distance (between approx. 10 and 20 cm approx depending on whether or not an obstacle is detected).

When **Parking Assist Plus** auto-activates, the vehicle outline and detection lines are shown on the screen. This function will be available unless the user has deactivated it.

It only operates every time the speed drops below 15 km/h (9 mph) for the first time.

Automatic activation of park assist can be switched on and off in the infotainment system:

- Switch the ignition on.
- Open parking-assist settings via button P (top of the screen) or by engaging reverse gear.
- Check the **Automatic activation** box.

If activated automatically, an audible sound warning will only be given when obstacles in front are at a distance of less than 50 cm. approx.

If it is switched off using the P button in the infotainment system, one of the following actions must be taken for it to reactivate automatically:

- Switch off the ignition and switch it on again.
- **EITHER:** drive forward at over approx. 15 km/h (9 mph).
- **OR:** switch the automatic activation on and off in the Infotainment system.

### Automatic disconnection

- Drive forward at 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.

### Temporary mute

- Press the 🔊 function button on the infotainment screen.
- **OR:** activate the electronic parking brake.

### Change from reduced view to full view

- Engage the reverse gear if your vehicle is equipped with a reversing camera.
- Press ⊡ within the video image to switch to full screen.

### Switch to the reverse assist image (Rear View Camera)

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** tap the P button on the Infotainment System display.

**NOTICE**

**Park assist plus only connects automatically when driving very slowly. If driving style is not adapted to the circumstances, an accident and serious injury or damage may be caused.**

**Note**

**Whenever reverse gear is engaged you cannot exit the parking environment; a message is shown (EU regulation R158).**

## Visual indication lines

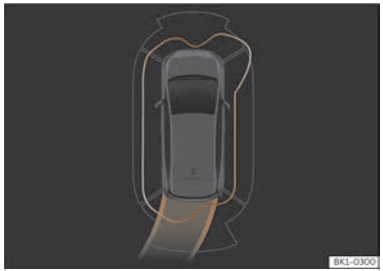



**Fig. 140** Park assist view on the Infotainment system display.

The optical indication of segment colours is a blend from red to yellow:

- **Red:** obstacles in that area are at a distance of less than approx. 30 cm.
- **Yellow:** obstacles in that area are more than approx. 30 cm from the vehicle.

Marks aligned with the wheels, in front of or behind the vehicle, indicate the path direction.

When an obstacle is within the path zone, the audible warning will sound according to the object distance.

When the coloured lines are shown in red, the collision zone will be reached shortly before contact with the vehicle. Stop the vehicle!
››› ⚠ on page 214

# Intelligent Park Assist (IPA) automatic parking system

## Introduction

The automatic parking system is an additional function of ParkPilot ››› page 213 and helps the driver find a suitable parking space from among the following types:

- reverse parking in suitable perpendicular and parallel spaces,
- park forwards in line, perpendicular and diagonal in a suitable space,
- exit a parking space driving forwards from a parallel space,
- park in a suitable space driving forwards at an angle to partially enter the selected parking space. The system will centre the vehicle in the parking space,
- finish reverse parking into a space in which you have attempted to park manually by partially entering with the rear of the vehicle.

In vehicles with an automatic parking system and factory infotainment system, the front, rear and side areas are represented, and the position of obstacles is shown relative to the vehicle.

The automatic parking system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system and its use requires special attention by the driver ››› ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The technology used in the automatic parking system has a series of limitations inherent to the system itself and the use of ultrasonic sensors. The use of Park Assist should never tempt you to take any risk that may compromise safety. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Any accidental movement of the vehicle could result in serious injury.**
- **Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Certain surfaces of objects and garments do not reflect the ultrasound sensors' signals. The system cannot detect, at least correctly, these objects or people wearing such clothes.**
- **Ultrasound sensor signals may be affected by external sound sources. In certain circumstances this may prevent them from detecting people or objects.**
- **The ultrasound sensors may have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not detected.**

- Monitor the area around the vehicle at all times, since the ultrasound sensors do not detect small children, animals or certain objects in all situations.

**⚠ WARNING**

Quick turns of the steering wheel when parking or exiting a parking space with the automatic parking system can cause serious injury.

- Do not hold the steering wheel during manoeuvres to park or exit a parking space until the system requests it. Doing so disables the system during the manoeuvre, resulting in the parking being cancelled.

**NOTICE**

- In certain circumstances, the ultrasonic sensors do not detect objects such as trailer hitches, bars, fences, posts or thin trees, or an open (or opening) rear lid, which could damage the vehicle.
- Retrofitting of certain accessories to the vehicle, such as a bicycle rack, may interfere with the operation of the automatic parking system and cause damage.
- The automatic parking system uses as a reference parked vehicles, kerbs and other objects. Make sure that the tyres and wheels are not damaged while parking. If necessary, interrupt the parking manoeuvre on time to avoid damaging the vehicle.
- The ultrasound sensors on the bumper may be damaged or shifted in the event of a collision, for example, when entering or exiting a parking space.
- If you use high-pressure or steam equipment to clean the ultrasound sensors, do not apply it directly unless very briefly and always from a distance of more than 10 cm.
- A registration plate or plate holder on the front that is larger than the space for the registration plate, or a registration plate that is curved or warped can cause:
  - False detections.
  - The sensors to lose visibility.
  - Cancellation of the parking manoeuvre or defective parking.
- If one of the ultrasonic sensors is damaged, the area corresponding to that group of sensors (front or rear) is deactivated and cannot be activated until the fault is corrected. However, you can still use the sensors of the other bumper as per usual. If there is a fault in the system, consult a specialist workshop. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

**Note**

- In order to guarantee good system operation, keep the ultrasound sensors of the bumper clean, free of snow or ice, and do not cover them with stickers or other objects.
- Certain sources of noise, such as rough asphalt or paving stones and the noise of other vehicles can induce the automatic parking system or ParkPilot to give erroneous warnings. The presence of metal objects can also affect the manoeuvre.
- To become familiar with the system and its functions, CUPRA recommends that you practice operating the automatic parking system in an area where there is not too much traffic or in a car park.

## Description of the automatic parking system

The components of the automatic parking system are the ultrasonic sensors located in the front and rear bumpers, the P button to switch the system on and off and the messages on the infotainment system display.

### Prerequisites for parking

- The traction control (TCS) must be switched on ›››  page 172.
- Speed when passing next to the parking space: do not exceed approx. **30 km/h (19 mph)**.
- Keep a distance between **0.5 and 2.0 metres** when driving past the parking space.

- Space length (parallel parking): **vehicle length + 1 meter**.
- Space width (parking bay): **vehicle width + 1.1 meters**.

**Requirements for leaving the parking space (only for parallel parking)**

- The traction control (TCS) must be switched on >>> page 172.
- Space length: **length of the vehicle + 0.5 metres**.

**Prematurely stopping or automatically interrupting the manoeuvres for parking or exiting a parking space**

The automatic parking system interrupts the manoeuvres for parking or exiting a parking space in any of the following cases:

- Press P on the infotainment system (top area of the screen).
- The driver takes control of the steering wheel.
- The parking manoeuvre can involve up to 8 movements.
- The parking manoeuvre does not end within 6 minutes after activation of the automatic steering.
- There is a fault in the system (the system is temporarily unavailable).
- TCS is switched off.
- TCS or ESC intervene with regulation.
- A door or the luggage compartment is opened.
- The parking system encounters an unexpected obstacle.
- The parking system detects high rolling resistance, e.g. if there is an obstacle on the ground (stone, bump, kerb, etc.).

**Special characteristics**

The automatic parking system is subject to certain limitations inherent to the system. For example, it is therefore not possible to use it to enter or exit a parking space on sharp bends or on very steep hills.

**After changing a wheel**

If, after changing a wheel, the vehicle stops entering and exiting parking spaces correctly, the circumference of the new wheel may be different and the system may need to adapt to it. The adaptation is automatic and takes place during driving >>> ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 216.

## Selecting a parking type

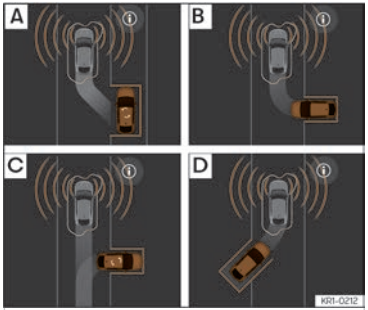



**Fig. 141** On the infotainment system display: parking modes indication.

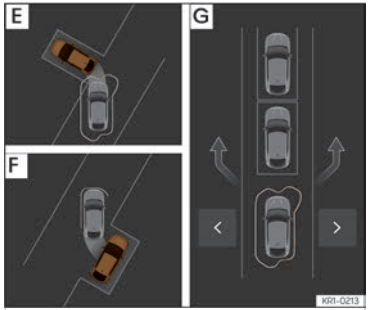



**Fig. 142** On the infotainment system display: parking modes indication.

The automatic parking function offers different options:

**A** Reverse parallel parking.

**B** Reverse angle parking.

**C** Forward angle parking.

**D** Diagonal reverse parking.

**E** Forward or reverse parking in a parking bay without driving past first: “Help me”.

**F** Reverse parallel parking without driving past first: “Help me”.

**G** Exit parking space to the left or right.

### Selecting a parking type after passing in front of the space

After activating the automatic parking system and after detecting a parking space, the infotainment system display proposes a type of parking. The automatic parking system selects the parking type automatically. The selected type is shown on the infotainment system display >>> **Fig. 141**, >>> **Fig. 142**.

- The prerequisites for parking with the automatic parking system must be met >>> **page 217**.
- Press P on the infotainment system (top area of the screen) or engage reverse gear.
- When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the infotainment system display is highlighted. The selected type of parking is also displayed. You can change the type of parking on the infotainment system display.
- If there are more spaces available, another space can be selected by clicking on it on the infotainment system display.
- Follow the instructions displayed on the infotainment system display while paying attention to traffic and drive the vehicle past the parking space.

### Special case: perpendicular parking space forwards or backwards without driving past first (type E)

- The prerequisites for parking with the automatic parking system must be met >>> **page 217**.
- Move forward towards the parking space while paying attention to traffic and stop the vehicle with the front part partially inside the parking space.
- Press P once on the infotainment system (top area of the screen).
- When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the infotainment system display is highlighted. The selected parking mode without a reduced view is also displayed.
- Let go of the steering wheel >>> ⚠ **on page 216**.

### Parallel reverse parking without driving past first (type F)

In this case of type **F** parking, press button P so that the system completes the parking that has already been started. The system will only switch on if sufficient progress has been made with the manoeuvre (the side sensor must be able to detect the reference vehicle). If it is not possible to complete the started manoeuvre successfully, the system will exit the parking space itself to start parking analogous to type **A**.

## Parking with the automatic parking system

The prerequisites have to be met to park with the automatic parking system ››› page 217 and the parking mode has to be selected ››› page 218.

### Parking

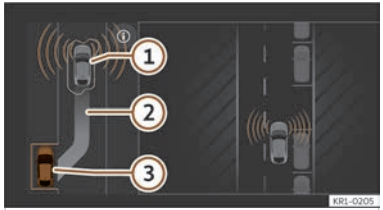



**Fig. 143** On the infotainment system display: parallel parking position.

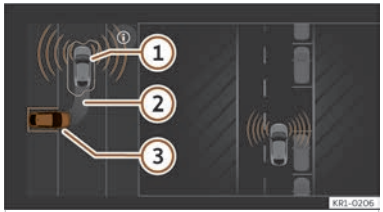



**Fig. 144** On the infotainment system display: parking bay parking position.

››› **Fig. 143**, ››› **Fig. 144**

① Own vehicle.

② Indication showing the proposed parking manoeuvre.

③ Parking space detected.

- Look at the display on the infotainment system's screen to see if the space has been detected as “appropriate” and if the correct position for parking has been reached ››› **Fig. 143**, ››› **Fig. 144**. Stop the vehicle and follow the instructions shown on the infotainment screen.
- Stop the vehicle, press the brake and, after a short pause, press the **Start** button in the infotainment system.
- Let go of the steering wheel ››› ⚠ in *Introduction* on page 216.
- Please note the following message:

**Parking the vehicle... Steering intervention active**

- The automatic parking system will park autonomously by taking control of the steering wheel (transverse control of the vehicle) and control of the accelerator and brake pedals (longitudinal control of the vehicle).
- Once the manoeuvres have been completed, this is indicated by an audio and visual warning in the infotainment system. The vehicle is now parked and immobilised (the electronic parking brake is applied).

### Progress bars

**Fig. 145** On the infotainment system display: progress bar

The progress bar ④ on the infotainment system display shows the relative distance to be covered as a symbol. The more complete the progress bar, the shorter the distance to complete the parking manoeuvre.

**Fig. 146** On the Infotainment System display: parking space

If the parking space is displayed with arrows on its sides, this indicates that it is possible to park in a different way in the same space by pressing on the highlighted space ››› **Fig. 146**.

**Note**

**If the manoeuvre is terminated prematurely during parking, the result may not be the best.**

## Leaving a parking space with the automatic parking system (only for parallel parking)

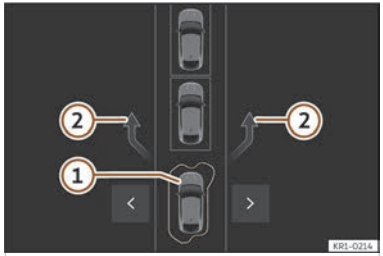



**Fig. 147** On the infotainment system display: leaving a parallel parking space.

① Own vehicle.

② Message giving the proposed manoeuvre to exit the parking space

**Leaving a parking space (parallel parking)**

The necessary conditions to exit a parking space with Park Assist have to be met ››› **page 217**.

- Press the P button in the infotainment system: When the system is switched on, the symbol P on the infotainment system display is highlighted.
- Switch on the corresponding indicator, press the arrow for the side of the roadway to exit the space ››› **Fig. 147** ② and release the brake. The manoeuvre will start immediately.
- Press **Start** in the infotainment system.
- Let go of the steering wheel ››› ⚠ in ***Introduction* on page 216**. Please note the following message:

**Vehicle driving out of the parking space... Steering intervention active.**

- The automatic parking system will automatically perform the manoeuvres for getting the vehicle out of the parking space by taking control of the steering wheel (transverse control of the vehicle) and control of the accelerator and brake pedals (longitudinal control of the vehicle).
- The vehicle can be driven out of parking space when a message to this effect is displayed in the infotainment system (**Vehicle out of the parking space. Take control of the vehicle**) and, if necessary, an audible signal sounds. Take control of the steering wheel while maintaining the steering angle set by the automatic parking system.
- Paying attention to the traffic and surroundings, exit the parking space.

# Automatic Parking System Plus with memory function

## Introduction

The Automatic Parking System Plus with memory function offers assistance when parking in frequently used parking spaces. The vehicle automatically manoeuvres along a previously saved route to the parking space.

The availability of the Automatic Parking System Plus with memory function depends on the vehicle's equipment.

### How it works

The Automatic Parking System Plus with memory function is an extension of the Automatic Parking System.

This parking system uses the front camera to detect the surrounding area and **saves the route to the parking space, with a maximum distance of 50m**. Once the parking process is saved in the Assistant, the vehicle is able to reach the parking space automatically.

The driver must monitor the area around the vehicle at all times ››› ⚠.

Automatic braking may occur if there are obstacles in the vehicle's path or if a dangerous situation arises.

### Prerequisites

- GPS coordinates of the vehicle's position are available.
- Sufficient space for manoeuvring. The vehicle may have to travel a few meters to reach the programmed parking route.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The smart technology used in parking systems cannot ignore the laws of physics and only works within the limits of the system. Failure to take this into account may result in accidents and serious injuries, as well as damage to the vehicle.**

- **Pay attention to the parking process and the traffic around you. Look in the direction that the vehicle is parking.**
- **Do not use the Automatic Parking System Plus with memory function in parking spaces where there are no defined boundaries, e.g. near the edge of lakes or rivers or near unfenced slopes.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The driver is responsible for automatic parking at all times. There is a risk of accidents.**

- **Only park the vehicle if you have a valid driver's license.**
- **Follow the traffic regulations of the country you are in.**
- **Do not leave the driver's seat at any point during the parking manoeuvre.**
- **If necessary, operate the turn signals yourself.**
- **Use the brake pedal to slow down or even stop the vehicle in dangerous situations.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The system is only capable of a limited response to sudden changes in external conditions. Collisions with other road users may occur.**

- **Do not use the parking system when traffic speeds are in excess of 50 km/h (30 mph).**
- **Always keep a safety distance of at least one vehicle length at junctions.**
- **Do not perform automatic parking from the other side of the road or across several lanes.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The vehicle may occupy/invade the path of oncoming traffic.**

- **Pay attention to the parking process and the traffic around you.**
- **Keep the vehicle under control and use the brake if necessary.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The parking process cannot be carried out correctly if the roadway is slippery; the vehicle may skid. This can cause accidents and damage to the vehicle.**

- **Do not use the Park Assist in winter road conditions.**

## Saving the parking process

### Find a suitable parking space

- The parking space is clearly visible and unobstructed. Underground car parks and multi-storey car parks are not suitable.
- There is good visibility, i.e. no heavy rain, fog or darkness.

Programming of the parking process may be limited if the parking space is unsuitable.

### Program the process for reaching a parking space

1. Drive to the parking space as normal.
2. Stop the vehicle safely.
3. Save the parking process as a parking space in the infotainment system.

Follow the indications below to get the best possible result when parking.

- Carry out the parking process as slowly as possible.
- Avoid adjusting the trajectory of the vehicle during the last few meters to the parking space.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its end stop, move it too quickly or change direction many times while driving.

### Saving a parking space

Once you have reached the desired parking space, you can save it in the following ways:

*Variant 1: saving a parking space in the Park Assist with memory function menu*

1. Press the P button in the infotainment system:
2. Click on the icon P.
3. Select “Save parking manoeuvre”.
4. Select the function button, assign the symbol you want (››› Fig. 148 ①) and confirm it.

   You have saved a new parking space in the menu. The system stores the route with a maximum distance of 50 m.

*Variant 2: saving a parking space in the departure menu*

1. Press the icon P **Save parking manoeuvre**.

   The parking process is saved as a parking space with GPS coordinates. The system stores the route with a maximum distance of 50 m.

**Note**

**To replace the GPS coordinates with a name for the parking space, edit the space in the vehicle’s parking system.**

### Store an exit-from-parking manoeuvre

*Requirement:* the vehicle is in a parking space for which a parking manoeuvre has been stored and is available.

1. Switch on the ignition and the drive system.
2. Press the P button in the infotainment system:
3. Click on the icon P.
4. Select the stored parking space (park).

   A message is shown in the infotainment system.
5. Drive the vehicle out of the space.
6. Confirm the end of the exit-from-parking manoeuvre with the function button in the infotainment system.

   The manoeuvre will also be saved in the menu, in the current space.

**Note**

**If the speed is excessive or the distance is greater than 25 m (82 ft) approx., the memorisation process will be interrupted automatically.**

### Reprogramming the parking process of a saved parking space

If you want to reprogram a parking process, e.g. to improve the final result or to reach the parking space from another location, you must first delete the parking space saved in the menu.

1. Delete that parking space stored in the Infotainment system.
2. Reprogram the parking process in its entirety.

**Note**

**When deleting a stored parking space, the entry and exit processes for that parking space are always deleted.**

## View and edit parking spaces

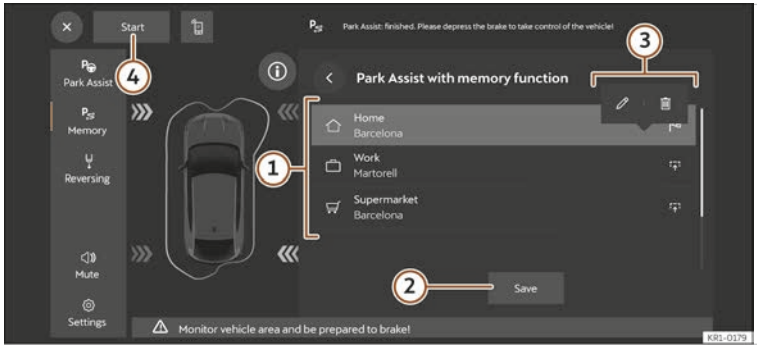



**Fig. 148** Schematic representation: Park Assist with memory function menu.

① Saved parking spaces.

② Add the last parking process

③ Edit saved parking spaces.

④ Start the parking process.

**Open the menu**

All parking processes are displayed as favourites in the menu of the automatic parking system with memory function.

1. In the infotainment system, press P .

**Edit or delete parking spaces**

1. Press and hold on one of the saved spaces in the list. A pop-up window will open.

   You can edit any of the saved parking spaces.

2. To rename a parking space or assign a different symbol to it, press icon ✎ for that parking space.

   **Or**: to delete a parking space, press on the icon 🗑 for that space.

   To delete all parking spaces, press 🗑 of all parking spaces.

## Driving to and from a parking space

When approaching a saved parking space, the System offers a parking process on the Infotainment system display.

- Stop the vehicle as close as possible to the stored route, a maximum of one metre away.
- Always approach the initial position of the parking process from the same direction.

**Note**

**Impediments may occur if visibility is very poor, e.g. in the dark, when parking and exiting a parking space.**

**Variant 1: Start from the Automatic parking system with memory function menu**

1. Stop the vehicle near the parking space and hold it stationary with the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, tap the parking space in the Parking system menu list.
3. Press the **Start** button ››› Fig. 148 ④.
4. Let go of the steering wheel and take your foot off the brake pedal.

   The system will start the parking process.
5. Always wait for the Parking system to finish turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking process for optimal results ››› ⚠.

   At the end of the parking process, an audible signal will sound and a message to this effect will be displayed on the infotainment system.

   The electronic parking brake will be applied.
6. Park the vehicle.

**Variant 2: Start from Navigation in the infotainment system**

Once you reach the destination, a message will be displayed on the infotainment system.

1. Stop the vehicle and hold it stationary with the brake pedal.
2. Press the **Start** button in the message.
3. Let go of the steering wheel and take your foot off the brake pedal.
4. Observe the images in the infotainment system.

   The system will start the parking process.
5. Follow the instructions for variant 1 from step 5 onwards.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sudden steering wheel movements can cause serious injury.**

- **Do not grab the steering wheel during the manoeuvre, unless the system asks you to do so.**
- **If a dangerous situation arises, grab the steering wheel.**

## Navigate to a parking space as a destination

**Which parking spaces can be used as navigation destinations?**

Saved parking spaces with a navigation symbol can be transferred to the navigation system as destinations. This function depends on the country and vehicle equipment.

**Start the guided route**

1. Select the desired parking space from the Parking system's menu list.
2. Press **OK** in the infotainment system message.

   The guided route to that destination will begin and the Parking System menu will close.

   **Or**: follow the directions to exit a parking space with the parking system.
3. Once the vehicle has arrived at the destination, read the message on the infotainment system.

   The parking system with memory function is ready to automatically park the vehicle.

# Automatic parking system plus with remote function (My CUPRA App)

## Introduction

**The driver can control the parking process from outside the vehicle via a mobile app.**

**How it works**

The automatic parking system with remote parking function is an extension of the automatic parking system.

Remote parking is also possible with the automatic parking system plus with remote memory function (My CUPRA App).

The driver carries the vehicle's key during parking. The vehicle's Keyless Access system must be active and the mobile app should be used.

The parking system takes charge of the vehicle's steering, gear changes, acceleration and braking ››› ⓘ, ››› ⚠.

Function button on the screen of the infotainment system.

**Functions available for remote parking with the automatic parking system plus.**

- Select and change the parking mode.
- Drive to the appropriate parallel or bay parking space.
- Manoeuvring out of a suitable parallel or bay parking space.

In the case of a parallel parking space, for safety reasons, the driver and other occupants or pets must be positioned out of the way of the vehicle's manoeuvres.

**Remote parking functions available with the automatic parking system with remote memory function (My CUPRA App)**

- Parking in a space that has been saved in the infotainment system.
- Close the windows by pressing and holding the "Close windows" button in the App.

The driver must monitor the area around the vehicle at all times ››› ⚠.

Please note that automatic braking may occur if there are obstacles in the vehicle's path or if a dangerous situation arises ››› page 212, *Automatic brake operation*.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The automatic parking system Plus with remote parking is no substitute for the driver's attention and only works within the limits of the system. The parking system cannot detect all driving situations and may not react at all or may react with a delay or in an undesired manner. If the driver does not pay attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.**

- **Always pay proper attention and do not rely solely on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.**
- **Carefully observe the remote parking process from outside the vehicle and cancel the parking in the CUPRA App if a dangerous situation arises.**
- **Only park/unpark the vehicle if you hold a valid driving licence.**
- **Follow the traffic regulations of the country you are in.**
- **Leave the driver seat only when the vehicle asks you to do so.**
- **Do not use the parking system in parking spaces without structural boundaries (for example, nearby bodies of water, riverbanks or embankments without barriers).**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The system is only capable of a limited response to sudden changes in external conditions. Collisions with other road users may occur.**

- **Do not use the parking system when traffic speeds are in excess of 50 km/h (30 mph).**
- **Always keep a safety distance of at least one vehicle length at junctions.**
- **Do not perform automatic parking from the other side of the road or across several lanes.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The vehicle may roll or move into the path of oncoming traffic, which could lead to accidents with damage to the vehicle and serious or fatal injuries.**

- **Do not stand in the path of the vehicle.**
- **Carefully observe the parking process and the traffic and cancel the parking in the CUPRA App if a dangerous situation arises.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The parking process cannot be carried out correctly if the roadway is slippery; the vehicle may skid. This can lead to accidents with damage to the vehicle and serious injuries.**

- **Do not use the parking system to park on frozen or icy roads.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The parking system may suggest parking spaces that are not suitable for the parking process due to a lack of boundaries or due to adjacent objects. This can cause damage to the vehicle.**

- **Do not park next to protruding objects, for example, loading ramps and parked trailers, or under overhanging objects.**
- **Pay close attention to the parking process in multi-storey car parks where the parking space is surrounded by pillars.**

## CUPRA remote parking app

The CUPRA app for the automatic parking system plus with remote function is available in App Stores ››› ⚠, ››› ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The operation of the vehicle may be restricted if an incompatible mobile phone is used (e.g. delayed reaction of the vehicle during remote parking). This may result in damage to the vehicle and serious injury.**

- **Check compatibility information in your mobile phone's app.**

1. Install and run the My CUPRA App on a compatible mobile phone.
2. Synchronise the mobile phone with the vehicle.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**The remote parking function may not work properly if the mobile phone is damaged (e.g. the touch screen is damaged) or if the functions are restricted (e.g. delayed reactions to operation). This can lead to accidents resulting in vehicle damage and injuries.**

- **Only use a compatible and fully operational mobile telephone.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Technical manipulation by the user may interfere with the remote parking process, which may lead to accidents resulting in vehicle damage and injury.**

- **Do not make any modifications to the software, the mobile phone, its operating system or the vehicle.**

## Synchronising and connecting a mobile

The mobile must be synchronised with the vehicle via Bluetooth®.

To continue using the CUPRA app, the mobile device only needs to be connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth® ››› page 269.

## Driving to and from a parking space

**Prerequisites**

- There is a Bluetooth® connection between the vehicle and the mobile.
- The vehicle key is in the driver's hands.
- *Automatic Parking System Plus:* A car park space has been found and selected in the Infotainment system.
- *Automatic parking system Plus with memory and remote function:* A saved parking process (car park space) has been detected nearby the vehicle.
- The driver must park the vehicle at a distance of no more than 4 metres from the parking space in order to park it remotely ››› ⚠. The driver must never be in the path of the vehicle, as this could result in damage or injury to persons.

### Driving to a car park space

If the function button appears on the screen of the parking system, the parking process can be carried out using the mobile.

1. To park remotely, tap the function button in the infotainment system. The function is activated.
2. Exit the vehicle as soon as possible, as the function is deactivated after a certain amount of time has elapsed. If necessary, take all the vehicle keys with you.
3. Check the driving route and start the parking process with the My CUPRA App ››› ⚠.

   When the parking process is complete, a text message is displayed in the My CUPRA App.

   The electronic parking brake is applied in the vehicle and the vehicle's drive system is deactivated.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The parking process may be interrupted if the driver is too far away from the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Remain in a safe and suitable position in the vicinity of the vehicle.**

### Exiting the parking space

This function is only available for the automatic parking system plus.

1. Open the My CUPRA App.
2. Activate the vehicle's drive system with My CUPRA App.
3. Select the desired parking mode.
4. Check the driving route and start the process for exiting the parking space with the My CUPRA App.
5. When the parking space exit process is complete, take control of the vehicle to continue driving and look at the text messages on the infotainment system ››› ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When exiting a parking space, there is a risk that the vehicle could drive into traffic, which could result in an accident and serious or fatal injuries.**

- **Ensure that the vehicle leaves the parking space only when the traffic situation permits.**

# Reversing assistance system (Reversing Assist)

## Introduction

Reversing Assist helps with reversing out of narrow parking spaces, garages or lanes.

The system continuously records the last section driven forwards over a certain distance, allowing that route to be repeated when reversing if necessary.

While the driver controls the accelerator and brake, the system automatically takes care of the steering.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The assistant only works at low speed. If you drive too fast, a notice will be displayed and the system will deactivate.**
- **The assistant ends the aid when it reaches the end of the recorded route. At that moment, or if the vehicle requests it, you must take control of the steering wheel and brake if necessary.**

**Note**

**The route the system can memorise is approximately 50 metres.**

## Using reverse assist

To activate reverse assist, you must first have driven a few metres forwards at low speed so that the system can memorise the route.

### Activating the assistant

1. Stop the vehicle and select reverse gear.
2. Press the button in the infotainment system.
3. Take your hands off the steering wheel and tap **Start**.

4. Observe the trajectory and, if traffic permits, accelerate gently. A notice will appear in the infotainment system when the assistant is operating and guiding the vehicle.

The vehicle will automatically follow the same path driven forwards, while the driver controls the reversing speed. The screen shows the remaining distance and the progress of the recorded route.

**Note**

**If you reach the desired location sooner, you can cancel the assistant at any time by taking control of the steering wheel.**

### Interrupt or cancel the assistant

Reverse assist can be stopped or switched off in the following situations:

- If the system is switched off.
- If the direction of travel is changed with the gear selector.
- If the steering wheel is moved.
- If the driver door is opened.
- If too much time passes.
- If Electronic Stability Control (ESC) intervenes.
- If any of the related systems fail, such as park assist.
- If the vehicle deviates too far from the previously recorded path.

When this happens, a notice will appear in the infotainment system. Depending on the situation, a message will also be shown explaining the reason and how to solve it.

If the assistant switches off by itself, you must take control of the vehicle.

In some cases, the manoeuvre can be reactivated by tapping the **Start** button or the button in the infotainment system.

# Reverse Assist (Rear View Camera)

## Introduction

A camera on the rear bumper aids the driver when reverse parking or manoeuvring >>> page 178.

The camera image is viewed together with orientation lines projected on the Infotainment System display. Part of the bumper can be seen at the bottom, which can be used by the driver as a reference point.

### Requirements

To park with reverse assist, the following requirements must be met:

- Do not exceed a speed of approx. **15 km/h (9 mph)**.
- Parking space width: **vehicle width + 0.10 m** (including exterior mirrors).

To display a real image, the following requirements must be met:

- The luggage compartment rear door is closed.
- The surroundings are on a flat surface.
- The vehicle should not be loaded very heavily at the rear.

**WARNING**

- **Reverse assist cannot precisely calculate the distance from obstacles and the limits of the system cannot be overcome, hence its negligent use may cause serious accidents and injuries if used without due care. The driver should be aware of his/her surroundings at all times to ensure safe driving.**
- **The camera lens expands and distorts the field of view and displays the objects on the screen in a way that is different from reality. Distance perception is also distorted.**
- **Due to the screen resolution or light conditions, some items may be blurry or not displayed at all. Take care with thin posts, fences, railings or trees that might not be seen on the screen and could damage the vehicle.**
- **Reverse assist has blind spots where it cannot see people or objects. Monitor the vehicle's surrounding area at all times.**

- **The system is not a replacement for driver awareness. Supervise the parking manoeuvre and the vehicle's surrounding area at all times.**
- **Do not be distracted from the traffic by looking at the screen.**
- **The images are only two-dimensional. Protruding objects or holes in the road, for example, are more difficult to detect or may not be seen at all.**
- **Vehicle load modifies the representation of the guide lines. The width represented by the lines decreases with vehicle load. Pay special attention to the surroundings when the inside of the vehicle or the luggage compartment are loaded.**
- **In the following situations, objects or other vehicles appear to be further away or closer than they actually are. Pay special attention:**
  - **If moving from a flat surface to a slope and vice-versa.**
  - **If the vehicle is heavily loaded.**
  - **When the vehicle approaches objects that are not on the ground surface or that protrude from it. These objects may be outside the camera angle when reversing.**

**Note**

- **It is important to take great care and pay special attention if the driver is not familiar with the system.**
- **The reverse assist reference lines disappear when the rear lid is open.**

## Connecting and disconnecting

### Connect the reverse assist

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system select P .

### Disconnect the reverse assist

- Drive forward at a speed of at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

## Shown on the display

The system's functions and representations may vary depending on the equipment.

To exit the wizard, press the function button P or any other key on the Infotainment system.

### Reverse assist functions and symbols

When the reverse assist is connected, you can make adjustments using the function buttons. Some adjustments are equipment-dependent.

### Guide lines

*Red horizontal line:* safety distance to the rear of the vehicle.

*Copper side lines:* vehicle projection (approx. full vehicle width) on the roadway.

## Angle parking

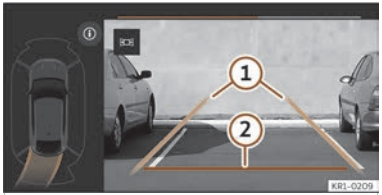



**Fig. 149** On the infotainment screen: parking with Reversing Assist.

① Vehicle extension over the roadway.

② Safety distance to the rear of the vehicle.

**Parking**

- In the infotainment system select P before passing the selected parking space.
- Position the vehicle in front of the parking space.

- Reverse, turning the steering wheel so that the copper-coloured lines enter the parking space. The lines must match the side boundary lines of the parking space.
- Stop the vehicle when the red line reaches the rear boundary of the parking space.

## Troubleshooting

**The system behaves differently than expected**

There can be several causes:

- The camera is dirty ›››  page 347. In addition to dirt and snow, camera visibility can be reduced by detergent residue or any type of coating.
- The system requirements must be met ›››  page 230.
- The camera is covered with water.
- The vehicle has some type of damage in the camera area, e.g. due to a parking impact.
- The field of view of the camera is blocked by an accessory, e.g. a bicycle carrier system.
- Changes have been made to the paint in the camera area, or structural modifications have been made to a component such as the running gear.

**Camera with no visibility, fault message, the system disconnects**

- Clean the camera or remove any stickers or accessories from it ›››  page 347.
- Check for visible damage.

**Possible solution**

- Temporarily disconnect the system.
- Check if one of the causes indicated above has occurred.
- Once the source of the problem has been eliminated, the system may be reconnected.
- If the system still behaves unpredictably, have it checked by a specialised workshop.

# Peripheral view system (Top View Camera)

## Introduction

Using 4 cameras, the system generates a representation that is shown on the infotainment system display. The cameras are located on the radiator grille, the exterior mirrors and the rear lid.

The functions and representations of the Area View system may vary depending on whether or not the vehicle has ParkPilot.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The image from the cameras does not make it possible to calculate the distance to the obstacles (people, vehicles, etc.) precisely, so using them could cause serious accidents and injury.**

- **The camera lenses augment and distort the visual field and the objects on the screen are seen differently and imprecisely.**
- **Certain objects may not be shown or may not be shown very clearly, for example, posts or thin rails, due to the screen resolution or if light conditions are insufficient.**
- **The cameras have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The smart technology incorporated into the Top View Camera system cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics and it only works within the limits of the system. The greater convenience provided by the Area View system should never tempt you to take any risk that may compromise safety. If used negligently or involuntarily, it may cause serious accidents and injuries. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **Do not be distracted from the traffic by looking at the screen.**
- **Monitor the area around the vehicle at all times, since the cameras do not capture small children, animals and certain objects in all situations.**
- **The system will probably be unable to represent all areas clearly.**

**NOTICE**

- **The camera images are only two-dimensional. Due to a lack of spatial depth, objects that jut out or holes on the road, for example, are more difficult to detect or may not be seen at all.**
- **In certain circumstances, the camera does not capture objects such as beams, fences, posts or thin trees, which could damage the vehicle.**
- **The system displays the auxiliary lines and boxes regardless of the vehicle's surroundings and whether or not objects are detected. The driver is responsible for determining that the vehicle will fit in the parking space.**

## Area View system

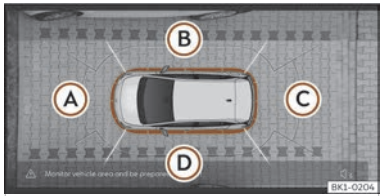



**Fig. 150** Area View system display: top view.

There are four different views to choose from ››› **Fig. 150**:

Ⓐ Front camera area

Ⓑ Right camera area

Ⓒ Rear camera area

Ⓓ Left camera area

Function buttons:

Depending on the equipment: switch the Park Pilot sound on and off.

The top view is generated by combining the images from all the cameras ››› **Fig. 150**. The top view can be selected by pressing the vehicle inside the zone.

The system will automatically switch between front and rear camera view according to the direction of travel.

Press on the different areas ››› **Fig. 150** Ⓐ to Ⓓ of the top view or reduced top view to select and set the corresponding view, which will be highlighted in orange.

### Conditions necessary for the use of the Area View system

- The doors and the rear lid must be closed.
- The image must be reliable and clear. For this reason, for example, the camera lens must be clean.
- The area around the vehicle must be clearly and totally visible.
- The area for parking or manoeuvring should be a flat surface.
- The vehicle should **not** be loaded very heavily at the rear.
- The driver must be used to the system.
- There should be no damage to the vehicle in the camera area. If the position or installation angle of the cameras have been changed, e.g. after a rear-end collision, the system should be checked by a specialised workshop.

### Special characteristics

The images on the area view system cameras are only two-dimensional. Due to a lack of spatial depth, it is difficult or impossible to make out on-screen any potholes in the ground, objects jutting out from the ground or parts protruding from other vehicles.

Situations in which the objects or other vehicles appear to be further away or closer than they really are:

- When moving from a horizontal plane to a slope.
- When moving from a slope to a horizontal plane.
- If the vehicle is heavily loaded at the rear.
- If the vehicle approaches protruding objects. These objects may be outside the cameras' angle of visibility.

**Note**

**To become familiar with the system and its functions, CUPRA recommends that you practice handling the Area View system in an area where there is not too much traffic or in a car park.**

## Connecting and disconnecting

### Connecting

- Select reverse gear.
- **OR:** in the infotainment system select P .

### Switching off

- Drive forward at a speed of at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- **OR:** press the P function button.

## Views of the peripheral vision system (modes)

The red lines indicate a distance of approx. 40 cm away from the vehicle.

### Top views (bird's eye view)

*Main mode*:

The vehicle and its immediate vicinity seen from above are shown. Depending on the equipment, the ParkPilot's path may also be displayed.

### Front camera views (front view)

*Cross traffic*.

This visualization helps to monitor traffic to the left, front and right of the vehicle and can be used, for example, when exiting garages or narrow exits

*Angle parking*.

The area in front of the vehicle is shown. Orientation lines are shown to give guidance.

### Side camera views (side view)

*Right and left sides*.

The areas located directly to the side of the vehicle seen from above are represented in order to navigate possible obstacles more precisely.

### Rear camera views (rear view)

*Angle parking*.

The area behind the vehicle is shown. Auxiliary lines are shown to give guidance.

*Cross traffic*.

This visualization helps to monitor traffic to the left, front and right of the vehicle and can be used, for example, when exiting garages or narrow exits.

# Rear Cross Traffic Alert

## How it works

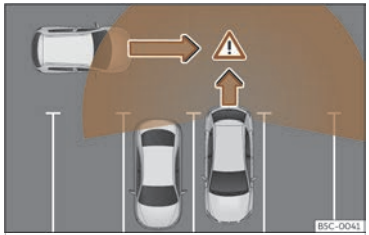



**Fig. 151** Park assist diagram: detected area around the vehicle that is driving off.

Park Assist uses the radar sensors on the rear bumper >>> page 177 to monitor traffic crossing behind the vehicle as it reverses out of a parking bay, or as it is being manoeuvred, for example in very low visibility conditions.

When the system detects a relevant vehicle on the road that is approaching the rear of the vehicle >>> **Fig. 151**, an audio alarm may sound if the vehicle is sufficiently relevant.

In addition to the audio alarm, the driver is also informed by means of a visual signal on infotainment system display. This signal is displayed in the form of a coloured strip at the back of the image of the vehicle on the infotainment system display. This strip displays the side of the vehicle towards which traffic is approaching in a cross-wise direction[1].

### Automatic braking to reduce damages

>>> page 212.

### Connecting and disconnecting

Exit Assist can be switched on and off in Park Assist **settings**.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The smart technology incorporated into the rear cross traffic alert cannot overcome the limits imposed by the laws of physics; it only works within the limits of the system. The park assist function should not tempt you into taking any risks. The system is not a replacement for driver awareness.**

- **The system should never be used in limited visibility conditions or complicated traffic, e.g., in high-traffic areas or when crossing multiple lanes.**
- **Be sure to always be aware of the vehicle's surroundings, since the system often fails to detect things such as bicycles or pedestrians.**
- **The rear cross traffic alert itself will not brake the vehicle to a complete stop.**

# Exit Warning

## How it works

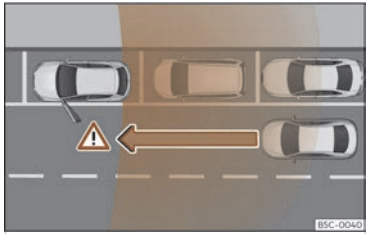



**Fig. 152** Illustrated example.

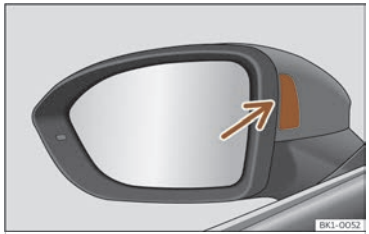



**Fig. 153** On the mirror: warning lamp.

[1] It is only displayed if the vehicle is equipped with a parking system.

The door opening warning (Exit Warning) warns occupants of a possible collision when opening the door when the vehicle is stationary.

The system monitors, within the limits of the system itself, the rear and side environment of the vehicle using the rear sensors >>> page 177. It detects moving objects that approach from behind, such as cars >>> Fig. 152.

If a critical situation is detected when opening the door, an audible warning will be emitted by the loudspeaker in the relevant door. The side assist control lamp on the side of the corresponding door will also flash >>> Fig. 153. If the door has already been opened and another road user has been detected in a critical situation, the control lamp of the lane departure warning on the corresponding side will light up permanently.

The brightness of the door opening assistant display can be adjusted by accessing the **"Side Assist" lane change system** menu.

When you want to access the vehicle for the first time, with the doors closed and locked, the function will be available 3 minutes after the first opening of any of the doors. The function will continue to be available as long as the vehicle has the ignition connected and is not moving.

After switching off the ignition, the function will remain available for approximately 3 minutes.

### Connecting and disconnecting

The door opening assistant can be switched on and off by accessing the **Assistants** menu in the infotainment system. It can also be found in the Park Assist **Settings** menu.

When the vehicle is restarted, the last adjustment in the system will remain active.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always pay close attention to the traffic and the surroundings of the vehicle. The door opening warning (Exit Warning) cannot replace the necessary attention to be paid by the vehicle's occupants. Responsibility for opening the doors and exiting the vehicle always lies with its occupants.**
- **The door opening warning (Exit Warning) operates continuously as long as the vehicle ignition is on. Otherwise, the system is deactivated and the lamps light up briefly.**
- **It is possible that the traffic situation is not interpreted correctly the system cannot be aware of all the objects that are approaching, such as pedestrians. Always visually monitor the traffic and the area surrounding the vehicle.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The door opening warning (Exit Warning) is subject to system limits and cannot warn of an imminent collision in all cases:**

- **If your vehicle is too deep in the parking space and the adjacent vehicles hide it.**
- **In certain circumstances, objects or people who approach, e.g. on a bicycle or scooter, are not detected.**
- **The system does not react to stationary objects.**

# Practical equipment

## Storage compartment

### Introduction

Use the storage compartments only for small or light items.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Objects inside the vehicle that are not secured could be thrown across the vehicle interior in the event of sudden braking or manoeuvring. This may cause severe injuries as well as loss of control of the vehicle.**

- **Do not carry animals or sharp, hard or heavy items in open storage compartments of the vehicle, on the dashboard or on the cover behind the rear seats, or inside pieces of clothing or bags inside the vehicle.**
- **Keep the storage compartments closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Do not hang garments weighing more than 2.5 kg (approx. 5.5 lb) on the vehicle's coat hooks. Never leave heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of these pieces of clothing.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If you leave lighters inside the vehicle, they might be damaged or lit inadvertently. This could lead to severe burns and damage to the vehicle.**

- **Before moving a seat, make sure there are no lighters in the moving part area of the vehicle.**
- **Before closing a storage compartment, make sure there are no lighters in the closing area.**
- **Never leave a lighter inside a storage compartment or any other surface of the vehicle as it could ignite due to the high temperatures on such surfaces, particularly during the summer.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **Do not store heat- or cold-sensitive objects, food or medicines in the vehicle interior. Heat and cold could damage them or render them useless.**
- **Objects made from transparent materials left inside the vehicle, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction pads stuck to the windows can concentrate sunlight and damage the vehicle.**

### Glove compartment

**Fig. 154** On the passenger side: glove compartment.

#### Opening and closing the glove compartment

*Opening:* Pull the handle ››› **Fig. 154** and open the glove compartment.

*Closing:* Press the glove compartment upwards.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the glove compartment is left open, the risk of severe injuries being caused in the event of an accident, sudden braking or manoeuvring increases.**

- **Always keep the glove compartment closed while the vehicle is in motion.**

## Drink holder

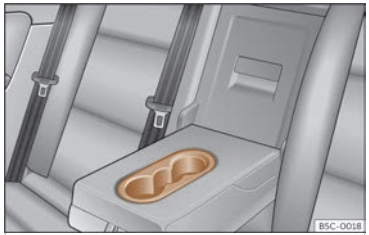



**Fig. 155** In the rear central armrest: drink holder.

The storage compartments of the driver and passenger doors contain a bottle holder.

### Front drink holders

There are two drink holders in the centre console .

### Drink holder in the rear central armrest

*Use:* Lower the central armrest ››› **Fig. 155**.

When the drink holder is no longer in use, lift the armrest again.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrect use of the bottle holders may cause injuries.**

- **Never put hot drinks in the drink holders. In the event of sudden braking or an accident while driving, hot beverages in the bottle holders might spill and cause burns.**
- **Ensure that no bottles or other objects are dropped in the driver footwell while driving, as they could get under the pedals and obstruct their working.**
- **Never place glasses, food or other heavy objects in drink holders. These heavy objects may be thrown across the vehicle interior in the event of an accident and cause serious injuries.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Closed bottles may explode inside the vehicle due to cold or heat.**

- **Never leave closed bottles in the vehicle if the temperature inside is very high or very low.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Do not leave open cans in the drink holders when the vehicle is in motion. If the drink is spilled (e.g. due to sudden braking) it may damage the vehicle and its electrical system.**

**ⓘ Note**

**The elements inside the drink holders can be extracted for cleaning.**

# Power sockets

## Introduction

Electrical equipment can be plugged in to the vehicle's sockets.

The devices must be in a perfect state of repair. Do not use defective devices.

The 12 volt power socket will only work with the ignition on.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Improper use of the sockets or electrical devices could lead to a fire and cause serious injuries.**

- **Please ensure that children are never left unsupervised inside the vehicle. The sockets and the devices connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched on.**
- **If electrical devices overheat, switch them off immediately and disconnect them from the power supply.**

**NOTICE**

- **To avoid damaging the electrical system, never connect electrical devices that supply power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to 12-volt sockets to charge the 12-volt battery.**
- **Only use electrical devices that comply with the applicable electromagnetic compatibility directives.**
- **To prevent voltage fluctuations from causing damage, switch off electrical devices before switching the ignition on and off and before switching on the drive system.**
- **Never connect electrical devices that consume more than the specified power to a 12 volt socket. Exceeding the maximum power consumption could damage the vehicle's electrical system.**
- **Observe the instruction manuals of electrical devices!**

**Note**

- **The 12-volt battery is discharged when electrical devices are switched on and the ignition and drive system are also switched on.**
- **Uninsulated devices can interfere with the radio, infotainment system and the vehicle's electronic system.**

## Vehicle power sockets

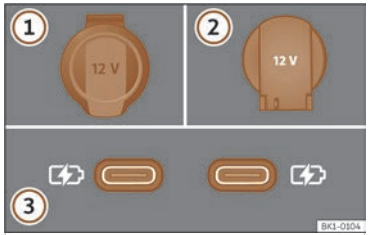



**Fig. 156** Vehicle 12-volt socket.

>>> **Fig. 156**

① / ② 12-volt sockets on the right-hand side of the luggage compartment.

③ USB sockets (Type-C), at the rear of the console, between the front seats.

Make sure that the maximum power of the sockets is not exceeded. The power consumption of the devices is shown on the type plate of the devices.

The continuous output of all of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets is 120 watts in total.

The maximum power of each 12-volt socket is 180 watts in total **with the drive system switched on**.

Depending on the equipment and the country, the vehicle may also have USB ports **exclusively for charging or as a power socket** >>> **Fig. 156** ③.

These USB ports are located at the rear of the console, between the front seats.

**NOTICE**

**If the 12-volt socket is used at full power for longer than the specified time, the fuse may blow.**

- **Never use the 12-volt socket at full power for more than 10 minutes.**
- **If using full power, use a single 12-volt socket.**

# Data transmissions

## Cybersecurity

### Introduction

**What is cybersecurity?**

Cybersecurity refers to measures that reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle functions, data and control units via malware or an attack over the Internet.

**What are connectivity components?**

Control units for data transmissions, interfaces and media and diagnostic connections are connectivity components through which data and information can be exchanged between the vehicle and external devices or the Internet. Connectivity components that are not part of the equipment of all of the vehicles particularly include:

- Connection socket for diagnosis.
- Control unit with an integrated eSIM card (OCU).
- Telephone interface.
- Full Link.
- NFC wireless communication technology.
- Bluetooth Interface®.
- USB (connection).
- Transreceiver module.

The connectivity components are key points in cybersecurity. Connectivity components are also fitted with security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised third parties gaining access to vehicle systems.

**Security mechanisms**

Software and locking mechanisms mounted on the vehicle are being developed continuously. As in the case of computers or mobile phone device operating systems, software and locking mechanisms mounted on the vehicle can also be updated non-periodically. In general, software updates improve the security, stability and speed of execution of vehicle systems that have already been manufactured.

**Minimising risks**

You can contribute to reducing the risk of unauthorized third parties accessing the vehicle systems and their functions:

- Do not use data storage devices, Bluetooth® devices or mobile phone devices that contain manipulated data or malicious software in the vehicle.
- Immediately install the system updates provided by CUPRA.
- Only get vehicle repair and maintenance work done at specialised workshops. CUPRA recommends visiting a CUPRA dealership for this purpose.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The risk of unauthorised third parties gaining access to vehicle functions, data and control units through malware or an attack over the Internet cannot be ruled out despite the vehicle's security mechanisms. If malicious software is introduced into the vehicle, it can influence, deactivate or control the control units and vehicle functions and cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.**

- **If the vehicle operates differently than usual or reacts or behaves strangely, reduce speed immediately (where possible) in a controlled manner and drive to the nearest specialist workshop without delay, or seek the assistance of specialist personnel.**
- **Malicious software can also access data and information stored in control units, the infotainment system, connected data storage devices and paired mobile phone devices.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Computers, data storage devices and mobile phone devices that connect to the Internet or that are used on public or private networks can be infected by manipulated data and malicious software.**

- **Protect your computer, data media and mobile phone devices with a suitable anti-virus program and by taking widespread precautionary measures.**

- Regularly update the appropriate anti-virus software with updates and new versions provided by the corresponding supplier.

# Over-the-air update

## Introduction

**Over-the-air updates allow you to always keep your vehicle up to date, for example for optimising functions and for malware protection.**[1)]

**How can you find out when an over-the-air update is available?**

The available updates are displayed in the infotainment system.

If several updates are available for the vehicle at the same time, one over-the-air update must first be successfully completed before the next one can be performed.

**Note**

**It is in your own interest to complete updates as soon as possible. If the controller repeatedly rejects the over-the-air update, it will be necessary to visit a qualified workshop. CUPRA recommends using a CUPRA dealer.**

**WARNING**

**In very rare cases, a control unit may not function properly after an over-the-air update. Malfunctioning of a control unit and the vehicle can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.**

- **Reduce speed in a controlled manner if the vehicle operates or reacts differently than usual while driving.**
- **Contact a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends using a CUPRA dealer.**

**WARNING**

**If the instrument cluster does not work after an over-the-air update, you will not be able to see instrument cluster displays, warning lights, symbols or text messages. Driving with an instrument cluster that does not work can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.**

- **Do not use the vehicle. Please contact the CUPRA customer care service.**

**NOTICE**

**If special modifications have been made to vehicles outside the scope of CUPRA's responsibility (for example, for emergency service vehicles or taxis), there is a risk that special functions (e.g. the taximeter) may no longer work properly after an over-the-air update.**

- **Consult with your CUPRA dealer before performing an over-the-air update.**

**Note**

- **Measures to improve performance or efficiency (e.g. engine tuning) that have not been incorporated by CUPRA may be deleted after an over-the-air update.**
- **Depending on the equipment, release notes may appear once before or after an over-the-air update. These release notes describe changes to the vehicle status. For release notes and more information on over-the-air updates, please visit the website:**

  **www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-connect/ota-updates**
- **The over-the-air update will not update apps installed in the vehicle.**

## Prerequisites for an over-the-air update

The following prerequisites must be met to allow an update to be downloaded via satellite and to install the update software.

- The over-the-air update function is available in your country.
- The vehicle is located in an area with sufficient mobile reception.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

- Your current privacy configuration allows you to transmit and receive data and information ››› page 250.
- The 12 volt battery is disconnected from the charger and has a minimum charge of 50%.

## Download and install an over-the-air update

### Download costs

Over-the-air updates are downloaded via the factory control unit with eSIM card, and are free of charge. CUPRA covers the cost of the connection.

### Download timing

Downloading takes place automatically without warning and may also happen while driving. When the download is complete, a message will appear to inform you that an over-the-air update is available.

**Note**

**The duration of the download process depends on the quality of the network, the file size and the type of update. The download process may be interrupted. It will resume when the ignition is switched on again.**

### Software installation pre-requisites

- The vehicle is parked safely in accordance with legal requirements and local regulations ››› page 208.
- Previous over-the-air updates have been installed.

### Installing the software from an over-the-air update

Choose a time for the over-the-air update when neither you nor others are likely to be driving the vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The control units will be switched off and will not work while the software installation is in progress. Driving while the control units are switched off or faulty can lead to accidents and fatal injuries.**

- **Install the software in a way that does not interfere with other road users.**
- **Do not use the vehicle during a software installation procedure.**

1. Deactivate the vehicle's drive system and apply the electronic parking brake.
2. Close the bonnet, luggage compartment, all windows and all doors.
3. Confirm the software installation in the Infotainment system.
4. Ensure that all vehicle occupants get out and that there are no animals left inside.
5. Collect all vehicle keys and get out.
6. Lock the vehicle.

### Functional restrictions during software installation

The control units, central computer, functions and displays will not be available during the software installation. Do not use the vehicle or the Infotainment system during installation.

- The system prevents the activation of the vehicle's drive system.
- The high-voltage battery is not charged.
- The AUX-IN diagnostic socket is switched off.
- The anti-theft alarm is switched off.
- The “Safe” security system is switched off.

### After installing the software

After the software installation and before activating the vehicle's drive system, read the message on the Infotainment system or in the Instrument cluster about the complete installation of the software. It can take up to 1 minute for the vehicle to display the status of the over-the-air update.

- The vehicle's drive system can be activated once the software has been successfully installed.
- If the software installation is not successful: ››› page 243, *Troubleshooting*.

## Troubleshooting

**The installation of an over-the-air update has failed.**

- If an update is not installed correctly, an error message will appear in the infotainment system or in the instrument cluster. Observe the corresponding messages and warnings.

**Note**

**The control units will stop working or will not work properly in the event of a critical installation error. The functions and screens will not be available until the error is amended. Do not use the vehicle. In this case, please contact CUPRA customer care.**

**Can I interrupt the installation of an over-the-air update?**

Not possible.

**What happens if the installation of an over-the-air update is interrupted?**

If the installation is interrupted, for example due to damage to the vehicle's electrical system, the control units may not be updated and may not work due to incomplete installation of the update.

# Car2X communication

## Introduction

**How Car2X works[1)]**

Car2X enables communication between several vehicles, as well as between vehicles and the road infrastructure (hereinafter referred to as “participants”) in the vicinity. Communication between the participants is established in accordance with Car2X and WLAN (Wi-Fi) standards, regardless of the manufacturer. Car2X only works in some countries.

When Car2X is connected, data are transmitted permanently between the participants, regardless of whether their vehicles are in online or offline mode.

To prevent misuse and to sign Car2X data with changing IDs, Car2X data transmitters must have valid certificates. This means that each of the recipients can check that the Car2X data are authentic and that they come from a legitimate participant.

The vehicle’s own certificates can only be renewed automatically in online mode.

To update the Car2X certificates to ensure that Car2X remains active, activate the Online mode in the vehicle at least once a month.

Continuously changing provisional Car2X data IDs minimises the probability that the data that is sent can be linked to you personally.

**Meaning of the symbol**

Indicates that the connected Car2X also sends and receives data in Offline mode.

**Data transmissions**

When Car2X is connected, the following data are sent and received via the Car2X antennas:

- Vehicle data such as speed.
- Position data.
- Data about incidents, e.g. accidents.

**Car2X distinguishing element**

If you can switch on Car2X communication in **Privacy settings** in the infotainment system, this means that the vehicle is fitted with Car2X technology.

**Note**

**Further information on data processing can be found in the Legal notice menu in the infotainment system and on the CUPRA website.**

[1)] Not available in all markets.

## Car2X limits

### Data exchange

Your vehicle's Car2X only communicates with those participants that are equipped with compatible and operational Car2X technology.

Participants with deactivated, faulty or non-compatible Car2X are not picked up.

### Range

Depending on weather conditions and the surroundings, Car2X participants can communicate within a range of up to approx. 800m. Not all Car2X-based functions use the full possible range.

### Limited operation

Car2X operations may be limited in the following cases:

- Environmental conditions prevent the participant from receiving data.
- The use of a trailer or accessories added to the vehicle may prevent the participant from receiving data.
- The incident in question is not picked up as such by participants.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Car2X cannot replace the driver's attention and works only within the limits of the system. Car2X cannot detect all hazardous situations and may fail to warn or give a delayed warning. If you rely solely on Car2X technology, you risk causing an accident and serious or even fatal injuries.**

- **Pay attention to the traffic at all times while driving and always be ready to intervene.**
- **Always adapt your driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**

## Switching Car2X on and off

### Connecting

- Access the **Privacy settings** menu.
- Activate Car2X.

### Manual disconnection

- Access the **Privacy settings** menu.
- Disconnect Car2X.

### Automatic disconnection

Car2X may switch off automatically in some cases ››› page 246, *Troubleshooting*. Once the reason that it switched off automatically has been rectified, Car2X will reconnect automatically.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When Car2X is active, the limit values for electromagnetic radiation outside the vehicle may be exceeded. High limit values of electromagnetic radiation can threaten the health of people with active medical implants such as pacemakers. The Car2X antennas are located on the roof of the vehicle and, if necessary, in the interior mirror triangle on the windscreen.**

- **Outside the vehicle, remain at a distance of 20 cm (8 inches) from the activated Car2X antennas.**
- **Deactivate Car2X immediately if it is suspected of causing interference with an active medical implant (e.g. pacemaker) or any other medical device.**

## Local hazard warning

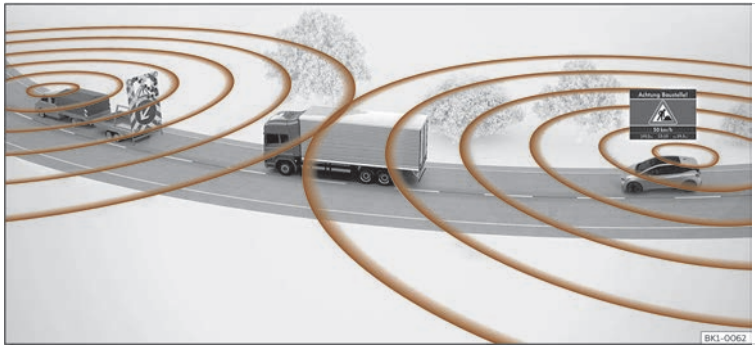



**Fig. 157** Graphical representation: local hazard warning due to daytime or mobile works.

The local hazard warning uses the connected Car2X and gives warnings, depending on the situation, of hazard points in the surrounding area. This can prevent accidents and improve traffic flow.

### Hazard points send data

When other participants receive Car2X data, you may be warned of the following hazard points:

- Accident ahead.
- Emergency vehicle attending. This warning is supplemented by a symbol indicating the direction from which the emergency vehicle is approaching.
- Direction from which the emergency service vehicle is approaching, e.g. from the rear.
- End of queue ahead.
- Intervention of an assistance system on a vehicle that is ahead.
- Stopped or broken down vehicle ahead.
- Works ahead.
- Oncoming driver.
- Reduced visibility.
- People on the road.
- Animals on the road.
- Obstacle on the road.
- Slow moving vehicle in front.
- Strong wind.
- Slippery road surface.

### Display of a local hazard warning

Depending on the type of hazard, speed and the vehicle's deceleration, a warning will be given of a significant hazard as follows:

- Audio warning.
- Information or warning message (symbol in yellow or red depending on the proximity of the hazard).

### Traffic hazard alert setting options

Activating and deactivating the traffic hazard alert:

- Select: **Assistants > Traffic hazard alert > Activate**.

You can adjust the settings to receive warnings only for critical hazards. To do this, you must deactivate warnings with an advance warning level.

- Select: **Assistants > Traffic hazard alert > Advance warning level**.

### Hide the displayed hazard warning

Press the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Ignoring hazard warnings can result in accidents and serious injury.**

- **Never ignore hazard warnings.**

## Troubleshooting

### Car2X switches off automatically

- Car2X is not allowed in the country you are driving in.
- The vehicle has been offline for a long time and therefore the certificates have not been updated. Configure the privacy settings so that an Internet connection is established and certificates can be updated.
- There is a fault in the system. Contact a specialised workshop.

### No Car2X data is displayed

- Car2X has limited operation.
- There are no participants sending data in the surrounding area.
- There are participants sending data in the surrounding area, but they are not relevant to your vehicle.
- The Car2X antennas are blocked by accessories or parts that cover them. Keep the area surrounding the Car2X antennas free of obstacles.
- Data exchange between participants is reduced or impossible due to weather conditions.
- The driver has already reacted to the hazardous situation ahead.

# CUPRA CONNECT

## Introduction

Access CUPRA CONNECT[1] digital services by connecting your vehicle to the Internet. A description of the available services can be found on the Internet at:

https://www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-connect

To use CUPRA CONNECT, you have to activate the services by concluding a CONNECT contract with SEAT, S.A., which may be subject to usage time limitations, depending on the country.

Both the CUPRA CONNECT Gen5 service portfolios offered by CUPRA and individual services may be modified, cancelled, deactivated, reactivated, renamed and extended, even without prior notification.

The implementation and availability of all CUPRA CONNECT services and service portfolios may vary by country, as well as by vehicle and its equipment.

[1] Not available in all markets.

### Description of services

Before running CUPRA CONNECT services, read and take into account the description of the corresponding services. Descriptions are updated non-periodically and are available in the My CUPRA App and at www.cupraofficial.com.

- Always use the most up-to-date version of the corresponding service description.

**⚠ WARNING**

**In areas with insufficient mobile phone and GPS coverage, emergency calls and phone calls will not be connected and data cannot be transmitted.**

- **Change location if possible.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The vehicle may be damaged by factors outside CUPRA's control, specifically including:**

- **Misuse of mobile terminals**
- **Data loss during transmission.**
- **Unsuitable or defective third party applications.**
- **Malicious software on data storage devices, computers, tablets or mobile phones.**

## Services portfolio

The initial service assignment shown here represents the maximum possible volume. The maximum possible volume is only available on a few vehicle models. During the useful life of the vehicle, you can change the assignment shown here.

After activating service management in the infotainment system, you can check whether services are available for the vehicle and what services they are >>> page 249.

In some countries and in the event of a contract renewal, the services offered may be combined differently than indicated here.

CUPRA CONNECT's voice recognition or search technology does not recognise or offer results for all words. For example, Google's speech recognition includes a "Safe Search" function, which prevents search results from being displayed if vulgar terms are recognised (even by mistake).

### CUPRA CONNECT services

If you vehicle is fitted with Media System + or Navi System +, your online services package is CUPRA CONNECT. The following services are included[1]:

- Breakdown call.
- Customer care.
- Online vehicle maintenance.
- Online system update.
- Customisation.
- Remote unlock.
- Vehicle status.
- Online map update.
- Natural voice control for destinations and addresses.
- Internet radio.
- Online route import.
- Online destination import.
- Remote charging and air conditioning.
- Parking position.
- Data package.
- Online Store.
- Online navigation: Dynamic Points of Interest.
- Battery protection.
- CUPRA Public and private charging (including Plug&Charge).
- Solar charging.
- Bidirectional charging.
- Electric route planner.
- Search for public car parks.
- Search for charging stations.
- Online route calculation.

[1] Maximum possible volume. Not available on all vehicles or in all countries. Some services will arrive via a Software update. Keep an eye out for new updates in the notifications centre. Some services may be subject to special equipment.

- Online traffic information.
- Traffic risk information.
- Apps in the infotainment system: CUPRA Charging Map, Connected Travel Assist, Park & Pay.

The above services may be subject to a subscription period. Availability depending on the vehicle's equipment.

**Note**

**Check My CUPRA App to see which services were included when you signed the contract. This also applies to the possible individual CUPRA CONNECT options. You can also view information about the available services at:**

***https://www.cupraofficial.com/owners/cupra-connect***

## Configuring the CUPRA ID

In order to use the mobile online services you need a CUPRA ID.

You can register using the My CUPRA App. If you don't have the application yet, download it by scanning the QR code.

iOS | Android

In My CUPRA App you can create a user account, consult the description of services and remotely manage the electric vehicle's battery charging and air conditioning, among other aspects.

## Activating CUPRA CONNECT

The following steps are required to activate CUPRA CONNECT:

1. Switch on the ignition and the infotainment system.
2. Activate the Online mode >>> page 250.
3. Select: ⊞ > **Users** and press the button ⊕ to add a new user.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions to download the My CUPRA App.
5. Follow the instructions to create your CUPRA ID.
6. Accept the Privacy Policy.
7. Check your personal details.
8. Enter the vehicle identification number (VIN) to add the vehicle to your user account.
9. Select your CUPRA CONNECT online services pack.
10. Open the app and scan the new QR code generated by the infotainment system.

After scanning the QR code and transferring the data, the CUPRA CONNECT online services are activated.

For further information, CUPRA recommends adding your favourite workshop to the My CUPRA App.

To make activation easier, watch the video that gives a step-by-step explanation of the registration process: You can find it on CUPRA's official website and/or on the brand's official YouTube channel.

## Legal provisions

When using CUPRA CONNECT services, information is transferred and processed online through the vehicle. Such data can also provide (at least indirectly) information about the driver in question, for example, driving behaviour and location. As a contracting party in the CUPRA CONNECT contract with SEAT, S.A., you must ensure that when your vehicle is used by other drivers (for example, family or friends), data protection and personal rights

are respected. Therefore, you must inform drivers in advance that the vehicle transfers and receives data online, and that you can access such data.

Failure to take this obligation to inform into account can infringe certain rights of the occupants.

### Personal information

CUPRA protects your personal data and only uses them as permitted by law, or if you have given your consent to a certain use. Detailed information on data processing in connection with the CUPRA CONNECT services can be found in the Data Protection Declaration, the current version of which can be accessed on the CUPRA website.

### Permanent transfer of the vehicle

If the vehicle has been purchased used or someone else has left the vehicle to you for permanent use, CUPRA CONNECT may already be activated and the previous primary user may still be able to access the data registered via CUPRA CONNECT and control certain functions of your vehicle.

To remove the previous primary user, reset the infotainment system to factory settings (⚙ > **Restore factory settings**). Once reset, you can register as the vehicle's primary user.

## Deactivating CUPRA CONNECT services

The following functions are available to activate and deactivate the CUPRA CONNECT services:

- Allow or prevent data transmissions through the infotainment system ››› page 250, *Privacy mode*.

You can run the relevant services again after cancelling their deactivation.

**Note**

**The services required by law and their data transmission cannot be disconnected or deactivated, for example, the emergency call system (eCall).**

## Faults

Even if the prerequisites for the use of CUPRA CONNECT services are met, there may be factors beyond the control of CUPRA that interfere with the execution of such services or prevent them. specifically including:

- Maintenance, repair, deactivation, software update and technical expansion of telecommunication equipment, satellites, servers and data banks.
- Change of the mobile telephony standard for mobile data transmission by the telecommunications service provider, e.g. from LTE or UMTS to EDGE or GPRS.
- Disconnection of an existing mobile phone standard by the telecommunications service provider.
- Interference, disturbance or interruption of mobile and GPS signal reception due to aspects such as high speed driving, solar storms, meteorological influences, topography, jamming equipment and intensive mobile phone use in the radio cells in question.
- When in areas with zero or insufficient mobile telephony or GPS signal. Also, for example, in tunnels, confined areas between very tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- External information from third party suppliers available with limitations, incomplete or incorrect, e.g. representations of maps.
- Countries and regions where CUPRA CONNECT is not offered.

## Service management

Depending on technical feasibility, the infotainment system may have service administration. If you have service administration, you can do the following:

- Check which CUPRA CONNECT services are currently available in the vehicle.
- View the number of CUPRA CONNECT services that are activated or deactivated.

Get more information at: My CUPRA App.

**Note**

**If you deactivate all CUPRA CONNECT services, the vehicle can still transmit emergency call (eCall) data.**

# Privacy mode

## Introduction

With the "Privacy" function, data transmissions between the vehicle and the Internet can be allowed or blocked.

Please note that your vehicle is connected by default, so that it can receive remote updates that improve the performance of your vehicle.

Certain information, such as your VIN (vehicle identification number), may be shared with the brand to ensure that each of these campaigns is successful. These updates will require your final confirmation before installation. If you do not wish to receive them, you can change the privacy to "*Offline Mode*" (maximum privacy) in the privacy settings and services >>> page 250.

The desired mode can be set in vehicle settings in the infotainment system.

Data transmission by external devices and their communication with the vehicle **cannot** be blocked using the "Privacy" function.

The services required by law and their data transmission cannot be disconnected or deactivated, for example, the emergency call system (eCall).

**NOTICE**

**Please note that all vehicle users can configure individual settings in the "Privacy" function. These settings may not match those desired by the vehicle owner.**

## Privacy settings

To allow or block data transmissions, activate or deactivate offline mode in the infotainment system.

### Offline Mode activated

The following happens in this mode:

- All CUPRA CONNECT services are deactivated and do not send data
- The integrated modem is deactivated (all vehicle functions that require an Internet connection are deactivated).
- Neither the information nor the data recorded in the control units, such as digital certificates, can be updated. This can affect functions and services or even make them unavailable.
- Legally required services and the emergency call cannot be deactivated and continue to send data.

### Offline mode deactivated (Online mode)[1)]

The following happens in this mode:

- All CUPRA CONNECT services can send and receive data, depending on their user account settings (users can view vehicle position data via the My CUPRA App).
- The integrated SIM is activated (data transmissions are available for all vehicle functions that require an Internet connection).

## Status display

The following symbols indicate the respective data transmission status in the infotainment system.

There is an established Internet connection. Remote functions are disabled from the app. Location is **not** activated.

There is an established Internet connection. Remote functions are disabled from the app. Location is activated.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

There is an established Internet connection. Remote functions are enabled from the app. Location is **not** activated.

There is an established Internet connection. Remote functions are enabled from the app. Location is activated.

No Internet connection (Offline mode).

Indicates that the connected Car2X also sends and receives data in Offline mode.

***no icon*** No connectivity, no services available.

**Note**

**Even with Offline Mode activated, services relevant to safety or those required by law may briefly activate the Online mode.**

## Effects on the vehicle's online functions

When data transfers are limited, the following online functions of the vehicle cannot be executed:

### Online vehicle functions

- Online voice control.
- Update of online maps.
- Online traffic information.
- System update.
- CUPRA CONNECT registration and activation.

# User administration

## User role description

Both the owner of the vehicle and any other user who has access to the vehicle will be authorised to order and activate CUPRA CONNECT services for a specific vehicle.

Each vehicle has only one primary user, plus one anonymous guest user and up to three additional and/or local users. The different roles are described below:

- **Main user:** the first online user who registers in the vehicle, places the order and activates the CUPRA CONNECT services is automatically assigned the role of main user. He or she is the only one that can make online purchases (data and other services). He or she has access to all vehicle services.
- **Additional user:** up to 3 additional users can be added in a vehicle whose services have been activated by a main user. Through the vehicle's infotainment system, the additional user has access to the same services as the main user, except those that require making a purchase. Additional users do not have access to in-App services.
- **Guest user:** the only role that is always present in the vehicle for cases where you do not wish to sign in with one of the available roles. When selecting this mode for the first time, or each time you switch from a primary or additional user to a guest user, data is shared online so that remote updates can be received. If you do not wish to receive them, you can change the privacy to "*Offline Mode*" (maximum privacy) in the privacy settings >>> page 250.
- **Local user:** A role not linked to a CUPRA ID, existing only locally in the vehicle. This role only allows saving the user's personal parameters in the car.
- **Incognito mode:** The customer can select this mode from the user menu and, while it is active, any changes made in the vehicle will not be saved. You can exit incognito mode from the user menu or by switching the vehicle off.

## Create and delete a user role

### Create a user

Register for CUPRA CONNECT. You can then sign a CUPRA CONNECT contract with CUPRA, add the vehicle to your user account and follow the steps in the app to register yourself as a new main user or as an additional user.

### Delete a user

To delete the main user, restore the factory settings of the infotainment system. If you want to delete an additional user, the main user may delete it manually, or the additional user can delete himself/herself.

**Note**

**If the infotainment system is restored to factory settings in offline mode, the user cannot be deleted on the server.**

# Wired connections

## USB connection

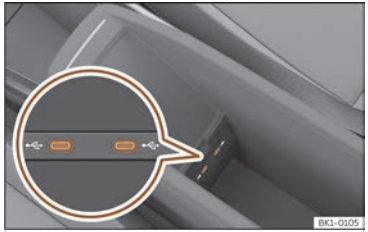



**Fig. 158** Inside front centre armrest: USB input.

The USB input is located inside the centre armrest ››› **Fig. 158**.

# Infotainment system

## First steps

### Introduction

Infotainment functions and settings depend on the country and equipment.

#### Before first use

Before the first use, bear in mind the following points, to take full advantage of the functions and settings offered:

- Observe the basic safety warnings ›››  page 253.
- Restore infotainment to factory settings ›››  page 261.
- Search and store favourite radio stations on the preset buttons so you can tune them quickly.
- Use only suitable audio sources and data media.
- Pair a mobile phone to use phone management through the Infotainment system.
- Use up-to-date maps for navigation.
- Register with CUPRA to execute the corresponding services.

#### Current documentation attached

For using infotainment and its components, take into account the following documentation, together with this instruction manual:

- Supplements to your vehicle's on-board documentation.
- Instruction Manual of the mobile phone device or audio sources.
- Operating instructions for data media and external players.
- Manuals for the Infotainment accessories subsequently installed or used additionally.
- Description of services when running CUPRA services.

### Safety instructions

Some function areas may include links to third-party websites. CUPRA is not the owner of the third-party websites accessible through the links, and assumes no liability for their content.

Some function areas may include outside information from third-party providers. CUPRA is not responsible for such information being correct, up-to-date or complete, or for ensuring it does not infringe the rights of third parties.

Radio stations and owners of data media and audio sources are responsible for the information they transmit.

Bear in mind that car parks, tunnels, tall buildings, mountains or the operation of other electrical devices, such as chargers, can also interfere with the reception of the radio signal.

Foils or adhesives with metallic layers on the antenna and on the window panes can interfere with radio reception.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The infotainment central computer is interconnected with the control units mounted on the vehicle. Therefore, there is a serious danger of accident and injury if the central computer is repaired or disassembled and reassembled incorrectly.**

- **Never replace the central computer with another one that is used, recycled or from another vehicle at the end of its useful life.**
- **The central computer should only be repaired or disassembled and reassembled at specialised workshops. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.**

**⚠ WARNING**

Any distraction affecting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries. Reading the information on the screen and managing the infotainment system can distract your attention from traffic and cause an accident.

- Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.

**⚠ WARNING**

Connecting, inserting or removing an audio source or data media while driving can distract your attention from the traffic and cause an accident.

**⚠ WARNING**

Select volume settings that allow you to easily hear signals from outside the vehicle at all times (e.g. emergency services sirens).

- Hearing may be impaired if using too high a volume setting, even if only for short periods of time.

**⚠ WARNING**

The following circumstances may result in an emergency call, phone call or data transmission not being made or being interrupted:

- When in areas with zero or insufficient mobile telephony or GPS signal. Also in tunnels, confined areas between very tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- When in areas with sufficient mobile phone or GPS signal, the telephony network of the telecommunications provider has interference or is not available.
- When the vehicle components necessary to make emergency calls, phone calls and to transmit data are damaged, do not work or do not have sufficient electrical power.
- When the battery of the mobile phone device is discharged or its charge level is insufficient.

**⚠ WARNING**

In some countries and some telephone networks it is only possible to make an emergency call, if a mobile telephone device is connected to the telephone interface of the vehicle, inside which there is an “unlocked” SIM card with sufficient balance to make calls and with sufficient network signal coverage.

**⚠ WARNING**

Read and observe the operating instructions provided by the manufacturer in question when using mobile phone devices, data media, external devices, external audio and multimedia sources.

**⚠ WARNING**

Changing or connecting an audio or multimedia source may cause sudden changes in the volume.

- Lower the volume before connecting or switching to audio or multimedia sources.

**⚠ WARNING**

If mobile phone and radiocommunication devices are used without connection to an external antenna, the maximum electromagnetic radiation levels inside the vehicle might be surpassed, thus posing a risk to the health of the driver and passengers. This is also the case if the external antenna has not been correctly installed.

- Keep a distance of at least 20 centimetres between the antennas of the mobile phone device and an active medical device, such as a pacemaker, as mobile phones might alter the functioning of these devices.
- Do not carry a switched-on mobile phone too close or directly on top of an active medical device, for instance in a chest pocket.

- Immediately turn off the mobile phone if you suspect it is causing interferences in an active medical device or any other medical device.

**⚠ WARNING**

Mobile phones, external devices and accessories that are loose or not properly secured could move around the vehicle interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident and cause damage or injury.

- Place mobile phone devices, external devices and their accessories outside the airbag deployment areas or store them securely.
- Position the connection cables of the audio sources and external devices so that they do not interfere with the driver.

**⚠ WARNING**

The centre armrest may obstruct the driver's arm movements, which could cause an accident and severe injuries.

- Keep the storage compartments of the centre armrest closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

**⚠ WARNING**

If the light conditions are not good and the screen is damaged or dirty, the indications and information displayed on the screen may not be read or be read incorrectly.

- The indications and information displayed on the screen should never induce you to take any risk that compromises safety. The screen is not a replacement for driver awareness.

**⚠ WARNING**

Radio stations can transmit disaster or hazard announcements. The following conditions prevent such notices from being received or issued:

- When you are in areas with insufficient or no radio-signal reception. Also in tunnels, confined areas between very tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- When the frequency bands of the radio station have interference or are not available in areas with sufficient radio signal reception.
- When the speakers and the vehicle components necessary for radio reception are damaged, do not work or do not have sufficient electrical power.

**⚠ WARNING**

Switch off mobile phone devices in areas with a risk of explosion!

**⚠ WARNING**

The driving recommendations and traffic indications shown on the navigation system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Road signs, signalling systems, traffic regulations and local circumstances prevail over driving recommendations and navigation system indications.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Certain circumstances can significantly lengthen both the initially planned duration of the trip and the route to the destination, or even temporarily prevent navigation to it, for example, if a road is closed to traffic.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

In areas where special regulations apply or the use of mobile phones is forbidden, the mobile device in question must be switched off at all times. The radiation produced by a mobile phone device when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction or damage to the equipment.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

If the playback volume is excessive or distorted, the speakers may be damaged.

## Operating indications

- The infotainment system needs a few seconds to start up completely and during that time it does not react to inputs. Only the image of the rear view camera system can be displayed during system start-up.
- The display of all indications and the execution of functions only takes place once the infotainment system has finished booting. The duration of the system boot depends on the number of infotainment functions and may take longer than normal in the event of very high or very low temperatures.
- When using the infotainment system and corresponding accessories, e.g., headphones, bear in mind country-specific regulations and legal provisions.
- The online navigation, online voice control and Internet Radio functions (among others) require the activation of CUPRA CONNECT services (linked to the CUPRA CONNECT PLUS pack) and an Internet connection for the vehicle. Data transmission must not be limited for functions to be performed.
- To use the infotainment system, simply lightly press a button or touch the screen.
- For the correct operation of the infotainment system it is important that it is switched on and that, if necessary, the time and date of the vehicle are set correctly.
- If a function button is missing on the screen, it is not a device defect, but corresponds to the specific equipment of the country or version.
- Some infotainment functions can only be selected when the vehicle is at a standstill. In some countries, the gear selector must also be in parking position **P** or neutral **N**. This is not a malfunction, but is due to compliance with legal requirements.
- Restrictions on the use of devices using Bluetooth® technology may apply in some countries. For further information, contact the local authorities.
- If you disconnect the 12-volt battery, turn on the ignition before restarting the infotainment system.
- If the setup is changed, this may change the display on the screen and in some cases, the infotainment system may behave in a manner different to that described in this instruction manual.
- When the drive system is switched off and the charge level of the vehicle's 12 V battery is low, the infotainment system switches off automatically.
- Ensure that any repairs or modifications that need to be carried out on the infotainment system are carried out by a specialised workshop. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.
- Using a mobile phone device inside the vehicle may cause noise in the speakers.
- On vehicles with park assist, the audio source volume is automatically lowered when reverse gear is selected. The volume reduction can be adjusted.
- Information about the included software and the license conditions can be found in **Settings > Information > Copyright**.
- When selling or lending the vehicle, make sure that all saved data, files and settings have been deleted and, if necessary, external audio sources and data media have been removed. Remember to also restore the factory settings to unlink your CUPRA ID username from the vehicle, as well as your CUPRA CONNECT pack.

**Note**

**You can find more information and tips for using the infotainment system in the Help menu.**

## Trademarks, licenses and copyrights

### Registered trademarks and licenses

Certain terms in this manual bear the symbol ® or ™. These symbols indicate that they are trademarks or registered trademarks. The absence of this symbol, however, does not necessarily mean that the term in question can be used freely.

Other product names are registered trademarks of the respective rights holders.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

- Android Auto™ is a trademark of Google Inc.
- Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.
- iPod®, iPad®, and iPhone® are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.
- MPEG-4 HE-AAC audio coding technology and patents are licensed by Fraunhofer IIS.
- This product is protected by certain Microsoft Corporation industrial and intellectual property rights. The use or commercialization of technology of this type outside the configuration of this product, without a licence from Microsoft or an authorised Microsoft branch is prohibited.

**Copyright**

As a general rule, audio and video files stored on data media and audio sources are subject to intellectual property protection in accordance with the national and international provisions applicable in each case. Please bear in mind all legal provisions!

## Technical data

**Central computer with control and display unit[1)]**

The factory-mounted central computer in the vehicle includes country-specific components and software for connectivity and for the execution of vehicle, comfort and infotainment functions.

The corresponding indications are shown on the control and display unit screen and partly on the instrument cluster.

- Capacitive colour screen
- Using the equipment with:
  - Touch zones. Touch operation.
  - Buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.

**Vehicle and comfort functions**

- Assistants system settings.
- Heating and air conditioning settings.
- Lights and visibility function settings.
- Vehicle comfort settings.
- Parking and manoeuvring settings.

**Note**

**Setting navigation routes and other functions requiring the vehicle's location will be more efficient if you activate the privacy settings to share your location** >>> page 250 **and if you give your consent in the App on your mobile device for it to share your location data.**

**Sound system (basic equipment):**

The factory-fitted entertainment system is equipped as follows:

- Speakers in different locations and with different power levels (watts).
- Internal amplifier depending on the system:
  - 7 speakers: 5 x 20 W

Setting options:

- Equaliser:
  - 4 preset sound modes and 1 user-customisable 5-band equaliser.
- Sound distribution: Balance (left / right) + Fader (front / rear).

[1)] Equipment name: Connect System

- Sound optimisation by zones:
  - Manual (Driver and All).
  - Automatic depending on the seats occupied.
- Auto Level Adjustment: automatic volume control ensures a constant volume level when switching between audio entertainment sources such as radio, USB, Bluetooth, etc.

**Optional sound system**

The infotainment system can be extended with an optional sound system as follows:

- 10 speakers in different locations and with different power levels (watts).
- External Booster amplifier which, in addition to the infotainment system's internal amplifier, provides a total output of 425 W via class-D output stages.
- Independent subwoofer in the luggage compartment.

Setting options:

- Equaliser: 3 preset sound modes and 1 user-customisable 5-band equaliser in parallel to the preset modes. With "Immersion®" surround sound control in any of the modes.
- Sound distribution: Balance (left / right) + Fader (front / rear).
- Sound optimisation by zones:
  - Manual (Driver, Front and All).
  - Automatic depending on the seats occupied.
- Subwoofer volume.
- Auto Level Adjustment: automatic volume control ensures a constant volume level when switching between audio entertainment sources such as radio, USB, Bluetooth, etc.

# Overview and controls

## Infotainment system overview

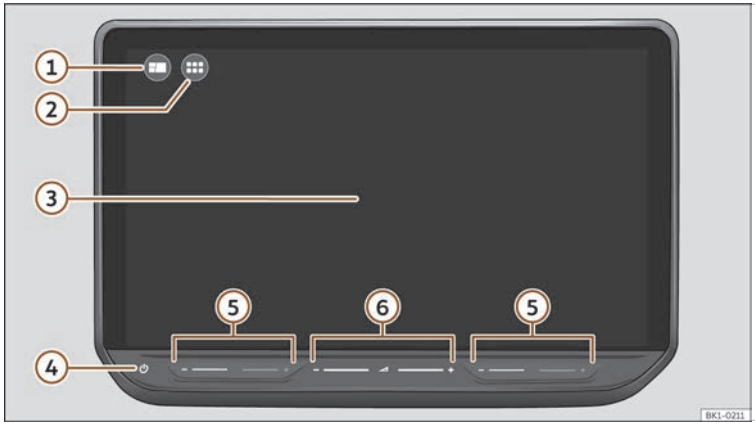



**Fig. 159** Overview: control unit

① HOME button ■■: main menu with widget views.

② MENU button ⠿: main menu in tile mode.

③ Touch screen. The infotainment functions can be used through the screen.

④ On/Off touchpad (to turn the infotainment system on/off).

⑤ Touch zones (to raise and lower the air conditioning temperature).

⑥ Touch zones (to raise and lower the volume).

## Home screen

If an icon is missing on the screen, it is not a device defect, but corresponds to the specific equipment of the country or version.

The following menus can be included as an icon:

### Main menus

The Menu displays and organises apps in a grid to allow easy access and navigation. From this menu, the user can access system apps and functions such as navigation, audio controls, air-conditioning settings, data, etc.

This grid is editable so the user can arrange apps as desired, including creating folders to group multiple apps.

Vehicle >>> page 34

Vehicle assistants >>> page 34

Driving data.

Navigation >>> page 281

Radio >>> page 276, Media >>> page 278

Telephone >>> page 265

Load >>> page 84

Drive Profile >>> page 166

Seats >>> page 146

CUPRA Assistant >>> page 273

Vehicle lights >>> page 133

Settings >>> page 261

Sound

Users

CUPRA Digital Key

Coachmarks

Call Service

Android Auto™

Apple CarPlay™

Store

Legal.

Help

## Managing the infotainment system

Execute the functions and settings with the infotainment controls.

Depending on the equipment, the infotainment system has different controls:

- Touch screen.
- Touch zones outside the screen, for example, Volume (+ -).

### Open the Quick Guide

More information and operating tips can be found in the Infotainment Quick Guide.

- Press **MENU** > **Help**.

### Connecting and disconnecting the infotainment system

The infotainment system turns on when the ignition is switched on, unless it has been manually turned off beforehand.

The infotainment system starts-up with the last set volume, provided that this does not exceed the preset maximum start-up volume.

The infotainment system automatically turns off when the driver's door is opened, provided the ignition has been switched off beforehand.

### Moving objects and adjusting volume

Move objects on the screen to adapt settings, for example, with scrollable buttons or to move the areas of a menu.

Depending on the equipment, menus and displays can be customised.

### Zooming into and out of images or map sizes

*Tip: use your thumb and index finger.*

- Press on the map with both fingers at the same time and leave them on the screen.
- To enlarge views, slowly separate one finger from the other. To reduce views, slowly bring one finger towards the other.

**Note**

**If you turn on the infotainment system manually with the ignition off, it will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.**

**Note**

**As with most state-of-the-art computer and electronic equipment, in certain cases the system may need to be rebooted to make sure that it operates correctly. To do this, if appropriate, press and hold the On/Off button of the infotainment system (** >>> page 259**) for approx. 15 seconds until the CUPRA logo appears on the display.**

### Customising the infotainment system

Customise the top menu or the HOME >>> **Fig. 159** ① view to quickly access your favourite or most frequently used functions.

The main menu contains function buttons for accessing all of the Infotainment apps.

### Configuring customised menus

At the top of the screen you will find shortcuts to customisable system functions. Use the settings to delete or replace them, or change their order.

- Press and hold one of the icons (or press on the icon of an empty position) to display an additional window.
- Select one of the icons from the apps bar.
- Press ✕ to delete an icon.
- Click on an icon in the additional window to replace the value.
- To close the edit mode, press ✕ in the additional window.

## Settings (system and sound)

The selection of possible settings varies depending on the country, the equipment in question and the equipment of the vehicle.

### Modifying settings

The meaning of the following symbols are valid for all system and sound settings.

All changes are automatically applied when the menus are closed.

| | |
|---|---|
| ☑ / ◉ | The setting is selected and activated or connected. |
| ☐ / ○ | The setting is not selected and disabled or disconnected. |
| ∨ | Open a drop-down list. |
| + | Increase a setting value. |
| − | Reduce a setting value. |
| < | Go back step by step. |
| > | Go forward step by step. |
| ⊙ | Change a setting value with the scrollable button without adjusting. |

### Sound settings

- Access the sound settings: ⠿ > 🔊.

In the sound settings there may be the following functions, information and setting options:

- Equaliser.
- Position.
- Volumes.

### System settings

- Access the system settings: ⠿ > ⚙.

In the system settings there may be the following functions, information and setting options:

- Screen.
- Time and date.
- Language.
- Additional keypad languages.
- Units.
- Voice control.
- Wi-Fi.
- Manage mobile devices.
- Restore factory settings.
- System information.
- Copyright.
- Configuration wizard.

## Clean the screen

Remove persistent dirt carefully and without using aggressive cleaning products. To clean the screen we recommend that:

- The infotainment system is switched off.
- Use a clean, soft cloth dampened with water ››› page 345.
- In case of stubborn dirt: moisten with a little water and then wipe off carefully with a clean, soft cloth.

**NOTICE**

**Cleaning the display dry or with unsuitable cleaning agents may damage it.**

- **When cleaning, only press lightly.**
- **Do not use cleaning products that are aggressive or contain solvents. Such products may damage the equipment and darken the screen.**

# Connecting mobile devices

## Introduction

Today, integrating mobile devices with the vehicle's infotainment system has transformed the driving experience.

This connection provides access to functions that improve comfort, safety and entertainment during the journey.

To make the most of these functions, various technologies enable interaction between the mobile and the vehicle:

- **Bluetooth® hands-free:** allows you to make and receive calls without touching the phone, using steering wheel controls or voice commands.
- **Bluetooth® audio:** enables wireless playback of music, podcasts and other content from the mobile to the vehicle's sound system.
- **Apple CarPlay™:** provides advanced iPhone integration with the vehicle, allowing safe use of apps such as Maps, Music and Messages.
- **Android Auto:** offers a similar experience for Android devices, with access to favourite apps optimised for use while driving.
- **WLAN tethering:** connects the vehicle to the internet via the Wi-Fi network generated by the mobile, enabling connected services and real-time data use.

In the following sections you will see how to access the vehicle's Bluetooth® and WLAN hotspot settings to switch these functions on/off and configure them to use the technologies mentioned above.

## Bluetooth®

The vehicle's Bluetooth® allows mobile devices to connect for hands-free calls and wireless audio playback.

The following explains how to access Bluetooth® settings in the vehicle, how to switch it on and configure it to make full use of these functions.

### Bluetooth settings®

In the main menu **System settings > Connections** you will find Bluetooth®, which is used only to switch the vehicle's Bluetooth® on/off and to change the vehicle name.

**Note**

**Ensure Bluetooth® is on so you can perform pairing as described in Manage devices section.**

### Bluetooth® profiles

A maximum of two mobile devices can be connected to Bluetooth® hands-free and a third to Bluetooth® as a media player.

When a mobile phone is connected to the telephone management system, a data exchange takes place via one of the Bluetooth® profiles.

- **Hands-free telephone profile (HFP):** the HFP can be used to manage calls through the infotainment system.
- **Audio profile (A2DP):** This profile allows audio to be transmitted with stereo quality. Other profiles may need to be connected for managing and controlling playback.
- **Phone book access profile (PBAP):** Allows phone book contents to be downloaded from the mobile telephone.
- **Messaging profile (MAP):** It allows short messages (SMS) and emails to be downloaded and synchronised.

## WLAN access point

The vehicle's WLAN hotspot creates an internal Wi-Fi network that users can join by entering the name and password manually or by scanning a QR code to simplify connection.

This network allows in-vehicle devices to access functions such as Android Auto™ and Apple CarPlay™ wirelessly. When a wireless session is started via Bluetooth®, the mobile device connects automatically to the vehicle's WLAN hotspot to complete the connection, facilitating permission exchange and app operation.

In addition, the system offers a function called tethering, which allows you to connect an external device, such as a mobile phone, to share its mobile data connection with the vehicle and with devices connected to its Wi-Fi network. If the vehicle has its own contracted data service, this function is not necessary to provide an Internet connection, as the vehicle will supply data directly.

**Note**

- **There may be a charge for the required data transmission. Due to the high volume of data exchanged, CUPRA recommends the use of a flat rate tariff for data transmission. Mobile phone operators can provide information on this. You can also purchase data plans for your vehicle on the Cubic website:**

  ***https://cupra.cubictelecom.com***

- **Exchanging data packages and purchasing them from third parties may generate additional costs, depending on your mobile phone rate, particularly if you are abroad (for example, roaming rates).**

The following sections explain how to access WLAN hotspot settings to switch the function on/off, change the network name, password and security level, and how to connect using a QR code. They also explain how tethering works and how to connect an external device to share its connection.

### Hotspot settings

In the **Settings > Connections** menu you will find the **Vehicle Hotspot** and **WLAN** menus.

- **Vehicle Hotspot**: hotspot settings and QR connection.
- **WLAN**: allows connection of an external device with mobile data to provide tethering functionality.

### Configure hotspot

In the **Vehicle Hotspot** menu you will find the settings for the internal network. Follow these steps to connect to this network:

1. Activate the wireless network (WLAN) on the device that is to be connected. If necessary, refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.

2. Activate the mobile device assignment in the infotainment system. Press the **Vehicle Hotspot** function button.
3. Enter and confirm the network key displayed on the device.

The following settings can also be changed in Vehicle Hotspot:

- Change network SSID.
- Change network password: network key generated automatically. Press the function button to change the network key manually.
- Change network security.
- Enable data usage.

The WLAN wireless connection is established. To complete the connection, it may be necessary to enter other data into the device.

Repeat this process to connect other devices.

There is also an option to scan a QR code to connect the device directly to the infotainment system's Wi-Fi without entering the password via the **Connections > Vehicle Hotspot > Quick Connection** menu.

In this context, in addition to making a "Quick Connection" you can view the vehicle's WLAN hotspot information such as network name, password and number of connected devices.

**Configure Internet access**

The infotainment system can use the WLAN hotspot of an external device to establish an Internet connection. To make this connection, proceed as follows:

1. Activate and share a wireless hotspot with Internet on the external device. Refer to the manufacturer's instruction manual.
2. Go to the **Settings > Connections > WLAN** menu.
3. Press **Search for network** and select the desired device in the list.

The system preferentially searches for devices in the 5 GHz/2.4 GHz Wi-Fi band. If no results are found, it is advisable to check the device's access point settings.

- If necessary, enter the network key of the device in the infotainment system and confirm with **Ok**.

The WLAN (wireless) connection is established. To complete the connection, it may be necessary to enter other data into the device.

**Note**

**Due to the large number of devices on the market, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all functions.**

**Wi-Fi technical specifications**

- Wi-Fi compliant with IEEE 802.11b/g/n/ax and IEEE 802.11a/n/ac/ax
- Transfer at 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz.
- Apple CarPlay™ and Android Auto™ over Wi-Fi.
- Simultaneous connection of up to 8 Wi-Fi devices.
- Two Wi-Fi modes at the same time:
  - Access point.
- Internet connection through Wi-Fi:
  - Tethering through the customer's phone.
  - Customer access point (clients) in the vehicle.
- Pairing process simplified with QR code.

## Manage devices

To pair and manage mobile devices you must access the device connection manager:

- Go to **System settings > Connections > Manage devices**.

You can also access it from the source selection in the Media menu, or from the telephony interface via the mobile selection menu.

In **Manage devices**, you can add a new device and view the vehicle's Bluetooth® name. This lets you connect devices from the vehicle or from the mobile.

### Connecting mobile devices via the vehicle

1. Press the ⊕ **Add new device** button to access the vehicle's Bluetooth® pairing menu.
2. Find the mobile device you want to pair and tap it.

Tapping the mobile device starts the pairing process.

> **Note**
>
> **The mobile device must be unlocked and Bluetooth® activated.**

The Bluetooth® pairing process is similar to any Bluetooth®a connection; it will indicate on the mobile device the same 6 digits that appear on the vehicle screen.

Once all permissions on the mobile device have been accepted, the process will finish and a Bluetooth® connection will be available, enabling the different technologies supported by the paired device.

Once paired, the available technologies will appear in **Manage devices**. Likewise, the vehicle may show different options to facilitate pairing to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™.

In the settings you can also see the different technologies and options available for the previously paired device.

### Connecting mobile devices via the mobile device

The connection can also be made by searching for the vehicle name on the mobile device.

When pairing is selected from the mobile device, a message will appear in a pop-up window in the vehicle; accept it if the numbers match those shown on the mobile device.

Once pairing is complete, as in the previous section, you can connect to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ technologies.

# Telephone interface

## Introduction

The vehicle's infotainment system allows you to connect your mobile via a wireless hands free connection (Hands Free Profile) to manage telephony functions.

### Call quality factors

- Note that call quality can be negatively affected by external factors such as limitations of the phone itself.
- Conditions such as high vehicle speed, adverse weather, poor road surface or ambient noise can cause interference or degraded phone signal, affecting call quality.
- A weak signal or mobile network restrictions can cause drop-outs, delay or deactivation of functions (SMS, voice commands, interference, etc.).
- The experience may also be affected by mobile characteristics such as operating system version, processing capability and Bluetooth® version.

> **Note**
>
> **To optimise performance, keep vehicle speed moderate, ensure the mobile has good coverage, close background apps and keep the operating system and firmware up to date.**

### Phone interface, mobile not connected

**Fig. 160** Schematic representation: Phone view.

When no device is connected, the phone interface shows a shortcut to manage mobile devices.

- Press **Connect phone** to manage mobile devices.

If Bluetooth® is not activated in the infotainment system, the phone interface shows a shortcut to Bluetooth® settings where you can activate it.

**Phone interface, Apple CarPlay™ connection**

**Fig. 161** Schematic representation: Phone view.

If an Apple CarPlay™ connection is active, the phone interface shows an information screen offering to go to the active Apple CarPlay™ technology and manage telephony functions there. Alternatively, you can go to manage devices.

## Phone interface, Bluetooth® connection

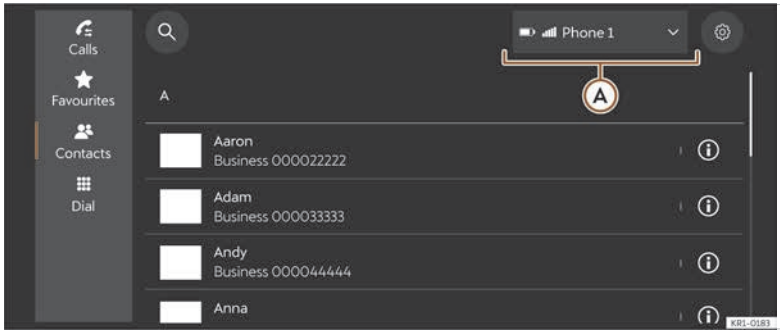



**Fig. 162** Schematic representation: Phone view.

Using the phone interface, you can operate the following functions of your mobile:

››› **Fig. 162**

- Calls: call log.
- Favourites: favourite contacts.
- Contacts: phone book.
- Dial: numeric keypad.
- Ⓐ Mobile selection.

### Calls

From this menu you can view the call history of your mobile.

The infotainment system allows you to place calls by selecting any of the displayed entries.

Select the ⓘ icon for one of the call logs to open options to send an SMS using predefined templates from the infotainment system, to view the call history for the selected contact/number, or to enter the number in the dial keypad.

The telephony interface includes an smart suggestions system that, based on the call history, places suggested contacts at the top to simplify dialling.

### Favourites

From this menu you can view favourite contacts downloaded from your mobile.

The infotainment system allows you to place calls by selecting any of the favourite contacts shown. Alternatively, a long press on a favourite contact offers the option to send an SMS using one of the templates predefined by the infotainment system.

### Contacts

From this menu you can view the contacts from your mobile's phone book.

You can view information for contacts with more than one phone number by pressing the information button. The phone interface offers input methods to make it easier to search for specific contacts; use the contact search at the top or use the alphabetical index to find the desired contact.

### Dial

The telephony interface includes a numeric keypad for entering phone numbers and making calls.

The smart suggestions system will display suggested contacts based on the call history. When you enter a sequence of digits, the infotainment system automatically displays contacts whose information matches, making it easier to select the recipient.

Press the **Call** button to start the call.

> **Note**
>
> **You can deactivate the suggestions system in the telephony interface settings. The availability of this function depends on the vehicle's market, region or equipment level.**

### Mobile selector

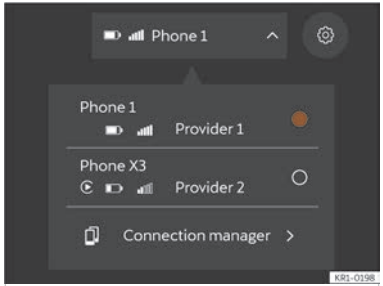



**Fig. 163** Schematic representation: manage devices.

With two devices connected simultaneously, the telephony interface lets you select which phone to set as the primary device.

The mobile name shown in the selector is the one configured as the primary device ››› **Fig. 163**.

Differences between primary and secondary device:

- **Primary phone:** The mobile selector will show all information on the telephony interface for the phone in this position, such as phone book, call history and favourites.
- **Secondary phone:** The mobile selector will not show all information on the telephony interface for the phone in this position; however, this device can receive calls and SMS messages, which will be shown via the infotainment system as notifications.
- **Manage devices:** The phone selector also provides quick access to the mobile manager by pressing "Connection manager". From here you can make new connections or modify active connections.

> **Note**
>
> **Ensure you have granted messaging and contacts permissions on your mobile during pairing. Some devices may require these permissions to be enabled manually. After pairing with the infotainment system, we recommend checking them on your mobile.**
>
> **To keep contact and messaging management functions working, keep these options enabled at all times in your mobile's Bluetooth® settings.**

## Call management

The infotainment system lets you manage calls from your connected mobile via the system screen and the instrument cluster using the multifunction steering wheel.

### Accept or reject a call

- On the infotainment system screen: an incoming call is shown as a notification. From here you can Accept or Reject the call. You can also reject the call using an SMS predefined by the system.
- In the instrument cluster: incoming calls are also shown as a notification. You can use the up/down controls on the multifunction steering wheel to accept or reject the call. Press the **OK** button to confirm the action.
- Alternatively, you can accept the call with the phone button on the multifunction steering wheel. Availability of this button is subject to market, region or vehicle equipment level.

### Active call

During an ongoing call, the telephony interface of the infotainment system shows a dedicated view that lets you view and manage the call.

- Hang up: Ends the ongoing call.
- Keypad: Allows you to use voicemail.
- Microphone: Allows you to mute or activate the vehicle microphone.
- Hold: Allows you to put an ongoing call on hold.
- Private mode: Allows switching between private mode and hands-free mode for the call.
- Start call: Allows you to make a second call.

**Note**

**Some functions may not be available and will depend on the compatibility of your mobile, your phone company or the type of network available.**

When you are outside the telephony interface, the infotainment system will show the active call as a thumbnail at the top of the screen, showing a button to hang up and the call duration.

- Tap the button to end the call.
- Tap the call duration to return to the telephony interface.

The system will automatically show you the ongoing call view with the call-management options.

**Note**

**You can also end an ongoing call using the multifunction steering-wheel controls; press the OK button on the multifunction steering wheel.**

### SMS messages

The infotainment system lets you send predefined SMS templates.

You can access the messaging functions from any of the following entries:

- **Call history:** Select the information button to access the details and select the desired number. Alternatively, press and hold the relevant call log and select the messaging button.
- **Favourite contacts:** Select the information button to access the details and select the desired number. Alternatively, press and hold the relevant favourite contact and select the messaging button.
- **Contact details:** Select the information button to access the details and select the desired number.
- **Missed-call notification:** After a missed call the system will inform you via a notification. From there, tap the “Send message” option.

## Car2Phone

Car2Phone enables a mobile device to communicate directly with a vehicle via a wireless interface.

Car2Phone is compatible with some mobile apps such as My CUPRA App.

### Connection to Car2Phone

1. Go to the menu **System settings > Connections > Car2Phone**.
2. Scan the QR code to pair your device with the infotainment system.

Ensure the app you intend to use is compatible.

## Connectivity Box

**Fig. 164** On the centre console: pad for the mobile phone connection.

The Connectivity Box includes different functions that will help to use your mobile device. These are:

- *Wireless Charger*[1].
- *Mobile Signal Amplifier*.

### Wireless charger

If your mobile device is equipped with induction charging (Qi) technology, it can be charged wirelessly.

To charge your mobile phone wirelessly:

- Place your mobile device in the middle of the pad with the screen facing up ››› **Fig. 164** , ››› ⚠.

Make sure there are no objects between the pad and the mobile phone.

The mobile phone will start charging automatically. For further information about whether your mobile device supports Qi technology, check your phone's user manual or visit the CUPRA website.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Notifications on the screen of the mobile device can distract the driver's attention and increase the risk of a serious accident.**

- **Only place one suitable mobile device, with Qi compatibility if applicable. To ensure that it operates properly, place it without the protective case and ensure that it has maximum dimensions (width x length) of 80 x 140 mm (3.15 x 5.512 inches) on the base of the Connectivity Box as indicated.**
- **If the mobile device is not placed on the base of the Connectivity Box, in the correct position, or if its dimensions exceed those specified, it may not be recognised or may not charge correctly. Under certain circumstances, the infotainment system indicates that there is a foreign object in the storage compartment. Using a suitable mobile phone device and correcting its position can eliminate the fault.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **The mobile phone may become warm due to wireless charging. Think about this before you pick it up, and take care when removing it.**
- **There must be no metallic or other objects between the mobile phone and the housing, to prevent the functionality of the Connectivity Box from being affected.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not leave the key near the *Wireless Charger* area as this may cause interference.**

**NOTICE**

**A active NFC function on your mobile device may prevent its wireless charging from working properly. CUPRA recommends that you deactivate the NFC function on your mobile device when charging.**

**Note**

- **Your mobile device must support the Qi inductive charging interface standard for proper operation.**
- **Charging time and temperature vary depending on the device that is used.**

[1] It only includes the wireless charge functionality.

- To improve the cooling of your mobile device during charging, the Connectivity Box is fitted with a ventilation channel to allow air to pass through. Keep the base area as clear as possible of objects to promote cooling.
- The maximum charging capacity is 15W.
- Qi technology does not allow simultaneous charging of more than one mobile device.
- You are advised to keep the drive system on to guarantee proper wireless charging.
- When a telephone with Qi technology is connected by USB, it will be charged by the means specified by the manufacturer.

# Use of mobile technologies

## Introduction

It is possible to view and use content and functions from the mobile device on the infotainment screen.

To do this, the mobile device must be connected to the infotainment system via a USB interface (USB connection to Apple CarPlay™ is available depending on equipment).

Android Auto™ and Apple CarPlay™ can also be used wirelessly via the Bluetooth® interface and a Wi-Fi connection with the infotainment system.

The availability of technologies depends on the country and the mobile device used.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The use of applications while driving can distract your attention from the traffic. Any distraction affecting the driver in any way can lead to an accident and cause injuries.**

- **Always drive with attention to traffic and in a responsible manner.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any applications that are not suitable or execute incorrectly may cause damage to the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Protect the mobile phone device and its applications from inappropriate use.**
- **Never make modifications to the applications.**
- **Follow instructions in the instruction manual for the mobile device**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**CUPRA cannot be held liable for any damage caused to the vehicle as a result of the use of applications that are of poor quality or are defective, inadequate programming of the applications, insufficient coverage of the network, loss of data during transmission or improper use of mobile phone devices.**

**ⓘ Note**

**When crossing the border into countries with permitted radio frequencies different to those in your own country, running the Full Link Wireless function may be restricted or even unavailable due to legal regulations. This may also be indicated by a message in the infotainment system. Running Full Link via cable is not affected by this restriction and it can continue to be used.**

## Apple CarPlay™

In order to use Apple CarPlay™, the following requirements must be met:

- The iPhone™ **must** be compatible with Apple CarPlay™.
- Voice control (Siri ™) **must** be active on the iPhone™.
- Apple CarPlay™ **must** be active without limitations in the iPhone™ settings.
- If Apple CarPlay™ Wireless is not possible, the iPhone™ **must** be connected to the infotainment system via USB (depending on vehicle equipment). Only USB connections with data transmission are suitable for the use of Apple CarPlay™.
- The USB cable used **must** be an original Apple™ cable.

### Establish connection

When you first connect an iPhone™, follow the instructions on the infotainment system display and on the iPhone ™.

The requirements must be met to use Apple CarPlay™.

Launch Apple CarPlay™:

- Press **MENU > Apple CarPlay** to open manage devices.
- Select the device to connect and follow the instructions on the mobile device and on the infotainment system.

### Special characteristics

During an active Apple CarPlay™ connection, the following characteristics are applicable:

- Bluetooth® connections between the iPhone™ and the infotainment system are **not** possible.
- If there is an active Bluetooth® connection, it is automatically interrupted.
- It is **not** possible to use the built-in navigation system and the Apple CarPlay™ navigation system at the same time. The last route started interrupts the one that was previously active.
- Depending on the infotainment system you use, on the instrument cluster display you can view data from the Telephone mode.
- In the instrument cluster, only indications and navigation maps from compatible apps are shown.
- With the multifunction steering wheel you can accept or reject incoming calls, as well as end an ongoing telephone conversation.

### Voice control

- If available, briefly press on the multifunction steering wheel to start voice control of the infotainment system.
- Press and hold this button to start voice control (Siri™) of the connected iPhone™.
- You can change the connected technology via manage devices.

## Android Auto™

In order to use Android Auto™, the following requirements must be met:

- The Android smartphone **must** be compatible with Android Auto™.
- Use the Android Auto™ app preinstalled in the infotainment system (found under **Settings > Android Auto**).
- Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi activated on the smartphone.
- When a wireless connection is not possible, the smartphone must be connected to the infotainment system via a USB cable (depending on vehicle equipment). Only USB cables with data transfer capability are suitable for Android Auto™.

### Establish connection

When connecting an Android™ smartphone for the first time, follow the instructions on the infotainment screen and on the smartphone.

The requirements must be met to use Android Auto™.

### USB connection

- Unlock the smartphone screen.
- Connect the USB cable to the vehicle port and to the smartphone.
- *Permissions:* on the device, accept the requests for access to contacts, notifications and location.
- If this is your first connection, a notification may appear on the smartphone for Android Auto™; accept it to continue.
- The vehicle screen will show Android Auto™. Press **Accept** to start the interface.

### Wireless connection

- On the smartphone, go to **Settings > Android Auto > Wireless connection** and activate “Android Auto Wireless”.
- Tap the Android Auto™ icon on the infotainment system home screen.
- If there is no previous connection, the “Phone Connection Manager” will open in Bluetooth®. Pair your smartphone with the infotainment system as instructed.

- After Bluetooth® pairing, confirm on screen and, if prompted, on the smartphone, the activation of Android Auto™.
- From then on, Android Auto™ Wireless will start automatically when the vehicle is switched on with Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi active.

### Reconnection for returning users

- USB: simply plug in the unlocked smartphone and Android Auto™ will start automatically.
- Wireless: with the smartphone previously paired, the connection is re-established when the vehicle is switched on.
- If it does not start automatically, press the Android Auto™ icon on the home screen.

### Special characteristics

During an active Android Auto™ connection, the following characteristics are applicable:

- It is not possible to use the vehicle's native navigation and Android Auto™ navigation at the same time; the most recently started route interrupts the previous one.
- In the instrument cluster, only guidance and map displays from apps compatible with Android Auto™ are shown.
- The Bluetooth® HFP profile remains active; with the multifunction steering wheel you can accept or reject incoming calls and end an ongoing phone call.
- A poor quality USB cable can cause intermittent disconnections.

### Voice operation (Google Assistant)

- *From the steering wheel:* briefly press the voice button to start the assistant.
- *From the screen:* press and hold the Google Assistant microphone icon.
- *By voice:* say "Ok Google" to activate the assistant on the smartphone.
- After the tone, state your command ("Navigate to...", "Play...", "Call...").
- Google Assistant will confirm by voice and show the action on the screen.

### Exit Android Auto™

- Press **Home >** or the Android Auto™ icon to return to the main menu.

# CUPRA Assistant

## Introduction

**Note**

**The CUPRA Assistant function is not available in all markets.**

The CUPRA Assistant works both *online*[1] and *offline*, taking into account the aspects indicated in the section "**Languages available depending on the market**".

In *offline* mode the catalogue of voice controls is limited. For a better user experience, it is advisable to use the *online* mode by activating the *online* voice assistant via the My CUPRA App, which provides the user with a wider range of voice controls. In addition, ChatGPT is also available to answer questions. In addition, the vehicle can learn driver habits and make suggestions or recommendations. For this, the vehicle must have been online at least once.

The CUPRA Assistant understands questions and expressions without having to learn commands. Commands can be freely formulated and can be colloquial. For better system operation, it is recommended to always include a verb in the voice control. You will find command suggestions in the infotainment system, e.g., via **MENU** > **CUPRA Assistant**.

[1] Not available in all markets.

Loud noises inside or outside the vehicle can cause malfunctions, as well as confusing phrases and answers.

### Seat-dependent speech recognition

Thanks to additional microphones, the CUPRA Assistant can recognise whether the person speaking is the driver or the passenger. Therefore, in the case of the available languages, you can access functions for a specific seat, such as switching on the seat heating.

### Languages available depending on the market

- *Online and offline:* Czech, Danish, Dutch, British English, US English, Finnish, French, German, Greek, Hungarian, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Latin American Spanish, Swedish and Turkish support *online* natural interaction to improve system understanding.
- *Offline:* Bulgarian and Hebrew do not support *online* natural interaction.

The remaining infotainment system languages do **not** support voice recognition.

### Requirements

- *Offline:* voice control with the corresponding infotainment installed in the vehicle.
- *Online and offline:* voice control with the corresponding infotainment system installed in the vehicle and an active CUPRA CONNECT contract.

**Note**

- **The CUPRA Assistant only recognises commands in the language set in the infotainment system.**
- **Test the CUPRA Assistant while the vehicle is stopped, before moving off, to familiarise yourself with its operation.**
- **The CUPRA Assistant can only control functions that are available as part of the vehicle's equipment.**

## Activation word and commands

### Activation word for the CUPRA Assistant

The CUPRA Assistant starts when the infotainment recognises the activation word.

If CUPRA Assistant is started using the activation word, the infotainment system will show the avatar on the corresponding side of the teleprompter.

- **OR:** after the activation word, say the desired command, for example: "*Hello CUPRA*" and then "*Switch on heating*".

The system scans the words spoken in the vehicle after the activation work and displays them on the screen.

### Activate and deactivate the activation word

- Tap **MENU > CUPRA Assistant**.

**Activation word:**

| | |
|---|---|
| Spanish | Hola CUPRA |
| Bulgarian | Здравей CUPRA |
| Czech | Ahoj CUPRA |
| German | Hallo CUPRA |
| Danish | Hej CUPRA |
| French | Bonjour CUPRA |
| Finnish | Hei CUPRA |
| English | Hey CUPRA |
| Greek | Γεια σου CUPRA |
| Italian | Ciao CUPRA |
| Norwegian | Hallo CUPRA |
| Dutch | Hallo CUPRA |
| Portuguese | Olá CUPRA |
| Polish | Cześć CUPRA |
| Russian | Привет CUPRA |
| Swedish | Hej CUPRA |
| Turkish | Merhaba CUPRA |
| Hebrew | CUPRA היי |

### Commands

To help the voice control recognise commands reliably:

- Pronounce clearly. Confusing commands are not recognised. Speak in a normal tone of voice. Speak a little louder if you are driving at high speed.
- Avoid outside noises. Open windows and doors can interfere with voice control.
- Avoid other background noises, such as conversations in the vehicle. Do not direct the air flow from the outlets towards the microphone or the interior lining of the roof.
- Do not make long pauses.

| | |
|---|---|
| | Voice control is active and recognises the spoken words. |

### Open the command proposals

- Press **MENU > CUPRA Assistant > Help**.

**Note**

- **If the activation word is switched off, the CUPRA Assistant cannot be activated via the activation word. The CUPRA Assistant is still available via the button on the multifunction steering wheel. You can deactivate the activation word in MENU > CUPRA Assistant.**
- **Availability depends on country and equipment.**

## Starting and ending the CUPRA Assistant

Depending on the equipment, you can start voice control in different ways.

### Starting the CUPRA Assistant

- *Activating the CUPRA Assistant:* say the word that activates the CUPRA Assistant.
- *Multifunction steering wheel:* press the voice control button .

In some cases you can also start the voice assistant of the connected mobile device by pressing and holding down the voice control button.

### Ending the CUPRA Assistant manually

The CUPRA Assistant can be cancelled using the command **Cancel**.

- *Multifunction steering wheel:* tap the voice control button once to end the assistant.

CUPRA Assistant is automatically terminated if you use infotainment functions, if the parking system is activated, if there is an incoming call or a long pause or silence.

# Radio mode

## Introduction

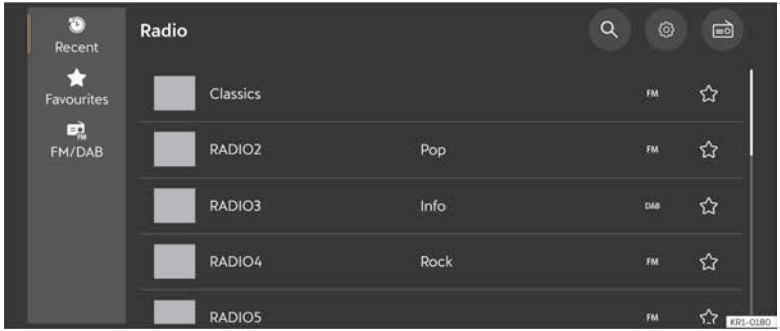



**Fig. 165** Schematic representation: Radio view.

In Radio mode you can tune in the available radio stations in different frequency bands and save your favourites on the preset buttons to access them quickly.

The types of reception and frequency bands available depend on the equipment and the country. In certain countries, frequency bands may stop broadcasting or may no longer be available.

### Access the RADIO menu

- Press **MENU** ⁝⁝⁝ > 📻 ››› Fig. 165.

### Access the settings

- Press **MENU** ⁝⁝⁝ > 📻 > ⚙.

**Note**

- **Radio stations are responsible for the content of the information they transmit. Electrical equipment connected to the vehicle may also cause interference in radio signal reception and noise in the loudspeakers.**
- **Foil or metal-coated stickers attached to the windows may affect reception on vehicles with a window aerial.**

## Radio equipment and symbols

The functions, as well as the types of reception and frequency bands available depend on the equipment and the country.

- Dual FM receiver (diversity antenna).
- Merger of DAB and FM stations into one list.
- Merger of all stations stored in preset buttons into one list. Maximum 30 favourite stations.
- Station logos.
- DAB presentation (slideshow). Images that are emitted sequentially.

### Universal symbols in Radio mode

**FM/DAB** To select the desired FM/DAB frequency band.

**TP** Next to the name of the station, monitoring of active traffic information stations (TP).

### Symbols on the FM/DAB frequency band

DAB not available.

Search for stations and frequencies.

## Selecting, tuning and saving a station

### Last stations

List to which up to the last 12 stations tuned for more than 10 seconds are added.

### Search and select a station

Using the magnifier you can search for station names (text) and frequencies (numbers).

### Select from the station list (FM/DAB)

The station list shows the stations that are currently tunable. The list is updated automatically.

1. Open the station list
2. Press the station you want.

The selected station is tuned. If the station is available, the best quality reception is automatically selected.

### Save stations as favourites

You can save up to 30 stations from different frequency bands as favourites.

1. Press and hold the station in the list.
2. A star icon ☆ will appear.
3. Press the star.

**OR:** press the star ☆ shown to the right of each station in the list.

## Special functions in Radio mode

### Traffic information (TP)

The TP function monitors the announcements of a station with traffic information and automatically plays them in the Radio mode or in the multimedia playback that is active. To do this, you have to be able to tune into a station with traffic information.

Some stations without their own traffic information support the TP function by broadcasting traffic information from other stations (EON): in the FM band or in Multimedia mode, a station with traffic information is tuned automatically in the background while it is possible to tune into a station with traffic information.

If no station with traffic information can be tuned in, the device automatically searches for stations with tunable traffic information.

Stations with traffic information are not available in all countries.

### Activating and deactivating the TP function

- In Radio mode press ⚙ > **Traffic programme (TP)**.

### Station logos

Some station logos may be available.

### Additional DAB warnings

The DAB announcement function monitors possible notifications from DAB radio stations and plays them automatically in Radio mode.

### Activate and deactivate additional DAB warnings:

- **Menu > Additional DAB announcements** (Activate/deactivate).

# Media Mode

## Introduction

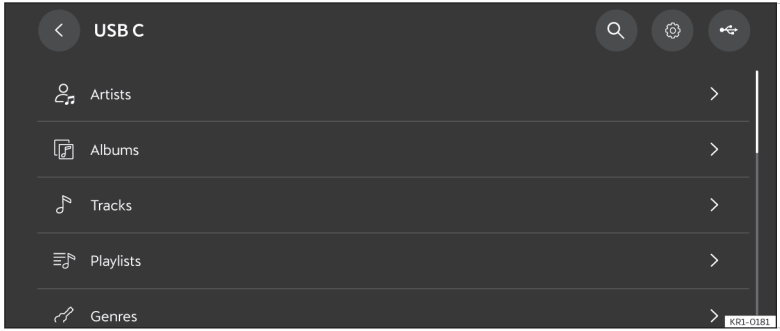



**Fig. 166** Schematic representation: Media view

In Media mode you can play multimedia files from data media through the infotainment system.

Depending on the equipment, the following data media can be used:

- USB storage support (for example, a USB stick, a mobile phone connected via USB).
- Bluetooth® device (for example, a mobile phone or a tablet).

Depending on the equipment, the following types of multimedia files can be played:

- Audio files.
- Video files (depends on the system).

**Open the MEDIA USB menu**

- Press **Menu** > **USB** ››› **Fig. 166**.

**Open the MEDIA Bluetooth menu**

- Press **Menu** > **Bluetooth**.

**Access the settings**

- Press **Menu** > **USB** > ⚙.

**OR:**

- Press **Menu** > **Bluetooth** > ⚙.

**Data media limitations and indications**

Data media may not work if they have been exposed to high temperatures or have been damaged. Please bear in mind the manufacturer's indications.

Quality differences between data media produced by different manufacturers can cause multimedia playback malfunctions.

Incorrect data media configuration may make it unreadable.

Playlists only specify a playback order and refer to the storage location of the multimedia files within the folder structure. No multimedia files are saved in a playlist. To play a playlist, mul-

timedia files have to be found in the storage places of the data media to which the playlist refers.

**Note**

**CUPRA assumes no liability for any deterioration or loss of files on data storage devices.**

## Equipment features and media symbols

**Audio, multimedia and connectivity:**

- Media playback and control via Bluetooth®.
- Audio playback in these formats: ACC, USAC, AMR-NB / AMR-WB, FLAC, MP3, MIDI, Vorbis, PCM/WAVE and OPUS.
- Video playback in these formats: H.263, H.264, H.265, MPEG-2, MPEG-4, VP8 / VP9, DRM and AV1.
- Playlists on any type of device.
- Multimedia search.

**Universal symbols in Media mode**

▷ Play.

❚❚ Pause playback.

|◁ Skip to previous track.

▷| Skip to next track.

Repeat the track that is playing.

Repeat all titles.

Activate random playback order.

☆ Add a media file as favourite.

Access the settings.

🔍 Open the search.

< Return to the parent folder of the media source.

## Select and play a multimedia source

**Select multimedia source**

Before playing multimedia files you must first connect a multimedia source.

- Connect an external multimedia source.
- Select the connected media source to be used for playback.

**Playing audio and video files**

You can search and play multimedia files from an available multimedia source in different ways.

**Search in the folder structure**

Multimedia files can be catalogued by categories (for example, album, artist, title). In the **USB** app, this category view is always shown. The classic folder structure of individual USB data media is also present in the **USB** app.

1. Activate the folder structure.

   The folder structure of the selected multimedia source is displayed. When the **USB** app is selected, the categories (Recent, Favourites, Artists, Albums, Tracks, Playlists, Genres, Folders and Videos) and the connected media sources are shown first.
2. Search for the title you want in the folder structure.

   **OR:** press 🔍 to start a text search The input field is displayed.
3. Enter the name of the desired title. The list of the titles found is updated while entering the text.
4. Press the desired title.

   If at the beginning of the playback your selection is in a folder of a multimedia source, the multimedia files that are in it are also added to the playback.

   If a playlist is played, all available titles in the playlist are added to the playback.
5. Close your selection with ✕.

**Select favourites**

In Favourites you can save individual tracks for playback.

- Access favourites ☆.
- Press the favourite you want.

Depending on your selection, all the titles belonging to the favourite are added to the playback.

### Save favourites

Only media files present in the infotainment **USB** app can be saved as favourites. You can save up to 30 tracks as favourites.

1. Start playback.
2. Open Media Player.
3. Press ☆.

To remove a track from favourites, play the track and press the ☆ icon in Media Player.

## Playing entertainment content in the infotainment system

Depending on the infotainment system, videos can be played.

### Video mode

In Video mode you can play a video on the infotainment screen from a data medium via the USB app. In this case, the video sound is played through the vehicle's speakers.

The image is only displayed if the vehicle is stopped. When the vehicle is in motion, the infotainment screen turns off. The sound of the video can still be heard.

# Navigation

## Introduction

**Fig. 167** Schematic representation: Navigation view.

**Note**

**The "Navigation" function is not available in all markets.**

A global satellite system determines the current position of the vehicle and the sensors mounted on the vehicle analyse the routes taken. All measured values and possible traffic events are compared with the available maps to allow optimal navigation to the destination.

Navigation announcements and graphic representations will guide you to your destination.

Navigation is managed on the screen.

Depending on the country, some functions of the infotainment system will not be available on the screen when travelling above a certain speed. It is not a malfunction, but is due to compliance with legislation.

### Navigation announcements

Navigation announcements audible indications for driving relating to the current route.

The type and frequency of navigation announcements depend on the driving situation, for example, starting the guide to the destination, driving on the motorway or on a roundabout and the settings.

If the exact destination cannot be reached because, for example, it is in a non-digitised area, indications relating to the address and the distance to the destination are displayed on the screen.

During dynamic route guidance, you will receive information about reported traffic congestion on the route. An additional navigation announcement is given if the route is recalculated due to traffic congestion.

While a navigation announcement is playing, its volume can be adjusted. Subsequent navigation announcements will be played with the newly adjusted volume.

### Limitations during navigation

If the infotainment system cannot receive data from GPS satellites, for example, in a tunnel or in an underground garage, navigation continues using the vehicle's sensors.

In areas that are not digitised or are only partially digitised in the infotainment's memory, the infotainment system will still attempt to provide route guidance.

In the case of missing or incomplete navigation data, it may not be possible to determine the exact position of the vehicle. This may mean that navigation is not as precise as usual.

Roads and streets are subject to constant change (e.g. new roads, road works, roads closed to traffic, changes to street names and building numbers). If the navigation data is obsolete, this may lead to errors or inaccuracies during route guidance.

### Managing the navigation map

For optimal viewing, you can also manage the navigation map with additional finger movements.

### Moving the map

*Tip: use your index finger*

- Move the map with your finger.

### Zooming into or out of the view

*Tip: use your index finger*

- Press twice on the map and keep your finger pressed on the screen.
- To zoom out the map view, move your finger upwards. To zoom into the map view, move your finger downwards.

### Change the 2D / 3D view

*Tip: use your index and middle fingers*

- Press on the map with both fingers at the same time and keep them pressed.
- For 2D view scroll your fingers down, for 3D view scroll your fingers up.

### Rotate the map

*Tip: use your thumb and index finger*

- Press on the map with both fingers at the same time and keep them pressed.
- To rotate the map view, turn your fingers clockwise or anticlockwise.

### Saved data

The infotainment system saves certain data, for example, frequent routes and position data, to make it easier to enter the destination and to optimise route guidance.

### Delete saved data

- Press **Settings > Basic function settings > Delete** and then **Accept**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Select the settings, enter the destination and the modifications for navigation only with the vehicle at a standstill.**

**Note**

- **If a detour is passed during route guidance, navigation may recalculate the route.**
- **The quality of the navigation recommendations given by the Infotainment system depends on the navigation data available and any reported traffic congestions.**
- **Navigation announcements are not emitted if the sound is muted in the infotainment system.**

## Navigation functions and symbols

### Navigation

Navigation functions depend on the equipment and country.

All navigation functions require the activation of CUPRA CONNECT PLUS online services.

### Functions

- Entering the destination and route calculation (offline and online.[1])
- Display of two navigation maps at the same time (screen and instrument cluster).
- Update of online maps.[1]
- Predictive navigation.
- 3D urban maps.
- Online traffic information.[1]
- Dynamic POIs (points of interest).

### Symbols on the map

The buttons and indications depend on the settings and the current driving situation.

Symbols for traffic events and points of interest (POIs) are displayed on the map, for example, petrol stations, train stations or interesting stopovers, provided navigation has such data >>> page 286.

- Current position.
- Search for destinations.
- Destinations along the route.
- Final destination.
- Home address.
- Work address.
- Favourite destinations.
- Additional window with route options.

[1] Not available in all markets.

- Centre the map on the current position.
- Change view: 2D oriented to the north, or 2D oriented to the direction of travel, or 3D to the direction of travel.
- Information about the current route guidance.
- Map scale.

### Other symbols

- Entering the detailed destination for an address.
- Search for destinations.
- Back

### Symbols in the route details

- Current position.
- Destination of the current guidance.

### POI symbols (points of interest)

POIs (points of interest) are shown on the map, provided the navigation has said data.

Click on the desired POI (point of interest) to start route guidance >>> page 284.

- Electric charging station.
- Petrol station.
- Car park.
- Tourist information offices.
- Train station.
- Restaurant.

### Traffic information.

POIs (points of interest) are shown on the map, provided the navigation has said data.

Click on a traffic event to open an additional window with further details >>> page 287.

- Slow traffic.
- Traffic jam.
- Accident.
- Broken down vehicle.
- Slippery surface (ice or snow).
- Road closed to traffic.
- Slippery road hazard.
- Danger.
- Road works.
- Strong wind.

Reduced visibility.

## Navigation data

The Infotainment system is equipped with a built-in navigation data memory. Depending on the country, the necessary navigation data may already be pre-installed.

To provide correct route guidance and make the most of the functions offered, the infotainment system should be updated on a regular basis.

Using obsolete data may lead to errors during navigation. Current routes cannot be traced or the route guidances will lead to mistaken destinations.

Ensure navigation data is updated at all times.

### Online updating of navigation data[1)]

The navigation data of the regions through which you travel frequently is automatically updated in the background if the Internet connection is established and the privacy settings are valid.

- With the ignition switched on, the navigation data is updated automatically.

### Manual update of navigation data

Current navigation data for large regions, for example Western Europe, can be downloaded from www.seat.com and stored on USB data devices.

- Download the navigation data to a USB data device.
- Turn on the ignition of the vehicle.
- Connect the USB data device to the infotainment system. Navigation data is automatically updated in the background.

The map version is displayed in **HOME** > > **System information**.

**Note**

**Automatic update of the navigation data is subject to the privacy settings. No update is made in incognito mode.**

## Start route guidance

Depending on the country and equipment, different functions are available to enter destinations.

The different functions for entering destinations are found in the navigation main menu.

### Opening the Navigation main menu

- Press **MENU** > .

### Select the destination and start navigation

1. Press .
2. Select the desired destination. You can choose shortcuts to POIs (points of interest), saved or favourite destinations, Home, Work and Last destinations.

   **OR:** press  and enter the address in the input screen.

   **OR:** detailed address.
3. Press **Start**.

### Range based on the route

The range required for the selected route is recalculated taking into account different factors such as topography and road type. Therefore the range value will be adjusted instantly when the selection is made and recalculated en route according to any conditions that may not be initially assessed (weather, traffic, etc.) until arrival at destination, where the standard range will be displayed again.

### Suggestions

The destination synopsis uses recorded data to propose possible destinations.

[1)] Not available in all markets.

*Select the destination and start navigation:*

1. Tap 🔍 and then **Suggestions**.
2. Select the desired destination. The route guidance starts automatically.

**Quick start:** for a quick start, press and hold the desired destination for a few seconds.

### Last destinations

Navigation saves the last destinations to make them available for route guidance.

*Select the destination and start navigation:*

1. Press 🔍.
2. Tap the desired destination in the **Last destinations** list.
3. Press **Start**.

**Quick start:** for a quick start, press and hold the desired destination for a few seconds.

### ☆ Favourite destinations

Save up to 20 destinations as favourites.

To save a destination as a favourite press ☆ in the split screen when entering the destination.

*Select the destination and start navigation:*

1. Tap 🔍 and then **Favourites**.
2. Press the desired destination.
3. Press **Start**.

**Note**

**Enter the destination as accurately as possible. If you enter a destination incorrectly, the route guidance will not be able to start or it will guide you to an incorrect destination.**

### Start route guidance by selecting from the map

The navigation map includes active areas at many points that are suitable for entering the destination. To do this, press the desired position or place on the map. If there is map data at this point, you can start route guidance.

Whether it is possible to enter the destination through the navigation map depends on the state of the data and it is not possible for all positions.

To start "offroad navigation", press an empty area without position data.

*Start navigation:*

1. Press 🗺.
2. Move the view on the map until the desired position can be selected. The navigation map can be used by means of additional finger movements ››› page 281.
3. Press the desired destination on the map.
4. A pop-up window will appear where you can tap on the corresponding icon:
   - ☆: favourite destination.
   - 🏁: new route.
   - **Start**: starts the route to the destination.

### Offroad navigation

"Offroad navigation" calculates routes to selected destination points using unknown data. When a destination point is outside the known roads or position data, navigation finds the route to the closest point on a known road and completes the path to the next destination point with a direct connection.

*Start navigation:*

1. Move the view on the map until the desired position can be selected. The navigation map can be used by means of additional finger movements ››› page 281.
2. Press on any point on the map without position data.
3. A pop-up window will appear where you can tap on the corresponding icon:
   - ☆: favourite destination.
   - 🏁: new route.
   - **Start**: starts the route to the destination.

## Add stops for automatic charging

To add stops for automatic charging, under route options activate the automatic charging station planning as required along the route.

There is a limited number of waypoints in the route calculation planning:

- Maximum of 15 charging stops calculated automatically by the system.
- Maximum of 9 waypoints determined and set by the user.
- Any combination of the two that respects the aforementioned maximums.

If the route requires the calculation of more stops than are permitted, this calculation would be cancelled.

**Note**

**Getting optimal results when calculating routes with automatic charging points depends on the availability of charging points stored in the navigation data.**

In settings you can specify the desired payment mode for the charging stations. Depending on your selection and the available data, suitable charging stations are displayed on the map and programmed into the route.

The adjustable maximum charging limit for the vehicle can be adjusted in the **Charging** main menu.

### Select alternative charging stations

For planned routes, instead of automatically planned charging stations, you can select alternative charging stations along the route.

1. Enter or select the desired destination.
2. Press **Start**.
3. Open the route details.
4. In the route details, press on a planned charging station. Details of the planned charging station are displayed.
5. Press **Show more charging stations**.

   The locations of other charging stations in the vicinity are shown on the map.
6. On the map or list, press an alternative charging station in the vicinity. Details of the alternative charging station are displayed.
7. Press **Charge here**.

   **OR:** press **Add stopover destination**. The previously programmed charging station is replaced by the newly selected charging station and the route is adapted.

**Note**

**If you select Add stopover destination, the selected charging station is kept if the route is changed.**

## Traffic information

The infotainment system receives detailed traffic information automatically[1] if the Internet connection is established. This information is displayed using symbols and by highlighting the road network in colour on the map.

### Traffic incidents

Traffic incidents, for example, traffic jams or congested traffic, are shown on the navigation map using symbols.

With active route guidance, traffic incidents that are on the current route are shown in the route details. Such traffic incidents can be avoided ›››  page 287, *Function descriptions*.

### Traffic flow indication

The navigation map shows traffic flow according to current traffic events, highlighting the road network in colour.

- **Yellow:** Slow traffic.
- **Red:** Traffic jam.

**Note**

**Traffic information receipt is subject to the privacy settings. In maximum Privacy mode, no traffic information is received. The Tracking or Location level must be set up.**

[1] Not available in all markets.

## Function descriptions

### Route details

The route details contain information on all incidents, for example, the starting point, stopovers, traffic events, POIs and destination, provided the navigation has such data.

If you press on an incident, an additional window opens providing more options. The available options depend on the incident and the current settings.

**Open and close the route details**

- To open them, press | or swipe it.
- To close them, press | or swipe it.

### Edit route guidance

To edit the route guidance, move the stopovers to the destination in TripView.

- Press and hold the desired destination until it is visibly highlighted.
- Move the destination to the desired position.
- Remove your finger from the screen. The route will recalculate.

### Avoid traffic incidents

The details of the route show the current traffic incidents if the navigation has such data. Avoid traffic incidents by editing route details ››› page 287.

- Press on a traffic event.
- Press on **Avoid**. The route will recalculate.

### Split screen

When handling navigation functions, an additional window with other options may open. Possible options depend on the function being used.

### Close the additional screen

- Press on an empty area outside the additional window.
- **OR:** press ×.
- **OR:** press **Accept**.

| Functions in the additional window: | |
|---|---|
| **Show on map** | Show what is selected on the map. |
| **Add stopover destination** | Add a stopover to the route guidance. |
| **Direct route** | Starts direct route guidance. |
| **Delete** | Delete a stopover from the route guidance. |
| **Avoid** | Avoid traffic jam. The route will recalculate. |
| **Stop route guidance** | Ends the current route guidance. |
| × | Close the additional window. |

| Functions in the additional window: | |
|---|---|
| ☆ | Add a destination to favourites. |

### Learn usage pattern

When the vehicle is in motion, navigation saves routes and destinations used to automatically generate destination proposals. Destinations are learned based on the time of day and the day of the week.

Navigation can propose up to 3 routes at the same time. The proposed routes may be different from the routes of the normal route guidance.

If one of the proposed destinations is selected, the guide to that destination is started.

The route guidance follows the selected route until the vehicle deviates from it. In that case, the route is recalculated and takes you back along the most direct path to the initially selected destination.

Major traffic jams are taken into account in the route guidance, and are avoided if alternative routes are available, provided navigation has such data.

You can enable and disable the function any time.

### Enable and disable usage pattern learning

The setting is in the navigation menu ⚙ > **Basic function settings**.

- To activate the function, activate **Learn usage pattern**.
- To disable the function, disable **Learn usage pattern**.
- To delete saved data, press **Delete usage pattern**.

### 360° range indicator

The 360° operating range indicator shows the possible range with the current charge level of the high voltage battery.

- To deactivate the 360° range indicator, select: **Navigation settings > Settings for the electric vehicle route planner > Show range map.**

**Note**

- **If the battery charge level is very low, the range indicator is automatically hidden. When the battery is recharged, the range indicator is displayed again.**
- **If necessary, adapt the map view to display the full range on the map.**

# Storing objects

## Positioning the luggage and cargo

### General information

**Placing luggage inside the vehicle safely**

- Distribute the load in the vehicle as evenly as possible.
- Always place luggage and heavy objects as far forwards as possible in the luggage compartment ››› ⚠.
- Take into account the maximum authorised weight per axle, as well as the maximum authorised weight of the vehicle ››› page 365.
- Secure the objects to the fastening rings of the luggage compartment using appropriate chains or belts ››› page 292.
- Also place small objects safely.
- In vehicles with dynamic headlight range control, the lights adapt automatically.
- Adapt tyre pressure to the load. Take into account the pressure sticker of the tyres ››› page 329.
- In vehicles equipped with a tyre pressure control system, adjust to the new load status if necessary ››› page 338.

**⚠ WARNING**

Loose or unsecured objects can cause serious injury in case of sudden manoeuvring or braking or in case of an accident. This is particularly the case if the airbag impacts them when deploying and they are thrown across the inside of the vehicle. Please observe the following rules to minimise the risk of injury:

- Place all objects inside the vehicle safely.
- Secure all objects, small and large.
- Place the objects in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never move into the airbag deployment areas while the vehicle is in motion.
- Keep the storage compartments closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.
- Place the objects in such a way that they never force any occupant of the vehicle to sit in an incorrect position.
- When transporting objects that take up a seat, never let anyone use that seat.
- Never leave hard, sharp or heavy objects loose in open storage compartment of the vehicle, on the cover behind the rear seat or on the dash panel.
- Remove all hard, sharp or heavy objects from the fabrics and bags in the vehicle interior and store them safely.

**⚠ WARNING**

Transporting heavy objects changes vehicle handling and increases braking distance. Heavy objects that are not properly placed or secured may cause loss of control of the vehicle and thus severe injuries.

- Never put too much load in the vehicle. Both the carrying capacity as well as the distribution of the load in the vehicle have effects on the driving behaviour and braking ability.
- When transporting heavy objects, the driving behaviour of the vehicle varies due to the displacement of the centre of gravity.
- Always distribute the load in the vehicle as evenly and horizontally as possible.
- Always place heavy objects in the luggage compartment in front of the rear axle and as far away from it as possible.
- Objects in the luggage compartment that are unsecured could move suddenly and modify the handling of the vehicle.
- Adapt your speed and driving style at all times to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate with particular care and caution.
- Avoid sharp braking and sudden manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual.

**NOTICE**

**Electrical wires or, depending on the features, the antenna embedded into the rear windows could be damaged, even irreparably, if they are in contact with objects.**

**Note**

**Straps for securing the load to the fastening rings are commercially available from accessory shops.**

# Luggage compartment

## Luggage compartment shelf

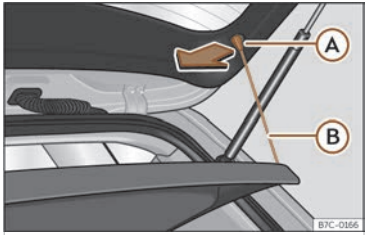



**Fig. 168** In the luggage compartment: removing and installing the shelf.

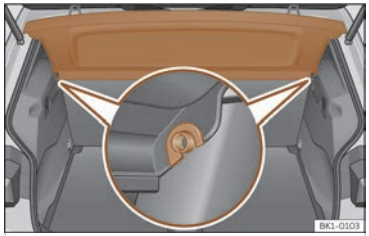



**Fig. 169** In the luggage compartment: removing and installing the shelf.

### Removing

- Detach the cord loops ››› **Fig. 168** Ⓑ from their hooks Ⓐ.
- Remove the rear shelf from the side supports ››› **Fig. 169** by pulling it upwards and then take it out.

### Fitting

- Insert the cover horizontally so that the "recess" slots over the support fittings ››› **Fig. 169** and press down until it engages.
- Attach the securing straps ››› **Fig. 168** Ⓑ onto the rear lid.

**WARNING**

**Animals, loose or unsecured or objects carried on the rear shelf can cause serious injury in case of sudden manoeuvring or braking or in case of an accident.**

- **Do not leave hard, sharp or heavy objects loose or in bags on the rear shelf.**
- **Never transport animals on the rear shelf.**

**NOTICE**

- **Before closing the rear lid, ensure that the rear shelf is correctly fitted.**
- **An overloaded luggage compartment could mean that the rear shelf is not correctly seated and it may be bent or damaged.**
- **If the luggage compartment is overloaded, remove the rear shelf.**

**Note**

**Ensure that, when placing items of clothing on the rear shelf, rear visibility is not reduced.**

## Luggage compartment floor

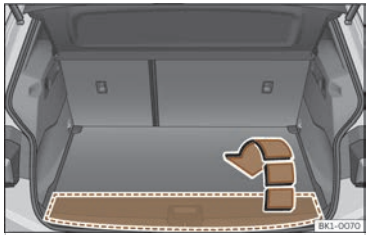



**Fig. 170** In the luggage compartment: luggage compartment floor.

The rear of the luggage compartment floor can be folded forward ››› **Fig. 170**. Underneath, there is a storage compartment for items such as on-board tools ››› **page 300**.

**NOTICE**

**Incorrect use of the luggage compartment floor can cause damage to it or the luggage compartment trim.**

- **When closing the luggage compartment floor, always guide it carefully downwards without dropping it.**
- **As far as possible, always spread the load over the entire surface of the luggage compartment to avoid overloading any one spot.**

## Variable luggage compartment floor

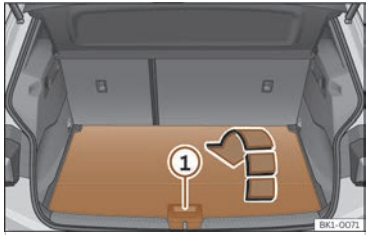



**Fig. 171** In the luggage compartment: open the second luggage compartment floor.

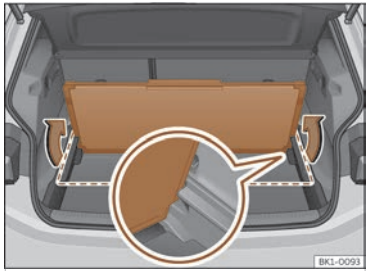



**Fig. 172** In the luggage compartment: attach the second luggage compartment floor.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may have a second floor in the luggage compartment.

### Opening and closing the second luggage compartment floor

- To *open it*, grasp the handle ››› **Fig. 171** ① and fold the rear of the luggage compartment floor forwards in the direction of the arrow.
- To *close it*, fold out the luggage compartment floor and set it down carefully››› ⓘ.

### Fixing the second luggage compartment floor parallel to the rear seat backrest

- Fold the rear of the luggage compartment floor forwards.
- Once folded, lift it up and insert it into the side brackets, with the open side facing downwards ››› **Fig. 172** (enlarged image).

### Placing the second luggage compartment floor in a lower position

- Fold the rear of the luggage compartment floor forwards.
- Once folded, pull the luggage compartment floor backwards along the side guides and put it in place lower.

**NOTICE**

**Incorrect use of the second luggage compartment floor can cause damage to it or the luggage compartment trim.**

- **When closing the second luggage compartment floor, always guide it carefully downwards without dropping it.**
- **As far as possible, always spread the load (maximum 50kg) over the entire surface of the luggage compartment floor to avoid overloading any one spot.**

# Luggage compartment equipment

## Fastening rings

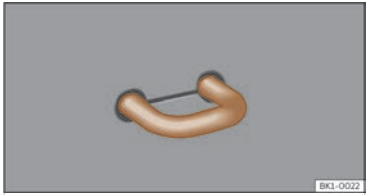



**Fig. 173** In the luggage compartment: fastening rings.

There are fastening rings >>> **Fig. 173** on the front and rear of the luggage compartment to secure loose objects and luggage with fastening belts and cords.

**WARNING**

**If unsuitable or damaged belts or retaining straps are used, they could break in the event of braking or an accident. Objects could then be thrown across the vehicle interior and cause serious or fatal injuries.**

- **Always use belts or straps that are suitable and in good condition.**
- **Tighten the belts and straps in a cross layout over the load placed on the luggage compartment floor and secure them to the fastening rings safely.**
- **Never exceed the maximum tensile load of the fastening rings when securing objects.**
- **Make sure that, particularly for flat objects, the upper edge of the load is higher than the fastening rings.**
- **Depending on the features, take into account the instruction panels on the luggage compartment on how to place the load.**
- **Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.**

**Note**

- **The maximum tensile load that the fastening rings can support is approx. 3.5 kN.**
- **Appropriate belts, straps and securing systems for the load can be purchased from specialised dealerships. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.**

## Bag hooks

**Fig. 174** In the luggage compartment: bag hooks.

There may be hooks for hanging bags on both sides of the luggage compartment >>> **Fig. 174**.

The bag hooks have been designed to secure light shopping bags.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never use the hooks to hang luggage or other objects. In case of sudden braking or an accident, the hooks could break.**

## Trapdoor for transporting long objects

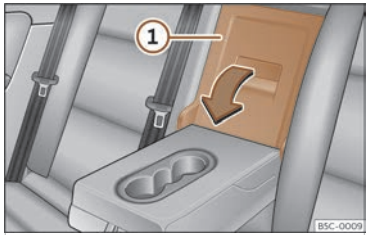



**Fig. 175** On the rear seat backrest: opening the trapdoor.

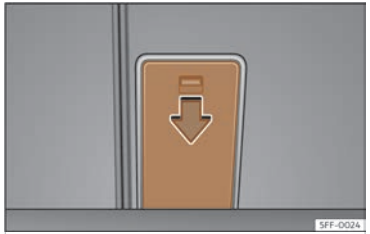



**Fig. 176** In the luggage compartment: opening the trapdoor.

On the rear seat, behind the central armrest, there is a trapdoor for transporting long items in the interior, such as skis.

### Opening the trapdoor

- Lower the centre armrest.
- Pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow and fold the trapdoor cover ››› **Fig. 175** (1) down and forwards.
- Open the rear lid.
- Insert the long objects through the gap from the luggage compartment.
- Secure the objects with the seat belt.
- Close the rear lid.

### Closing the trapdoor

- Lift the trapdoor cover until it engages. The red mark on the luggage compartment side should never be visible.
- Close the rear lid.
- Lift the centre armrest if necessary.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The presence of objects in the central airbag deployment area can prevent it from operating properly and can cause serious injury.**

- **Do not leave any objects in the central airbag deployment zone** ››› **page 53.**

**⚠ WARNING**

- **When the armrest is down, nobody should travel in the centre seat of the rear bench.**
- **Do not use the hatch while driving.**
- **When lowering or raising the hatch, take particular care with your hands and do not trap or damage the seatbelt.**

**Note**

**The trapdoor can also be opened from the luggage compartment. To do so, press the release lever down, in the direction of the arrow, and the cover upwards** ››› **Fig. 176.**

# Roof carrier

## Information on the roof rack

For technical reasons, the vehicle body is **not** designed for attaching a roof rack.

The vehicle is **not** approved for the use of a roof rack. The use of a roof rack, or retrofitting the vehicle with a roof rack, is not allowed.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Accidents and injuries can occur if a roof rack is installed on a vehicle that is not approved for the use of roof racks.**

- **Never install a roof rack on the vehicle.**
- **If despite this you fit a roof rack, it could come loose during the journey and fall from the vehicle's roof.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Fixing a roof rack of any type can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.**

# Trailer mode

## Information on trailer mode

The vehicle is **not** certified for trailer coupling. It is not permitted to retrofit the vehicle with a towing device.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If a towing device is installed on the vehicle, serious accidents and injuries can occur when using the vehicle.**

- **Never install a towing device on the vehicle.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Fitting a towing device can cause serious damage to the vehicle.**

# Bicycle carrier

## Introduction

The bicycle carrier pre-installation consists of the pre-installation itself, which is removable, and a housing for it behind the number plate bracket. The system has been designed specifically to carry a bicycle carrier loaded with up to three bicycles ››› page 297.

The bicycle carrier pre-installation is not designed to withstand towing loads and therefore it is never permitted to use it to tow a trailer or to tow a vehicle ››› ⚠.

### Folding number plate bracket

When the bicycle carrier pre-installation is fitted, the vehicle's number plate must still be clearly visible and legible. Observe the specific regulations of the country in question and, if necessary, use a separate number plate for the bicycle carrier.

When no bicycle carrier or rear carrier system is fitted to the bicycle carrier pre-installation, remove it and raise the number plate bracket so that the number plate is visible again.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrect use of the bicycle carrier pre-installation can cause accidents, serious or fatal injury and damage to the vehicle.**

- **Use the factory supplied bicycle carrier pre-installation only for mounting a rear carrier system or a bicycle carrier.**
- **Use the bicycle carrier pre-installation only if it is in perfect condition and correctly secured.**
- **Do not modify or repair the bicycle carrier pre-installation in any way.**
- **Do not use the bicycle carrier pre-installation for towing.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**When a bicycle carrier pre-installation is fitted, the risk of accidents and serious injury to other road users increases in the event of a rear-end collision.**

- **Remove the bicycle carrier pre-installation when it is not being used.**

## Fit the pre-installation for the bicycle carrier

**Fig. 177** Rear of vehicle: number plate bracket.

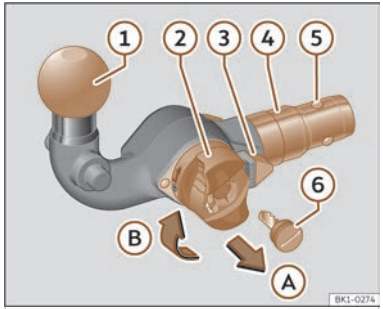



**Fig. 178** Overview: removable bicycle carrier pre-installation.

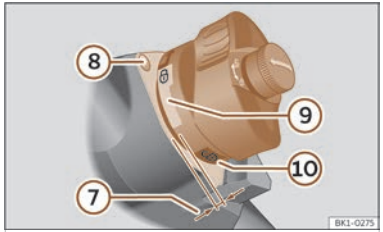



**Fig. 179** Overview (detail): removable bicycle carrier pre-installation.

>>> **Fig. 178**, >>> **Fig. 179**

① Spherical head
② Thumbwheel
③ Centring guides
④ Stem
⑤ Locking balls
⑥ Key
⑦ Gap (pre-stressed bicycle carrier pre-installation)
⑧ White mark on the bicycle carrier pre-installation
⑨ Green mark on the thumbwheel
⑩ Red mark on the thumbwheel

The removable bicycle carrier pre-installation is in the luggage compartment carrying bag.

**First step: preparations**

1. Before using the removable bicycle carrier pre-installation for the first time, write down the number stamped on the key. This number can be used to make a duplicate key if it is lost.
2. Lower the number plate bracket in the direction of the arrow >>> **Fig. 177**.
3. Remove the cap from the pre-installation housing and store it in the vehicle.
4. Check whether the housing, the thumbwheel ②, the shaft ④ and the locking balls ⑤ >>> **Fig. 178** of the pre-installation are clean and in good condition >>> ⚠. Clean them if necessary.

**Step 2: pre-stress the bicycle carrier pre-installation**

To fit the bicycle carrier pre-installation correctly, it must be pre-stressed.

1. Hold the pre-installation under the ball head ① with one hand.
2. Open the lock cover and insert the key ⑥ into the lock.
3. Turn the key clockwise.
4. With the other hand, pull out thumbwheel ② in the direction of arrow Ⓐ and hold it in this position >>> ⚠.
5. Turn thumbwheel ② in the direction of arrow Ⓑ until it engages.

The pre-installation is now pre-stressed. The red mark ⑩ on the thumbwheel must point to the white mark ⑧ on the pre-installation. The thumbwheel is clearly separated from the pre-installation by a distance of approx. 4 mm ⑦.

6. Check whether all locking balls ⑤ can engage fully in shaft ④ of the pre-installation.

### Step 3: fit the pre-stressed bicycle carrier pre-installation to the vehicle

Once the pre-installation has been pre-stressed, do not touch the thumbwheel again. When coupling, the thumbwheel returns to its original position and may cause injury ››› ⚠.

1. Insert the pre-stressed pre-installation into the housing tube.
2. Press the pre-installation firmly inwards until it engages. The two centring guides ③ must fit into the vehicle housings.
3. The thumbwheel has returned to its original position and there is no longer any gap between thumbwheel ② and the pre-installation.
4. Turn key ⑥ on the thumbwheel anticlockwise and remove it.
5. It should no longer be possible to turn or remove thumbwheel ②.
6. Close the lock cover and store the key in the carrying bag.

### Step 4: safety check

Before fitting a bicycle carrier, check whether the pre-installation is correctly secured.

- The green mark ⑨ on the thumbwheel must point to the white mark ⑧ on the pre-installation.
- The thumbwheel must be flush with the pre-installation, with no gap between them.
- Move the pre-installation firmly from side to side or pull it. It must be firmly engaged in the housing ››› ⚠.
- The lock must be closed and the key removed.
- The cover must cover the lock on the locking lever.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the bicycle carrier pre-installation is fitted and used incorrectly, accidents and serious injury may occur.**

- **Use the pre-installation only when it is correctly secured.**
- **Never use a bicycle carrier if the pre-installation does not engage correctly or cannot be pre-stressed.**
- **If the bicycle carrier pre-installation cannot be fitted, have it checked by a properly qualified specialist workshop. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA dealership.**
- **Never use a bicycle carrier if, once the pre-installation has been fitted, the key cannot be removed from the thumbwheel. This means that the pre-installation is not correctly locked.**
- **Once the pre-installation has been removed, always store it safely in the luggage compartment.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The bicycle carrier pre-installation is heavy. During the safety check it may come out of the housing and cause bruising.**

- **Always exercise caution when checking the bicycle carrier pre-installation.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The housing in the vehicle, the thumbwheel, the shaft and the locking balls of the pre-installation must be clean and in good condition. Otherwise, the pre-installation may not engage correctly.**

- **Regularly check that the housing, the thumbwheel, the shaft and the locking balls of the bicycle carrier pre-installation are not damaged.**
- **Do not direct the jet of a high-pressure or steam cleaner directly at the housing of the bicycle carrier pre-installation, as this could remove the grease required for lubrication from the housing.**

## Remove the pre-installation for the bicycle carrier

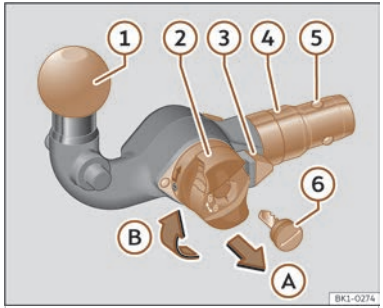



**Fig. 180** Overview: removable bicycle carrier pre-installation.

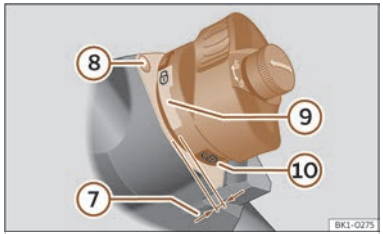



**Fig. 181** Overview (detail): removable bicycle carrier pre-installation.

››› **Fig. 180**, ››› **Fig. 181**

① Spherical head
② Thumbwheel
③ Centring guides
④ Stem
⑤ Locking balls
⑥ Key
⑦ Gap (pre-stressed bicycle carrier pre-installation)
⑧ White mark on the bicycle carrier pre-installation
⑨ Green mark on the thumbwheel
⑩ Red mark on the thumbwheel

1. Open the lock cover and insert the key ⑥ into the lock.
2. Turn the key clockwise.
3. Hold the pre-installation with one hand ››› ⚠.
4. With the other hand, pull out thumbwheel ② in the direction of arrow Ⓐ and hold it in this position .
5. Turn thumbwheel ② in the direction of arrow Ⓑ until it engages.
6. Hold thumbwheel ② in this position and pull the pre-installation out of its housing. The pre-installation is now pre-stressed.
7. Release thumbwheel ② and store the pre-stressed pre-installation safely in the carrying bag. Secure the bag to one of the luggage-compartment lashing eyes.
8. Fit the cap to the pre-installation housing.
9. Raise the number plate bracket.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The bicycle carrier pre-installation is heavy. When removing it, it may fall and cause bruising.**

- **Always remove the pre-installation with caution.**

## Fitting a rear carrier system or a bicycle carrier to the bicycle carrier pre-installation

Rear carrier systems are, e.g., bicycle carriers or multi-purpose boxes that are mounted on the bicycle carrier pre-installation.

Only use rear carrier systems that have been specified by the respective manufacturer for the vehicle model, model year and version of the vehicle in question ››› ⚠.

CUPRA recommends the use of genuine CUPRA spare parts and accessories, which can be purchased from the brand's dealers.

Install the rear carrier system according to the manufacturer's installation instructions.

### Maximum load of the rear carrier system

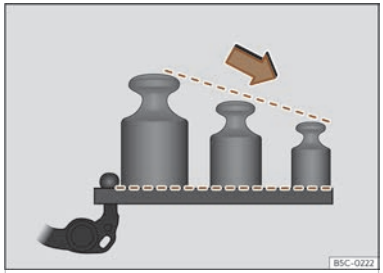



**Fig. 182** Recommended weight distribution on the rear carrier system.

The load capacity is the result of the weight of the rear carrier system and the weight of the load carried on it.

The recommended maximum load capacity of the rear carrier system fitted to the bicycle carrier pre-installation may differ from the vehicle-specific maximum vertical load on the coupling.

However, you must not exceed the maximum permitted vertical load on the bicycle carrier pre-installation (this depends on the model).

The load capacity is reduced due to the lever effect that occurs the further the carrier system is from the ball head.

Place heavy objects as close as possible to the bicycle carrier pre-installation >>> **Fig. 182**.

### Maximum load capacity depending on the vehicle

To find out the recommended load capacity for your vehicle, check the maximum vertical load on its coupling >>> **page 365**. Please refer to the following table for the load capacity. In accordance with the UN-R-55 guideline, CUPRA recommends not carrying more bicycles than recommended on the rear rack system.

| Maximum vertical load on the vehicle's specific coupling | Maximum load capacity | Number of bicycles |
|---|---|---|
| 50 kg (110 lb) | 50 kg (110 lb) | 2 |
| 55 kg (121 lb) | 55 kg (121 lb) | 2 |
| From 75 kg (165 lb) | 75 kg (165 lb) | 3 |

### Maximum load overhang of the rear carrier system

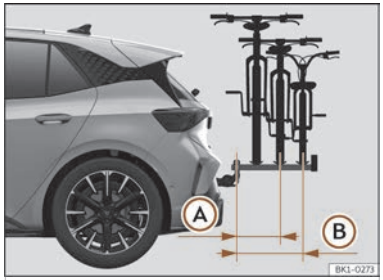



**Fig. 183** Schematic representation of the maximum load overhang of a bicycle rack for two or three bicycles.

Ⓐ With up to 55 kg (121 lb) load capacity: 500 mm (approx. 19.7 in)

Ⓑ With 75 kg (165 lb) load capacity: 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in)

The maximum overhang shall not exceed 500 mm (approx. 19.7 in) from the centre of the ball head to the centre of the rail of the last support >>> **Fig. 183** Ⓐ for two-bicycle racks. In the case of three-bicycle racks, it is not permitted for the overhang to exceed 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in) >>> **Fig. 183** Ⓑ.

**⚠ WARNING**

Incorrect use of a rear carrier system fitted to the bicycle carrier pre-installation can cause accidents and serious or fatal injury.

- Make sure that the carrier system is suitable for your vehicle.
- Always read and observe the installation instructions of the rear carrier system's manufacturer.
- Never attach a rear carrier system below the ball head of the trailer hitch. The system could slip due to the shape of the hitch.

**Note**

Before setting off, CUPRA recommends removing, to the extent possible, all accessories from the load attached to the carrier system. Examples of these accessories are baskets and panniers, child seats or batteries. This improves the aerodynamics and centre of gravity of the rear carrier system.

# Miscellaneous situations

## Vehicle tool kit

### On-board toolkit

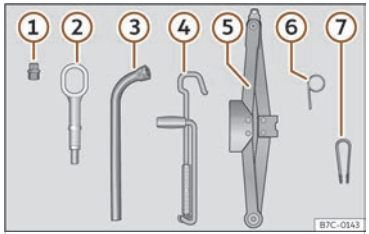



**Fig. 184** Underneath the floor panel of the luggage compartment: on-board tools.

The vehicle tool kit is located under the floor panel in the luggage compartment. To access the on-board tools >>> page 291.

The tool kit includes:

1. Adapter for the anti-theft bolt
2. Towing eye, removable
3. Wheel wrench
4. Crank handle for jack
5. Jack
6. Hook for extracting the central wheel trims
7. Clip for removing the wheel nut caps

Some of the items listed are only provided in certain model versions, or are optional extras.

The jack, jack handle and wheel wrench are only supplied for changing the wheels from summer to winter tyres, and vice versa. The wheel tool kit must not be kept permanently in the luggage compartment. Once delivered with the vehicle it must be removed from the vehicle or securely fastened in the luggage compartment.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When the vehicle tool kit, tyre mobility set and spare wheel are loose in the interior they can be violently thrown in case of a sudden manoeuvre or braking and especially in accidents, causing serious injury.**

- **Ensure that the vehicle tool kit, the tyre mobility set and the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel are safely secured in the luggage compartment.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unsuitable or damaged vehicle tools can cause injury or accidents.**

- **Never work with inappropriate or damaged tools.**

**Note**

**The jack does not generally require any maintenance. If required, it should be greased using universal type grease.**

## Changing the windscreen wiper blades

### Wiper service position

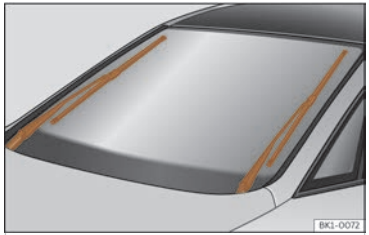



**Fig. 185** Wipers in service position.

**Fig. 186** Wiper lever

Ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen.

With the wipers in their service position, it is possible to the fold the wiper arms >>> **Fig. 185**.

- Close the front bonnet, driver's door and passenger door >>> **page 313**.
- Switch the ignition on and off.
- Press the wiper button (1) (short press) >>> **Fig. 186**.

Before driving, always lower the wiper arms. Briefly pushing the wiper lever upwards returns the wiper arms to their initial position.

**NOTICE**

- **The wiper arms can be moved into the replacement position when the front bonnet is fully closed.**
- **You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.**

## Changing the wiper rear wiper blades

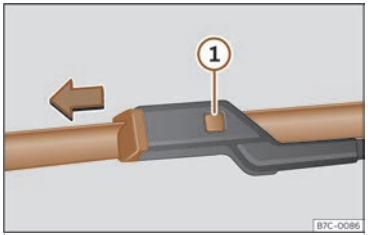



**Fig. 187** Changing the windscreen wiper blades

The windscreen wiper blades are supplied as standard with a layer of graphite. This layer is responsible for ensuring that the wipe is silent. If the graphite layer is damaged, the noise of the water as it is wiped across the windscreen will be louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly. **If the wipers scrape across the glass**, they should be changed if they are damaged, or cleaned if they are dirty >>> ⓘ.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windscreen wiper arms might be incorrect. They should be checked by a specialised workshop and corrected if necessary.

Damaged windscreen wiper blades should be replaced immediately. These are available from qualified workshops.

### Raising and lowering windscreen wiper arms

- Place the windscreen wipers in the service position >>> **page 300**.
- Grip the wiper arms **only** by the blade's attachment point.

### Cleaning the windscreen wiper blades

- Raise the wiper arms.
- Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windscreen wiper blades.
- If the blades are very dirty, a sponge or damp cloth may be used >>> ⓘ.

### Changing the windscreen wiper blades

- Lift and unfold the wiper arms.
- Press and hold release button >>> **Fig. 187** (1) and pull gently on the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

- Fit a new wiper blade of the **same length and design** on to the wiper arm and hook it into place.
- Rest the wiper arms back onto the windscreen.

### Changing the rear window wiper blade

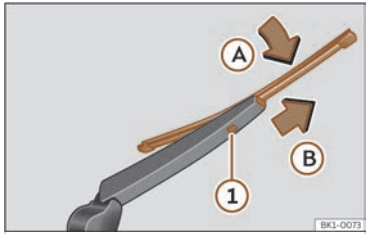



**Fig. 188** Changing the rear wiper blade

- Separate the wiper arm from the rear window.
- Rotate the blade slightly ››› **Fig. 188** (arrow Ⓐ).
- Hold down the release button ① while gently pulling the blade in the direction of the arrow Ⓑ.
- Insert a new blade of the **same length and type** in the rear wiper arm in the opposite direction to the arrow Ⓑ until button ① snaps into place.
- Fold the wiper arm and rest it on the window.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accident and serious injury.**

- **Always replace damaged or worn windscreen wiper blades or blades that no longer clean the windscreen properly.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **Damaged or dirty windscreen wipers could scratch the glass.**
- **If products containing solvents, rough sponges or sharp objects are used to clean the blades, the graphite layer will be damaged.**
- **Never use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows.**
- **In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers. In cold weather, it may help to leave the vehicle parked with the wipers in their service position** ››› **page 300**.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms, only fold them when in the service position.**
- **Before driving, always lower the wiper arms.**

# Jump start

## Introduction

Due to technical reasons, tow starting the vehicle is not allowed.

If the drive system cannot be switched on because the 12 volt battery is discharged, the 12-volt battery of another vehicle can be used for this purpose.

Jump leads complying with the DIN 72553 standard are needed for starting (see cable manufacturer's instructions). The cable cross section must be at least 25 mm². Ensure the cable has fully insulated clamps and that the insulation is free of defects.

**⚠ CAUTION**

**To avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system, take careful note of the following:**

- **If the jump leads are connected incorrectly, a short circuit may occur.**
- **Use only jump leads with fully insulated clamps.**
- **Do not allow the vehicles to come into contact with each other, otherwise current may start to flow as soon as the positive poles are connected.**

**NOTICE**

**The electric vehicle system is not designed to be used as a jump start aid for another vehicle. This may damage the vehicle's electrical system.**

**NOTICE**

**Tow starting can cause damage.**

## Jump start socket (ground terminal)

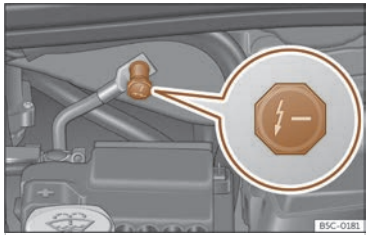



**Fig. 189** In the front compartment: jump start socket (ground terminal).

The jump start socket (ground terminal) is used for connecting the black jump lead ››› **Fig. 189**.

Only use this socket (ground terminal) when jump starting.

## Jump start: description

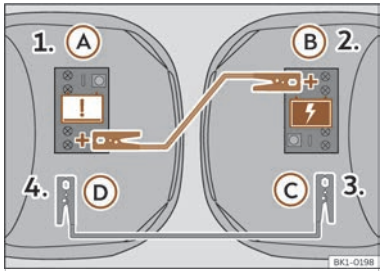



**Fig. 190** Jump lead connection diagram.

Ⓐ Positive terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

Ⓑ Positive terminal of the vehicle supplying the current.

Ⓒ Suitable earth point of the vehicle providing the jump start.

Ⓓ Earth point of the vehicle receiving the jump start.

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the on-board network.

Make sure that the clamps have sufficient metal contact when connecting them to the poles.

Gloves and eye protection are recommended before starting work on the 12-volt battery.

### Jump lead terminal connections

The jump leads should only be connected in the order **1 > 2 > 3 > 4** ››› **Fig. 190**.

Never connect the *black* jump lead to the negative pole **—** of the 12-volt battery. Connecting it to the negative pole may cause an incorrect assessment of the status of the battery in the vehicle's electronic system.

1. Switch off the ignition of both vehicles ››› ⚠.
2. Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal **+** of the vehicle with the flat 12-volt battery Ⓐ.
3. Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal **+** in the vehicle providing the jump start Ⓑ.
4. Connect one end of the *black* jump lead Ⓒ to a suitable ground terminal, to a solid piece of metal in the engine block, or to the engine block itself.
5. Connect one end of the *black* jump lead Ⓓ to a suitable ground terminal in the vehicle with the flat 12 volt battery.
6. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any rotating part in the front compartment.

### Starting

1. Start the engine of the vehicle supplying the current and leave it running at idle, or switch on the ignition of the electric vehicle.
2. Turn on the drive system of the electric vehicle with the flat 12 volt battery.

If the system does not switch on, seek the assistance of specialist personnel.

### Disconnecting the jump leads

1. Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlight if it is on.
2. Only disconnect the jump leads in the order **4 > 3 > 2 > 1** with the drive system switched on and the engine of the vehicle supplying the current running, or the electric vehicle ignition switched on.
3. Close the battery cover if necessary.

If the drive system cannot be switched on, suspend the process and try again after approx. 1 minute. If the drive system still does not switch on, seek the assistance of qualified personnel.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Please note the warnings when working in the front compartment** ›››  page 313.
- **The battery supplying the current must have the same voltage (12 V) and a similar capacity to the discharged battery. Failure to comply could result in an explosion.**
- **Keep any sources of ignition (flames, cigarettes, etc.) far enough away from the batteries. They may cause an explosion.**
- **Observe the usage instructions of the jump lead manufacturer.**
- **On the other vehicle, do not connect the negative cable directly to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. Any sparks could ignite the igniter gas coming out of the battery and could cause an explosion.**
- **The negative wire must never be connected to fuel system components or brake lines on the other vehicle.**
- **Do not touch uninsulated parts of the pole clamps. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle, this can cause a short circuit.**
- **Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any rotating parts in the front compartment.**
- **Do not rest your body on the batteries, as this could cause burns.**
- **Take into account the instruction manual of the jump lead manufacturer and the instruction manual of the other vehicle.**
- **Before starting work on the 12 volt battery, discharge any static electricity to avoid sparks that could ignite battery gases.**

**⚠ CAUTION**

**Never use jump leads when one of the batteries is frozen. Danger of explosion! Even once thawed, electrolyte leaks can cause burns. Replace the battery if it is frozen.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Immediately go to a specialist workshop and have the 12 volt battery checked.**

# Towing the vehicle

## Introduction

It takes practice to tow a vehicle, especially when using a tow cable. Both drivers should be well informed of the special features of towing. Inexperienced drivers should refrain from towing.

During towing, make sure at all times that no inadmissible pulling forces or jolts are caused. On roads without a firm surface there is always the danger of overloading the attachment parts.

Observe the legal provisions regarding towing.

### Towing

Towing means a vehicle pulling another vehicle that is not in a condition to drive.

The vehicle can be towed with a tow bar or cable.

- The speed limit is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- The maximum permitted distance is 50 km (30 miles).

### Tow cable and tow bar

It is safer for the vehicle to be towed using a tow bar, avoiding damage to the vehicle. The tow cable should only be used if a tow bar is not available.

A tow rope should be slightly elastic to avoid damage to both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

### Towing with a tow truck

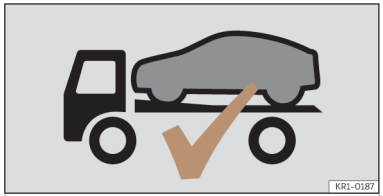



**Fig. 191** Towing permitted.

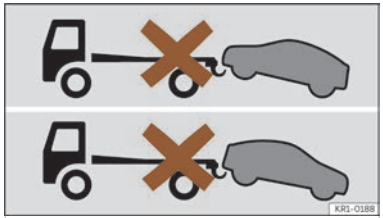



**Fig. 192** Towing not permitted.

The vehicle may only be transported on a tow truck if all four wheels are supported.

### Deactivating roll-away protection

››› page 209

If necessary, to release the parking brake so that the vehicle can be pushed or towed:

- Keep the brake pedal pressed down and select the **N** position on the gear selector. Next, confirm **Deactivate roll-away protection** in the Infotainment System.
- **OR:** open the vehicle settings in the infotainment system **Vehicle > Exterior > Brakes > Deactivate the *"Roll-away protection function"***.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When towing a vehicle, the driving behaviour and braking capacity change considerably.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never allow the vehicle to be towed if it has no power.**

- **When towing, never switch off the ignition with the ignition/start button. Otherwise, the electronic lock of the steering column could suddenly get blocked and it would be impossible to steer the vehicle. This could cause an accident, serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle.**
- **If the vehicle runs out of power during towing, stop the process immediately and seek the assistance of specialised personnel.**

**NOTICE**

**Towing the vehicle with a tow cable or a tow bar can cause damage to the vehicle.**

- **If the vehicle is towed with a tow cable or tow bar, special care must be taken.**
- **If possible, have the vehicle transported on a tow truck.**

**NOTICE**

**If the vehicle is pushed by hand, the tail light units, the side spoilers of the rear window and large sheet metal surfaces may be damaged. In addition, the rear spoiler could be detached.**

- **If the vehicle is pushed by hand, the tail light units, the side spoilers of the rear window, large sheet metal surfaces or the rear spoiler.**

**NOTICE**

**Removing and attaching the cover and the towing eye may cause damage to the vehicle, for example, on the paintwork.**

- **To avoid damaging the vehicle, remove and replace the cover and the towing eye carefully.**

**NOTICE**

**Using a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage it.**

- **When towing, always use the vehicle's towing eye, which forms part of the on-board tools, or an appropriate eye for towing.**

## Towing instructions

During towing, the change of direction can be signalled on the towed vehicle even when the hazard warning lights are on. To do so, at the same time, the turn signal lever must be operated with ignition switched on. During this time the hazard warning lights remain disconnected. When the turn signal lever is returned to the neutral position, the hazard warning lights will be automatically reactivated.

### Cases where the vehicle must never be towed

Do not allow the vehicle to be towed for a long distance on its wheels in the following situations:

- A red warning light lights up on the instrument cluster display and a message is displayed:

**Towing damages the electrical system. Manual!**

- The power supply of the on-board 12-volt electrical system cannot be guaranteed.
- The 12-volt battery is discharged. The steering remains locked and, if applicable, the parking brake cannot be released and the electronic steering column lock cannot be released if they are engaged.
- The indicator on the instrument cluster display is not working properly.
- It is not possible to set the gears to neutral (**N**).
- There is no guarantee that the wheels will turn smoothly or that the steering will work after an accident.

If the vehicle cannot be towed on its wheels for any of the reasons mentioned above, request assistance from specialised personnel and, if necessary, have the vehicle transported without the wheels touching the ground. Inform the people involved in the towing process, especially the organising centre and the carrier, that it is an electric vehicle.

## Towing

### Preliminary steps

- Secure the tow cable or tow bar using only the attachment points provided for this purpose >>> ⚠. Depending on the equipment, these points may be a towing device or a towing eye.

- Make sure the tow cable is not twisted. Otherwise the towing eye could unscrew during towing.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights of both vehicles. If necessary, take into account other different provisions that may exist in this regard.
- Take into account the instructions on towing provided in the instruction manual of the other vehicle.

### Towing vehicle (lead)

The vehicle is not suitable for towing other vehicles.

### Towed vehicle (following)

1. Make sure the ignition is switched on so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that, if necessary, you can use the turn signals and the windscreen wiper.
2. The brake servo and the power steering only works with the drive system connected. Otherwise, you will have to depress the brake pedal considerably harder and more force will be needed to turn the steering wheel.
3. Make sure the tow cable is always taut.
4. Select the **N** gear position.

If the necessary conditions for towing the vehicle are not met, towing or pushing it on all four wheels is permitted only in emergencies.

It may only be towed at walking pace and for a maximum of 100 metres until reaching the recovery truck ››› ⚠.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle is towed despite the message "*Towing damages the electrical system. Manual!*" being shown on the instrument cluster display, vibrations can occur in the traction system and the rear wheels may lock, especially if the road is wet or icy. Wheel locking can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injury.**

- **If the message "*Towing damages the electrical system. Manual!*" is shown on the instrument cluster, only tow the vehicle in emergency situations, at walking speed (4-5 km/h) and for a maximum of 100 m.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Never attach the tow rope or tow bar to axle or running gear components. They could be damaged, resulting in an accident and serious injury.**

- **Seek specialist assistance and, if applicable, have the vehicle transported on a tow truck.**

## Front towing eye

**Fig. 193** Front bumper on right: remove the lid.

**Fig. 194** Right side of the front bumper: towing eye screwed in.

The housing of the removable towing eye is on the right side of the front bumper underneath a cover ››› **Fig. 193**.

The towing eye should always be kept in the vehicle.

Bear in mind the instructions for towing ››› page 306.

### Fitting the towing eye

1. Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ››› page 300.
2. Remove the cover by pressing down on its base and leave it hanging from the vehicle ››› Fig. 193.
3. Screw the towing eye into the housing by turning it **anticlockwise** ››› Fig. 194 , ››› ⓘ as far as it will go. Use a suitable object that can completely and securely tighten the towing eye in its housing.
4. After towing, unscrew the towing eye **clockwise** with a suitable object.
5. Replace the cover and push it in until it clicks into place.
6. Clean the towing eye if necessary and then store it in the luggage compartment along with the other vehicle tools.

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**The towing eye must always be completely and firmly tightened. Otherwise, it could jump out of the housing during towing.**

# Fuses

## Introduction

In general, a fuse can be assigned to various electrical components. Likewise, an electrical component can be protected by several fuses.

Only replace fuses when the cause of the problem has been solved. If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by a specialised workshop as soon as possible.

### Fuses for the emergency services (high voltage system)

In the fuse box inside the vehicle ››› page 309 there is a high voltage system fuse marked with a little yellow flag that allows the emergency services to cut off the vehicle's voltage as quickly as possible. Never replace this fuse yourself or place it where other fuses are located. If this fuse fails, have it replaced by a qualified specialist workshop.

### Rescue cut-off point (high voltage system)

Under the right rear tail light there is a loop also identified with a yellow flag which, if necessary, can be cut by the emergency services. **Warning! To access this loop, remove the tail light's lower rubber waterproof seal, or remove the tail light or, in extreme cases, break it.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**The high voltages in the electrical system can give serious electrical shocks, causing burns and even death!**

- **Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.**
- **Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses or fitting jumpers on a live circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injury.**

- **Never use a fuse with a higher value. Only replace fuses with a fuse of the same amperage (same colour and markings) and size.**
- **Never replace a fuse with a metal strip, staple or similar.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to the vehicle's electrical system, before replacing a fuse always turn off the ignition, the lights and all electrical components.**
- **When replacing fuses, make sure that it is not possible to switch on the drive system.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to prevent the entry of dust or humidity as they can damage the electrical system.**

**NOTICE**

**Never remove the high-voltage fuse marked with a special flag in the dash panel fuse box. This fuse is used exclusively by the emergency services to de-energise the vehicle as quickly as possible.**

**The high voltage system's fuse loop (rescue cut-off point) is only designed for use by qualified emergency services. If damaged, the high voltage system is deactivated.**

**Note**

**In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be replaced by a specialist workshop.**

## Fuses inside the vehicle

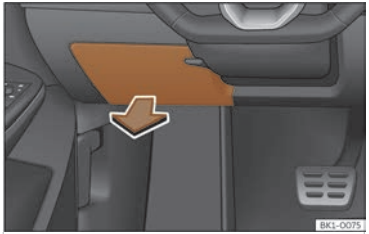



**Fig. 195** On the dash panel on the driver side: fuse box cover.

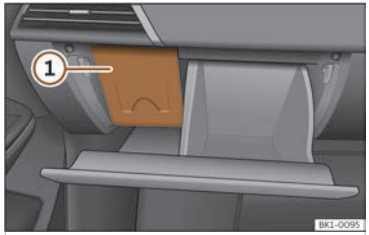



**Fig. 196** Right-hand drive vehicles: fuse box cover under the passenger side dash panel.

### Left-hand drive vehicles: open the fuse box cover under the dash panel

- Grasp the back of the cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow ››› **Fig. 195**.
- To fit the cover, place it on the opposite side and close it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

### Right-hand drive vehicles: opening the fuse box inside the glove compartment

- Open the glove compartment and, if necessary, empty it.
- Remove the cover from above ››› **Fig. 196** ①.
- To fit the cover, put it in place and snap on the top. Close the glove compartment.

### Identifying fuses below the dash panel by colours

| Colour | Current intensity in amps |
|---|---|
| Light brown | 5 |
| Brown | 7.5 |
| Red | 10 |
| Blue | 15 |
| Yellow | 20 |
| White or transparent | 25 |
| Green | 30 |
| Orange | 40 |
| Red | 50 |

**NOTICE**

- **Always carefully remove the fuse box covers and refit them correctly to avoid problems with your vehicle.**
- **Protect the fuse boxes when open to avoid the entry of dust or humidity. Dirt and humidity inside fuse boxes can cause damage to the electrical system.**

## Fuses in the front compartment

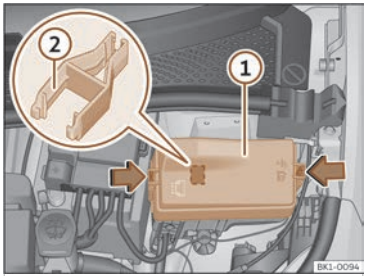



**Fig. 197** In the front compartment: fuse box cover.

### Opening the fuse box in the front compartment

- Open the front bonnet ››› ⚠ on page 313.
- Press the locking tabs to unlock the fuse box cover ››› Fig. 197 ①.
- Then lift the cover out.
- To **fit** the cover, place it on the fuse box. Push the locking tabs down until they click audibly into place.

In the fuse box there may be plastic tweezers for removing fuses ››› Fig. 197 ②.

## Replace a blown fuse

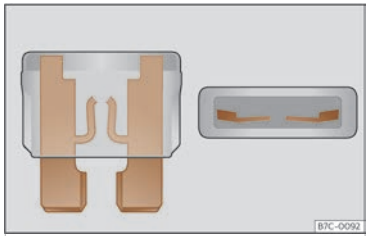



**Fig. 198** Image of a blown fuse.

### Preparations

- Switch off the ignition, lights and all electrical equipment.
- Open the corresponding fuse box ››› page 309, ››› page 310.

### Recognise a blown fuse

A blown fuse can be recognised if the metal strip is melted ››› Fig. 198.

- Point a torch at the fuse to see if it has blown.

### To replace a fuse

- Remove the fuse.
- Replace the blown fuse with one with an *identical* amperage rating (same colour and markings) and *identical* size.
- Replace the cover again or close the fuse box lid.

## Fuse placement

### Fuses in the vehicle interior

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | Airbag control unit | 15 |
| 3 | Trailer detection control unit | 25 |
| 4 | Front camera / Interior rear-view mirror with automatic dimming | 7.5 |
| 5 | On-board network control unit | 25 |
| 6 | On-board network control unit | 30 |
| 7 | Seat heating control unit | 30 |
| 8 | Sunroof | 20 |
| 9 | Rear left window control / left hand door control unit | 30 |
| 10 | Left tail light | 10 |
| 11 | Trailer detection control unit | 15 |
| 13 | On-board network control unit | 40 |
| 14 | Digital sound amplifier | 20 |

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| 17 | Exterior mirrors / Park assist control unit / Blind spot control unit | 5 |
| 18 | Access and start system / Steering column lock / Control unit for anti-theft protection / Sensor for the contact of the front-left door handle / Antenna for external vehicle communication | 5 |
| 19 | Instrument cluster / Navigation system / Emergency call | 5 |
| 20 | Transmission and reception stabilisation control unit / Mobile interface / Media device interface | 15 |
| 21 | Top view camera | 7.5 |
| 22 | Motor control unit | 10 |
| 24 | Right tail light | 5 |
| 25 | Driver's seat belt | 25 |
| 26 | Right rear window control unit / Right-hand door control unit | 30 |
| 27 | Passenger seat belt | 25 |
| 28 | Rescue and high-voltage system manual disconnection point. Identified by a yellow label | 10 |

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| 29 | Trailer detection control unit | 15 |
| 30 | ICAS3 control unit | 25 |
| 31 | Trailer detection control unit | 25 |
| 32 | On-board network control unit | 25 |
| 33 | USB 90W | 20 |
| 34 | Heating and air-conditioning control unit | 15 |
| 36 | Fan | 40 |
| 38 | Control unit for front seats with massage function | 7.5 |
| 39 | Steering column control unit | 10 |
| 40 | Alarm horn | 7.5 |
| 41 | Diagnostics for the data bus | 5 |
| 42 | Interior sound control unit | 5 |
| 43 | Relay R3_LVI / Vehicle interior temperature sensor / Vehicle interior carbon dioxide sensor | 7.5 |
| 44 | Diagnostics / Power window control unit / Anti-theft alarm system sensor / Roof module (LINDA) / Air humidity, rain and light sensor / hazard warning light switch / Lighting control unit (LIAM) | 7.5 |
| 45 | Steering column control unit | 5 |

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| 46 | Screen control unit / Front projection (head-up display) control unit | 7.5 |
| 47 | Suspension control unit (DSTG) | 10 |
| 52 | 12V socket in luggage compartment | 20 |
| 59 | Electrochromic mirror / Relay R1_LVI | 7.5 |
| 60 | Diagnosis | 7.5 |
| 61 | Inverter for the rear axle drive motor | 5 |
| 65 | Control unit for special vehicles KFG | 10 |
| 66 | Rear window wiper | 15 |
| 67 | Rear window heating / Filter for frequency modulation | 30 |

## Individual fuses

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| SITR10 | B-rack slot Front right hand seat settings control panel | 15 |
| SITR2 | A-Frame Slot - Front left hand seat adjustment control panel | 15 |
| SITR_KFG1 | Control unit for special vehicles KFG | 30 |

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| SITR_ KFG2 | Control unit for special vehicles KFG | 30 |

### Fuses in the front compartment

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | ABS control unit | 7.5 |
| 3 | On-board charger / Power and control electronics for the electric drive / Voltage transformer | 15 |
| 4 | Front left LED headlight | 30 |
| 5 | Front right LED headlight | 30 |
| 6 | Distance control unit (MRR) | 7.5 |
| 7 | Front right wiper motor | 30 |
| 9 | Horn relay | 15 |
| 10 | Front left wiper motor | 30 |
| 11 | Air conditioning relay | 7.5 |
| 12 | Actuator 1 for engine sound generation | 7.5 |
| 13 | ABS control unit | 25 |
| 15 | ABS control unit | 40 |
| 16 | Cooling fan | 50 |
| 23 | Engine control unit | 10 |
| 24 | Cooling fan | 5 |

| No. | Consumers/Amps | |
|---|---|---|
| 25 | High-voltage heating (PTC) / HV battery heating / Cooling pump for thermal management | 15 |
| 26 | Radiator jalouise / Water pump (HV heater) | 15 |
| 32 | Brake servo | 50 |

**Note**

- **In the vehicle, there are more fuses than those indicated in this chapter. These should only be changed by a specialised workshop.**
- **Positions not containing a fuse do not appear in the tables.**
- **Some of the equipment listed in the tables pertain only to certain versions of the model or are optional extras.**
- **Please note that the above lists, while correct at the time of printing, are subject to change.**

# Changing bulbs

## Change a bulb

**LED technology lights**

Full-LED headlights handle all light functions (daylight, side light, turn signal, dipped beam and full beam) with light emitting diodes (LEDs) as a light source.

The outdoor lighting system's LED lighting does not require a maintenance service. If any component fails, go to an authorised service to have it replaced.

# Checking and refilling levels

## Front compartment

### Working in the front compartment

The vehicle's front compartment is a hazardous area. You should only perform works in the engine compartment if you have good knowledge of the necessary operations and the general safety measures, and if you have adequate tools, means and operating fluids. Works performed inadequately could lead to serious injuries ››› ⚠. In this case, get a specialised workshop to perform all the works. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

Before performing any work in the engine compartment, always park the vehicle on level and firm ground, taking all necessary safety precautions.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The high voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns, other injuries and fatal electric shocks.**

- **Always assume that the high-voltage battery is charged and that all high-voltage components are live. This can be the case even when the ignition is switched off.**
- **Never touch damaged components of the high-voltage system or rub against them with jewellery or other metal objects. It is not always possible to detect that they are damaged.**
- **Never work on the orange high-voltage cables or other high-voltage components. Only specialist workshops authorised to work on the high-voltage system are permitted to work on it.**
- **Never damage, modify or remove the orange coloured high-voltage cables, and never uncouple them from the high-voltage network.**
- **Never work near high-voltage components and cables if tools that are sharp, cause deformation or give of shavings, or heat sources, are required. Only authorised specialist workshops are permitted to work on or near the high-voltage system.**
- **The gases that are released or leaked from the high-voltage battery may be toxic or flammable.**
- **Any damage caused to the vehicle or the high-voltage battery can lead to an immediate or subsequent leak of toxic gases or liquids. These gases can also cause a fire. Do not inhale the gases.**
- **Never touch liquids that may leak from the high voltage battery.**
- **In the event of a fire, leave the danger area and call the fire department.**
- **Always inform the fire brigade emergency services that the vehicle is fitted with a high-voltage battery.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If works are performed on the high-voltage system and on the high-voltage components in an inappropriate manner, this may lead to faults in the operation, accidents and injuries.**

- **Only specialist workshops authorised to work on the high-voltage system are permitted to work on it.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Any accidental movement of the vehicle during maintenance work could cause serious injuries.**

- **Never perform works underneath the vehicle without having first immobilised it to prevent it from moving. When working under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level surface and the wheels must be locked.**
- **If work must be performed underneath the vehicle, take the extra precaution of supporting it safely using a suitable support assembly. The jack is not suitable for this purpose and may not provide support, which could lead to serious injuries.**

**⚠ WARNING**

The front compartment of any vehicle is a hazardous area in which serious injuries can occur!

- When performing any type of work, always ensure you are extremely cautious, and bear in mind the general safety measures. Never put yourself at risk.
- Never work in the front compartment if you do not have solid knowledge of the necessary operations. If you are unsure of what needs to be done, seek a specialised workshop to perform the works. Works performed inadequately could lead to serious injuries.
- Never open or close the front bonnet if steam or coolant is escaping. Steam or hot coolant can cause severe burns. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the front compartment.
- If you touch hot parts of the electric drive system, you may suffer skin burns.

- Before opening the front bonnet, please note the following:
  - The electronic parking brake must be applied.
  - Keep the vehicle key in a safe place and at a safe distance from the vehicle so that it is not possible to inadvertently switch on the drive system and energise the electrical system.
  - Always keep children away from the front compartment and never leave them unattended.
- When the electric drive system is hot, its cooling system is under pressure. Do not open the expansion tank cap. Hot coolant may splash out and cause severe burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the coolant expansion tank cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while pressing it down slightly.
  - Always protect your face, hands and arms from the hot coolant and steam with a large thick cloth.

**⚠ WARNING**

The electrical system is under high voltage and can cause electrical shocks, burns, serious injuries and even death!

- Never short circuit the electrical system. The 12-volt battery could explode.
- To reduce the risk of suffering a fatal electrical shock and serious injuries, while the drive system is connected or is connecting, never touch the high-voltage components, the high-voltage battery or the high-voltage system, especially the orange coloured high-voltage cables.

**⚠ WARNING**

There are rotating parts in the front compartment which could cause serious injury.

- Never insert your hand into the radiator fan or around that area. All the rotor blades can cause serious injuries. The fan activates depending on the temperature and can switch on automatically, even if the ignition is off.
- If you have to perform works while the drive system is connecting or connected, bear in mind that the rotating parts (i.e. the radiator fan) represent a fatal hazard. Always act with extreme care.
  - Ensure that no part of your body, or any jewellery or tie, loose clothing, loose long hair can become trapped in the rotating parts. Before performing works in the en-

gine compartment, remove any jewellery or tie you may be wearing, tie up your hair if it is long and gather any loose clothing.

– Do not press the accelerator pedal while not paying attention. Always do so with extreme care.

- Do not leave objects in the front compartment, e.g. rags or tools. They could cause functional failures, damage to the electric drive system and even a fire.

**⚠ WARNING**

If additional insulating elements such as blankets are placed in the front compartment, this could prevent the electric drive system from operating properly, could cause a fire and could result in serious injury.

- Never cover the electric drive system with blankets or other insulating materials.

**⚠ WARNING**

Operating fluids and some materials in the front compartment are highly flammable and can cause fire and serious injury!

- Never smoke near the front compartment.
- Never perform works close to unprotected flames or sparks.
- When you must perform works on the on-board 12 volt electrical system, bear in mind the following:

– Always disconnect the 12 volt battery. Ensure the vehicle is unlocked when disconnecting the 12-volt battery, otherwise the anti-theft alarm will trigger.

– Never perform works in the vicinity of heating elements, water boilers or unprotected flames.

- Always have a fire extinguisher close-by. Make sure it is operational and has been inspected.

**NOTICE**

When refilling or changing the operating fluids, ensure you pour the correct fluids into their corresponding filler caps. Using the wrong operating fluids can lead to serious malfunctions and engine damage.

**NOTICE**

After an accident or hitting an obstacle with the underside of the vehicle, the high-voltage battery must be checked by duly qualified and trained technicians.

**For the sake of the environment**

Operating fluids that overflow from the vehicle contaminate the environment. Therefore, check underneath the vehicle on a regular basis. If there are marks on the ground left by operating fluids, consult a specialised workshop and request the vehicle be checked. If any operating fluid leaks out, dispose of it in the correct manner.

## Preparing the vehicle for work in the front compartment

Before performing works in the front compartment, always perform the following operations in the stated order ››› ⚠:

1. Place the vehicle on level and firm ground, taking all necessary safety precautions.
2. Press the brake pedal and hold it down until you disconnect the drive system.
3. Apply the electronic parking brake on the gear selector.
4. Disconnect the drive system ››› page 161.
5. Remove the vehicle key from the vehicle and store it outside to avoid inadvertently starting the vehicle ››› page 163.
6. Always keep other people away from the front compartment.
7. Immobilize the vehicle so that it cannot move.

**⚠ WARNING**

**For your own safety, do not ignore this important check list, otherwise accidents and serious injuries could be caused.**

- **Always follow the indications on the check list and always bear in mind the general safety measures.**

## Opening and closing the front bonnet

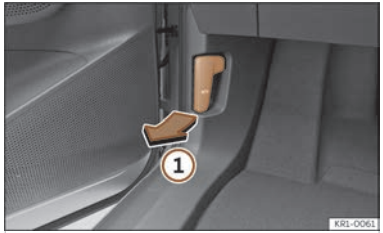



**Fig. 199** Release lever in the driver's footwell area.

**Fig. 200** Lever under the bonnet.

### Open the front bonnet

The front bonnet is released from inside.

Before opening the bonnet, make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are in place against the windscreen.

- Open the door and pull the lever that is underneath the dash panel ››› **Fig. 199** ①.
- To lift the bonnet, press towards the left on the lever located under the bonnet, in the centre ››› **Fig. 200** ②. The fastening hooks are unlocked.
- The bonnet can be opened. Release the bonnet prop and secure it in the fixture designed for this in the bonnet.

### Closing the front bonnet

- Slightly lift the bonnet.
- Release the bonnet prop and replace it in its support.
- At a height of approximately 20 cm let it fall so it locks.

If the bonnet does not close, do not press downwards. Open it again and let it fall as mentioned above.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure that the bonnet is properly closed. If it opens when driving, it can cause an accident.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**In certain weather conditions, ice or snow may build up between the bonnet and windscreen; do not force the bonnet open until you are sure that there is no ice or snow, especially in the hinge area.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**To avoid damage to the bonnet and to the windscreen wiper arms, only open it when the windscreen wipers are in place against the windscreen.**

# Fluids and consumables

## Introduction

All fluids and consumables, such as engine coolant or vehicle batteries, are subject to continuous development. For this reason, whenever a fluid or consumable needs to be replaced, please contact a specialist workshop.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If unsuitable fluids and consumables are used or used improperly, accidents, injuries, burns and severe poisoning can occur.**

- **Only store operating fluids in their original containers, tightly closed.**
- **Never store operating fluids in empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers, as they could be ingested by somebody.**
- **Keep all fluids and consumables out of reach of children.**
- **Always read and observe the information and warnings given on containers of operating fluids.**
- **When using products that emit harmful vapours, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.**

**NOTICE**

**Use only appropriate operating fluids. Never confuse operating fluids. This could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Leakages of operating fluids can contaminate the environment. If any operating fluid leaks, collect it in an appropriate container and dispose of it properly and in an environmentally friendly manner.**

# Cooling system

## Introduction

Only carry out work on the engine cooling system yourself if you are familiar with the necessary operations and the generally applicable safety measures, and if you have the appropriate tools, equipment and operating fluids. Works performed inadequately could lead to serious injuries . In this case, get a specialised workshop to perform all the works. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

In the “Troubleshooting” section at the end of this chapter can be found information on the warning and control lamps that may light up ››› page 320.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Engine coolant is toxic! Contact with coolant, especially ingestion, can cause serious or fatal injury.**

- **If you swallow coolant, seek medical assistance immediately.**
- **If your health is affected after working with coolant, seek medical assistance immediately.**
- **Only store coolant in its original container, tightly closed and in a safe place.**
- **Never store motor coolant in empty food cans, bottles or other empty containers, as it could be ingested by another person.**
- **Always keep motor coolant out of reach of children.**
- **Avoid frequent contact with coolant to prevent skin damage.**
- **Protect your skin, face and especially your eyes when working with coolant.**
- **Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with coolant.**
- **Wash your skin with soap and water after working with coolant.**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Coolants and additives can contaminate the environment. If any operating fluid leaks out, collect it and dispose of it properly and in an environmentally friendly manner.**

## Coolant specifications

The factory fitted engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of specially treated water and at least 40% coolant additive G12evo (TL-VW 774 L).

Get information from a specialist workshop about which coolant is suitable for your vehicle. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

To protect the engine cooling system, the additive percentage should **always** be at least 40%. If more antifreeze protection is required for climatic reasons, the additive proportion can be increased. However, it should only be increased up to a maximum of 55 %, otherwise the antifreeze protection would be reduced and the cooling effect would be impaired.

The G12evo (TL-VW 774 L) can be recognised by its lilac colouring. This mixture of water and additive not only provides antifreeze protection down to -25°C (-13°F), but also protects the light alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion, prevents limescale build-up and considerably raises the boiling point of the coolant.

When topping up the coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% of the appropriate coolant additive should be used for optimum corrosion protection >>> page 318.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the vehicle's cooling system does not have sufficient antifreeze protection, the electric drive system could fail and this could result in serious injury.**

- **Ensure that the coolant fluid additive percentage is correct, taking into account the lowest ambient temperature expected in the location where the vehicle is to be used.**
- **When the outside temperature is very low, the coolant could freeze and the vehicle could be immobilised. In this case, the heating would not work either and inadequately dressed passengers could die of cold.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Never mix G12evo coolant (TL-VW 774 L) with engine coolants not approved by CUPRA.**

- **If the fluid in the expansion tank does not have a pink colour (resulting from mixing the lilac additive with distilled water), but is, for example, brown, the suitable coolant may have been mixed with another unsuitable one. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case! Otherwise serious malfunctions or damage to the electric drive system and the cooling system could occur!**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Motor coolant and its additives can pollute the environment. If any operating fluid leaks out, collect it and dispose of it properly and in an environmentally friendly manner.**

## Check and refill the coolant

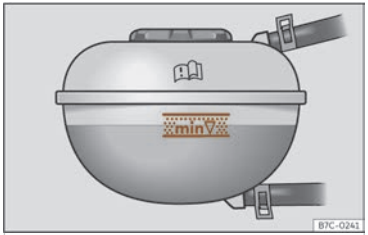



**Fig. 201** In the front compartment: marking on coolant expansion tank.

**Fig. 202** Front compartment: coolant expansion tank cap.

### Preliminary steps

- Park the vehicle on a firm, flat surface.
- Wait for the electric drive system to cool down ››› ⚠.
- Open the front bonnet ››› ⚠ in *Working in the front compartment* on page 313.
- The motor coolant expansion tank can be recognised by the symbol on the cap ››› Fig. 202

### Check the level

When the vehicle is delivered (new vehicles), the coolant may be above the marked area. This is normal. It is not necessary to suck the coolant out.

- When the electric drive system is cold, check the coolant level using the side marking on the expansion tank ››› Fig. 201. The coolant level should be between the marks.
- If the level is below the minimum level mark (min) on the tank, top up with coolant. When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the upper mark.

### Topping up the fluid

When the motor coolant level is too low, the coolant warning light comes on. In this case, immediately seek assistance from specialist personnel.

If the coolant level is too low and there is no workshop nearby, note the following:

- Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth over the cap of the motor coolant expansion tank.
- Carefully unscrew the cap ››› ⚠.
- Only top up with **fresh** coolant according to CUPRA specifications ››› page 318.
- Only top up with coolant if there is still some coolant left in the expansion tank; otherwise the drive system could be damaged! If you do not see any coolant in the expansion tank, **do not continue driving** and seek specialist assistance.
- If there is still some coolant left in the expansion tank, top up with coolant up to the tank's upper mark and check the level the next day. If the level drops **again**, go to a workshop and request a check of the cooling system.
- The coolant level must be between the marks on the expansion tank ››› Fig. 201. **Never exceed the top edge of the marked area** ››› ⚠.
- Screw the cap on tightly.
- If engine coolant with the recommended specifications is not available in an emergency, do not use any other coolant additive! In this case, top up with **distilled water** ››› ⓘ only. Next, ensure that the recommended additive is topped up as soon as possible in the correct proportion ››› page 318.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Steam and hot engine coolant can cause severe burns.**

- **Never open the front bonnet if you see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the front compartment. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping. Touching hot parts can result in skin burns.**

- Before opening the front bonnet, please note the following:
  - Apply the electronic parking brake.
  - Always keep children away from the front compartment and never leave them unattended.
- When the electric drive system is hot, its cooling system is under pressure. Do not open the expansion tank cap. Hot coolant may splash out and cause severe burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anticlockwise while pressing it down slightly.
  - Always protect your face, hands and arms from the hot coolant and steam with a large thick cloth.

**NOTICE**

Only use distilled water! Other types of water contain chemical substances that could cause significant corrosion damage. If you have added non-distilled water, have all of the drive system's coolant changed immediately by a specialist workshop.

- When heated, the coolant expands. If coolant is filled above the marked area, excess liquid may overflow and damage the vehicle.
- When topping up the, do not fill over the upper edge of the marked area >>> Fig. 201. Otherwise, when the temperature rises the excess fluid will be expelled from the engine cooling system and could cause damage.

- If the system leaks a lot of coolant, only refill once the drive system has *cooled down completely*. If there is a significant loss of coolant, there may be leaks in the cooling system. Immediately go to a specialist workshop to have the system checked. This could damage the drive system!
- Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is completely empty! Air may have got into the cooling system. Do not continue driving and seek assistance from specialist personnel. This could damage the drive system!
- When changing the operating fluids, make sure that you pour the correct fluids into the correct filler necks. Using the wrong operating fluids can lead to serious malfunctions and damage to the electric drive system.

## Troubleshooting

**Motor coolant fluid**

The warning lamp flashes red.

The motor coolant temperature is too high or the motor coolant level is too low.

- **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and in a safe place.
- Switch off the drive system.
- Wait for the electric drive system to cool down.
- Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank >>> page 318.

If the warning lamp does not go out even though the motor coolant level is correct, do not continue to drive or leave the engine running.

- Seek specialist assistance.

**together with : Failure in the cooling system of the high-voltage system**

The warning lamps flash red.

Stop the vehicle immediately!

- Switch off the drive system.
- Seek specialist assistance.

# Brake fluid

## Check and refill the brake fluid

**Fig. 203** Front compartment: brake fluid reservoir cap.

### Checking the brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings.

However, if the brake fluid level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the MIN mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. Seek specialist assistance. A warning light on the instrument cluster display monitors the brake fluid level.

### Brake fluid level

The control lamp lights up red.

Brake fluid level is too low.

- **Stop driving!**
- Check the brake fluid level.
- If the brake fluid level is too low, seek specialist assistance.

### Changing brake fluid

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by a Technical Service.

**WARNING**

**If the brake fluid level is low or unsuitable/old brake fluid is used, the brake system may fail or braking power may be reduced.**

- **Check the brake system and the brake fluid level regularly!**
- **When the brake fluid is used and brakes are subjected to extreme braking forces, bubbles of vapour form in the brake system. These bubbles can significantly reduce braking power, notably increasing braking distance, and could result in the total failure of the brake system.**
- **Be sure to always use the correct brake fluid. Only use brake fluid that expressly meets the VW 501 14 standard.**
- **You can buy VW 501 14 standard brake fluid at a specialised CUPRA service or at a SEAT Official Service. If none is available, use only high-quality brake fluid that meets DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 standards, or USA Standards FMVSS 116 DOT 4.**
- **The replacement brake fluid must be new.**
- **Brake fluid should be stored in the closed original container in a safe place out of reach of children. Risk of poisoning!**

**NOTICE**

**Brake fluid should not come into contact with the vehicle paintwork, as it is abrasive.**

**Note**

**Brake fluid is an environmental pollutant. Collect any spilt service fluids get a professional to dispose of them.**

## Windscreen washer reservoir

### Checking the level of the windscreen washer reservoir and refilling it

**Fig. 204** In the front compartment: blue cap of the windscreen washer reservoir.

Check the water level in the windscreen washer reservoir regularly and top up as required.

The windscreen washer reservoir contains liquid detergent for the windscreen and rear window.

There is a sieve in the filler neck of the washer fluid tank. When filling the tank, this sieve retains large dirt particles so that they do not reach the nozzles. Do not remove the sieve except for cleaning. If the sieve is damaged or not fitted, these dirt particles could enter the system during filling and clog the windscreen washer nozzles.

- Open the front bonnet ››› ⚠ on page 313.
- The windscreen washer reservoir is marked with the symbol on the cap.
- Check if there is enough fluid in the tank.

Plain water is not enough to clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend that you always add a product to the windscreen washer fluid.

The capacity of the windscreen washer reservoir is approximately 3 litres.

**NOTICE**

**If the water from the windscreen washer does not contain enough antifreeze, it may freeze on the windscreen and rear window, reducing forward and rear visibility.**

- **In winter, ensure the windscreen washer contains enough antifreeze.**
- **In cold conditions, you should not use the windscreen wiper system unless you have warmed the windscreen with the ventilation system. The antifreeze could freeze on the windscreen and reduce visibility.**

**NOTICE**

**Never mix an unsuitable antifreeze or other similar additives with the windscreen washer water. A greasy layer may be formed on the windscreen which will impair visibility.**

- **Use clean water with a window cleaner recommended by CUPRA.**
- **If necessary, add a suitable antifreeze to the water in the reservoir.**

**NOTICE**

- **Do not mix cleaning products recommended by CUPRA with other products. This could lead to flocculation and may block the windscreen washer jets.**
- **When topping up service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Using the wrong fluids could cause serious malfunctions.**
- **Lack of window washer fluid causes the view through the windscreen to be obscured.**

# 12-volt battery

## Introduction

The 12 volt battery is located in the front compartment, under the bonnet. It is part of the electrical system and, in the event of a high-voltage system power supply failure it ensures that power is supplied to vehicle systems of relevance to safety. The 12 volt battery is checked and, if necessary, replaced as part of maintenance work.

All work on batteries requires specialist knowledge. Please refer to a specialised CUPRA Service, SEAT Official Service or a workshop specialising in batteries: risk of burns or exploding battery!

**The battery must not be opened!** Never try to change the fluid level of the battery. Otherwise explosive gas is released from the battery that could cause an explosion.

### Battery warning indications

Wear protective goggles.

Battery acid is extremely corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection. Rinse any splashes of electrolyte with plenty of water.

Fires, sparks, open flames and smoking are prohibited.

The battery should only be charged in a well-ventilated zone. Risk of explosion!

Keep children away from acid and the battery.

Always follow the instruction manual.

### Automatic shutdown for electrical consumers

After the vehicle's drive system is deactivated, the 12 volt battery may reach a low charge state if the vehicle stands for a long time, electrical consumers are used or the outside temperature is very low.

To ensure the drive system can be activated, the smart energy-management system may automatically apply the following measures when battery charge is low:

- The output of the largest electrical consumers is limited, or switched off completely if necessary, and online functions will no longer be available.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Working on the 12-volt battery and electrical system can cause severe burns, fire and electric shock. Always read and observe the following warnings and safety precautions before working on the battery:**

- **Before working on the 12-volt battery, switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative cable from the battery.**
- **Always keep children away from the 12-volt battery electrolyte and the battery itself.**
- **Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.**
- **The battery electrolyte is very corrosive. It can cause skin burns and blindness. When handling the 12-volt battery, protect your hands, arms and face in particular from acid splashes**
- **Do not smoke while working and never work in the vicinity of naked flames or sparks.**
- **Avoid sparks caused by electrostatic discharges, such as when handling electric cables and devices.**
- **Never short the battery terminals.**
- **Never use damaged 12-volt batteries. They could explode. If the 12-volt battery is damaged, replace it immediately.**
- **Never use a frozen 12 volt battery. When the battery is discharged, it may freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32 °F). If the 12-volt battery is frozen, replace it immediately.**

**NOTICE**

**Do not expose the 12-volt battery to direct sunlight for a prolonged period of time.**

- **Ultraviolet rays can damage the battery casing.**

**NOTICE**

**If the vehicle is not to be used for a long period of time, protect the 12-volt battery from frost.**

- **The battery may freeze and, as a result, suffer irreparable damage.**

**Note**

**After switching on the drive system with a deeply discharged or newly replaced 12-volt battery, or after a jump start, some system settings (time, date, personalised comfort settings and programs) may be incorrectly set or deleted. Check and correct these settings when the battery is sufficiently charged.**

## Check the electrolyte level

The 12-volt battery is located in the front compartment, under the bonnet.

The electrolyte level of the 12-volt battery cannot be checked, as the battery sight glass is covered by the vehicle's main fuse box.

Always have the battery electrolyte level checked by a qualified specialist workshop.

## Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the 12-volt battery

If you suspect that the 12-volt battery is damaged or defective, have it checked by a qualified specialist workshop.

### Charging the 12-volt battery

Contact a specialist workshop for charging the 12-volt battery, as the battery model fitted in the vehicle in the factory uses a technology that requires limited voltage charging >>> ⚠.

CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

### Replacing the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been designed to suit its location and has special safety features. If a 12-volt battery needs to be replaced, the replacement battery must be installed by a qualified technician. CUPRA recommends that you visit a CUPRA dealer. Component information regarding size, maintenance, power and safety characteristics to be met can be obtained from a qualified technician, who should have the necessary documentation and technical equipment. CUPRA recommends visiting a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership.

The degassing hole of the 12-volt battery must always be on side of the negative pole. The degassing hole on the side of the positive pole must always be sealed.

Only use maintenance-free 12-volt batteries that comply with the TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 standards. These standards must be dated October 2014 or later.

The 12-volt battery must always be replaced by a qualified technician, as the vehicle's electronic system must also be adjusted as part of the replacement. In addition, the battery parameters relating to operational safety can only be determined with the original battery. Only a qualified technician has both access to the right technology to make the adjustment and the correct replacement batteries.

**NOTICE**

**The use of batteries that do not meet CUPRA's quality specifications, or with a capacity lower than that fitted as standard, could, depending on the local legislation in each country, lead to the loss of approval or the corresponding administrative permits for the vehicle. In addition, it may pose a serious safety risk.**

### Disconnecting the 12-volt battery

If the 12-volt battery is to be disconnected from the vehicle's electrical system, please note the following:

- Switch off all electrical consumers.
- Before disconnecting the battery, unlock the vehicle, otherwise the alarm will be triggered.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable >>> ⚠.

### Connecting the 12-volt battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the 12-volt battery.
- First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative one >>> ⚠.

After connecting the 12-volt battery and switching on the ignition, several control lamps may light up. These lamps go out after a short distance at a speed of approx. 15 to 20 km/h (10 to 12 mph). If the warning lights do not go out, visit a specialist workshop and have the vehicle checked.

If the 12-volt battery has been disconnected for a long period of time, it is likely that the next service will not be correctly indicated or calculated >>> page 16. In this case it will be necessary to take into account the maximum permitted maintenance intervals >>> page 343.

*Vehicles with a "Keyless Access" system* >>> page 100: If the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the 12-volt battery, lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside. Then try to switch on the ignition again. If the ignition does not work, seek professional assistance.

### Automatic disconnection of consumers

In the event of excessive demand on the 12-volt battery, the on-board network smart management system automatically takes certain measures to prevent the battery from discharging:

- If necessary, the power of the most powerful consumers is limited or, in an emergency, they are switched off completely.

**Factors causing the 12-volt battery to discharge**

- Use of electric consumers while the drive system is disconnected.

**WARNING**

**Attaching the 12-volt battery incorrectly or using unsuitable batteries may result in short circuits, fire and serious injury.**

- **Use only maintenance-free 12 volt batteries with an anti-spill system with the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted battery.**

**WARNING**

**Charging the 12-volt battery creates a highly explosive mixture of detonating gases.**

- **Only charge the 12-volt battery in a well-ventilated place.**
- **Never charge a 12-volt battery that is frozen or has thawed. When the battery is discharged, it may freeze at temperatures close to 0°C (+32°F).**
- **If the 12-volt battery has frozen, have it replaced without fail.**
- **A short circuit may occur if the wires are incorrectly connected to the poles. First connect the positive cable and then the negative one.**

**NOTICE**

- **Never connect or disconnect the 12-volt battery while the drive system is switched on. Also, never use a 12-volt battery that does not meet the vehicle's battery specifications. The electrical system or certain electronic components could be damaged and electrical malfunctions could occur.**
- **Never connect accessories that supply power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12-volt socket or cigarette lighter, to charge the 12-volt battery. This could damage the vehicle's electrical system.**

**For the sake of the environment**

- **The battery may contain toxic substances, such as sulphuric acid and lead. Dispose of the 12-volt battery in accordance with the applicable regulations.**
- **Electrolyte can contaminate the environment. If any operating fluid leaks out, collect it and dispose of it properly.**

## Troubleshooting

**12-volt battery**

The control lamp lights up in **RED**. The following messages may be displayed:

**Error: 12V power supply. Park safely! Instruction manual!**

**Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle at the first opportunity and in a safe place. The 12-volt battery will not be charged while driving or there is a fault in the on-board 12-volt network.

- Switch off any electrical consumers that are not required.
- Contact a specialised workshop.
- Request a check of the electrical system.

**12-volt battery**

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

**Error: 12 V battery. Restart impossible. Go to the workshop.**

There is a fault in the connection between the on-board network and the 12-volt battery.

If the drive system is switched off in this situation, it cannot be switched on again. If necessary, use the jump leads >>> page 302 or seek assistance from qualified personnel.

- Contact a specialised workshop.
- Request a check of the electrical system.

**12-volt battery**

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

**12-V battery charge low. Please refer to the instruction manual.**

Switch on the ignition to recharge the 12-volt battery or charge it using high voltage charging.

If the warning does not disappear after a few minutes:

- Contact a specialised workshop.
- Request a check of the electrical system.

**12-volt battery**

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

**12 V power supply now limited. Drive with caution.**

The 12-volt power supply is limited, maybe because the 12 volt battery is discharged or not working at full performance, for example due to very cold outside temperatures. The 12-volt battery can be charged while driving. Until the warning disappears, you should drive with care.

**12-volt battery**

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

**Error: 12-V supply. Please visit workshop.**

There is a fault in the 12V power supply.

- Go to a qualified establishment.
- Have the electrical system checked.

**12-volt battery**

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

**The 12V battery is being discharged. Turn on the vehicle.**

When the vehicle is off, this message may appear a few seconds after getting into the vehicle. However, this is normal. It simply alerts you that the 12-volt battery is discharging. As soon as the ignition is switched on, the lamp will switch off.

**12-volt battery**

The indicator lamp lights up **YELLOW**. The following message is displayed:

**Replace the 12V vehicle battery. Go to the workshop.**

The 12-volt battery has deteriorated due to its inevitable ageing. Go to a specialised workshop to request a battery inspection.

# Wheels and tyres

## Important information about wheels and tyres

### General notes

- When driving with **new tyres**, be especially careful during the first 600 km (300 miles).
- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the obstacle.
- Check from time to time if the tyres are damaged (punctures, cuts, cracks or dents). Remove any foreign objects embedded in the treads.
- Damaged wheels and tyres must be replaced immediately.
- Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- Replace any missing valve caps as soon as possible.
- Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when put back.
- When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

#### Low profile tyres

Low profile tyres have a wider tread, a larger wheel diameter and a lower sidewall height. This results in more agile driving behaviour.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres, for instance due to heavy impacts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. Correct tyre pressure is very important ››› page 329.

To avoid damage to tyres and wheels, drive with special care when driving on roads in poor condition.

Visually check your wheels every 3000 km.

If the tyres or rims have received a heavy impact or have been damaged, have a specialised workshop check whether or not it is necessary to change the tyre.

Low profile tyres may deteriorate more quickly than standard tyres.

#### Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual **vibration** or the car **pulling to one side**, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce speed immediately if there is any reason to suspect that damage may have occurred. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialised workshop and have the car inspected.

#### Foreign objects inserted in the tyre

- Do not remove foreign bodies if they have penetrated through the tyre wall!
- If the vehicle comes with a tyre mobility system, where necessary seal the damaged tyre as shown in section ››› page 341.

Use a specialised workshop for repair or replacement. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.

The sealant inside the tyre tread wraps around the foreign body and provisionally seals the tyre.

#### Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the rotation direction on directional tyres. Always note the rotation direction indicated when mounting the wheel. This makes sure that optimal use is made of tyre properties in terms of aquaplaning, grip, excessive noise and wear.

#### Retrofitting of accessories

If you wish to change or fit wheels, rims or wheel trims, we recommend that you consult with a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service centre for advice regarding current technical recommendations.

#### Speed symbols

The speed rating indicates the maximum speed permitted for the tyres.

| | |
|---|---|
| P | max. 150 km/h (93 mph) |
| Q | max. 160 km/h (99 mph) |
| R | max. 170 km/h (106 mph) |
| S | max. 180 km/h (112 mph) |
| T | max. 190 km/h (118 mph) |
| U | max. 200 km/h (124 mph) |
| H | max. 210 km/h (130 mph) |
| V | max. 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| Z | max. 240 km/h (149 mph) |
| W | max. 270 km/h (168 mph) |
| Y | max. 300 km/h (186 mph) |

**⚠ WARNING**

- **New tyres do not have maximum grip during the first 600 km. Drive particularly carefully to avoid possible accidents.**
- **Never drive with damaged tyres. This may cause an accident.**
- **If you notice unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the vehicle immediately and check the tyres.**
- **Never use old tyres or those with an unknown history of use.**

## New wheels and tyres

It is best to have all wheels and tyres serviced by a specialised workshop. There they have the required knowledge, the special tools and the corresponding spare parts.

- The vehicle is factory fitted with original CUPRA tyres with optimised rolling resistance. The original CUPRA tyres are marked with the symbol ⊕. Only with these tyres can the specified energy consumption and range be achieved. When buying new tyres, always make sure they have optimised rolling resistance ››› page 152.
- Even winter tyres lose their grip on ice. If you have installed new tyres, drive the first 600 km carefully and at a moderate speed.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and, if possible, tread pattern.
- When changing tyres, do not change just one; change at least two on the same axle.
- If you want to equip your vehicle with a combination of tyres and rims that are different to those fitted in the factory, inform your specialised workshop before purchasing them

The sizes of the rims and tyres approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle documentation (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document). The vehicle documentation varies depending on the country of residence.

If the type of spare wheel is different form the normal wheels — e.g. in the case of winter tyres or particularly wide tyres — the spare wheel should only be used temporarily in the event of a puncture, and the vehicle should be driven with care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as possible.

In vehicles with four-wheel drive, the 4 wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same brand, type and tread so that the traction system is not damaged by a difference in the number of turns of the wheels. Therefore, in the event of a puncture, only a spare wheel with the same perimeter as normal tyres should be used.

### Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date is also indicated on the tyre sidewall (or on the inside face of the wheel):

**DOT ... 2220 ...**

this means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 22nd week of 2020.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Use only combinations of tyres and rims, as well as suitable wheel nuts, approved by CUPRA. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged, causing an accident.**
- **For technical reasons it is not possible to use wheels of other vehicles; in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model should be used.**

- Always ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre, since the nominal tyre size can differ significantly depending on the manufacturer. Lack of clearance can damage the tyres or the vehicle and, as a result, endanger road safety. Accident hazard!
- Only use tyres that are over 6 years old in an emergency, and drive with due care.
- The fitting of tyres with run-flat properties is not permitted on your vehicle! Prohibited use can cause accidents or can damage your vehicle.
- If decorative hubcaps are retrofitted, make sure that they allow enough air in to cool the braking system. Accident hazard!
- Models with aerodynamic wheel rims and/or with bolt-on plastic elements (more enclosed design) increase the likelihood of ice and snow accumulating on the inside. This should be taken into account, depending on the driving situations, as snow or ice accumulated in the wheels can cause vibration in the vehicle when it drives at over 40 km/h. It is advisable to remove ice and snow from the inside of the wheels using hot water.
- If you drive on dirt or gravel tracks, the likelihood of stones becoming trapped inside wheel rims with plastic elements increases when driving at high speed or in a sporty manner. If you see that there are stones trapped between the aluminium wheel rim and the insert, you can attempt to remove them using pressurised water.

**For the sake of the environment**

Old tyres must be disposed of according to each country's laws.

**Note**

- A CUPRA Service Centre should be consulted to find out whether wheels or tyres of different sizes to those originally fitted by CUPRA can be fitted, and to find out about the combinations allowed between the front axle (axle 1) and the rear axle (axle 2).
- Never mount used tyres if you are not sure of their “previous history”.

## Tyre life

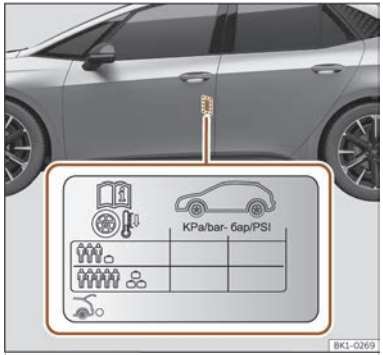



**Fig. 205** Location of the tyre pressure sticker.

Correct inflation pressures and sensible driving habits will increase the useful life of your tyres.

- Check tyre pressure at least once a month, and also prior to any long trip.
- The tyre pressure should only be checked when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the pressure of warm tyres.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the load being carried by the vehicle >>> Fig. 205.
- In vehicles with a tyre pressure indicator, save the modified tyre pressure >>> page 338.

- Avoid fast cornering and hard acceleration.
- Inspect the tyres for irregular wear from time to time.

### Tyre pressure

The tyre pressure values are shown on the sticker located on the rear frame of the front left door ››› Fig. 205.

Insufficient or excessive pressure greatly reduces the useful life of the tyres and adversely affects vehicle performance and ride. Correct inflation pressures are very important, especially at **high speeds**.

The tyre pressure must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying. If the vehicle is going to be fully loaded, increase the tyre pressure to the maximum load value shown on the sticker ››› Fig. 205.

Do not forget the spare wheel when checking the tyre pressures: Keep this spare wheel inflated to the highest pressure required for the road wheels.

In the case of a minimised temporary spare wheel (125/70 R16 or 125/70 R18) inflate to a pressure of 4.2 bar as indicated on the tyre pressure label ››› Fig. 205.

### Driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking (squealing tyres) all increase tyre wear.

### Wheel balance

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, certain circumstances may lead to imbalance (run-out), which is detected as vibrations in the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels should be rebalanced, as they otherwise cause excessive wear on steering, suspension and tyres. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tyre is fitted or if a tyre is repaired.

### Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect running gear alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If you notice excessive tyre wear, you should check wheel alignment at a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Unsuitable handling of the wheels and tyres may lead to sudden tyre pressure losses, tread separation or even a blow-out.**

- **The driver is responsible for ensuring that all of the vehicle tyres are correctly inflated to the right pressure. The recommended tyre pressure is indicated on the label ››› Fig. 205.**
- **Check tyre pressures regularly and ensure they are kept at the indicated pressures. Tyre pressure that is too low could cause overheating, resulting in tread detachment or even burst tyres.**
- **Tyre pressure should be as indicated on the label when the tyres are cold at all times ››› Fig. 205.**
- **Regularly check the cold inflation pressure of the tyres. If necessary, change the tyre pressure of the vehicle tyres while they are cold.**
- **Regularly check your tyres for damage and wear.**
- **Never exceed the speed limit or loads specified for the type of tyre fitted on your vehicle.**

**For the sake of the environment**

**Insufficient tyre pressure increases energy consumption.**

## Tread wear indicators

**Fig. 206** Tyre profile: tread wear indicators.

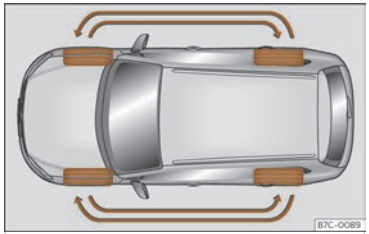



**Fig. 207** Swapping tyres.

Wear indicators around 1.6 mm high can be found on the base of the original tyre treads, ordered at regular intervals and running across the tread ››› **Fig. 206**. The letters "TWI" or triangles on the sidewall of the tyre mark the position of the wear indicators.

The minimum permitted profile depth [1] have been reached when the tyres have worn down to the wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ››› ⚠.

With a sporty driving style, check the tread depth every 5,000 / 10,000 km (3,000 / 6,000 mi). When checking the tread depth, check the wear indicators in all the tyre grooves.

### Changing wheels around

In order to wear the wheels in a uniform manner, it is recommended to swap them regularly according to the diagram ››› **Fig. 207**. The useful life of all the tyres will then be about the same time.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Failure to follow this instruction could result in an accident.**

- **Particularly in difficult driving conditions such as wet or icy roads. It is important that the tyre tread be as deep as possible and be approximately the same on the tyres of both the front and the rear axles.**
- **Lower driving safety due to insufficient tread depth is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of "aquaplaning" in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners, and braking is also adversely affected.**
- **The speed has to be adapted accordingly, otherwise there is a risk of losing control over the vehicle.**

## Wheel nuts

The **wheel nuts** and rims have been designed to be part of an assembly. When installing different wheels (for instance alloy wheels or wheels with winter tyres) it is important to use the correct wheel nuts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

The wheel nuts must be clean and turn easily.

A special adapter is required to turn the anti-theft wheel nuts ››› **page 335**.

### Two-piece wheel nuts

Two-piece wheel nuts must be used for this vehicle. In this type of bolt, the spherical collar is not firmly attached to the head.

[1] Follow the regulations of the country you are driving in.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Wheel nuts should never be greased or oiled.**

- **Use only wheel nuts which belong to the wheel.**
- **If the required torque of the wheel nuts is too low, they could loosen whilst the vehicle is in motion. Risk of accident! If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel nuts and threads can be damaged.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**See ››› page 337 to find out the recommended tightening torque for wheel nuts for alloy rims.**

## Winter tyres

- Winter tyres must be fitted **on all four** wheels.
- Only use winter tyres that are approved for your vehicle.
- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres.
- Also note that winter tyres are no longer effective when the **tread** is worn down.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures. When doing so, take into account the correct tyre pressures listed on the rear of the front left door frame ››› page 329.

In winter road conditions winter tyres will considerably improve vehicle handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. This applies particularly to vehicles equipped with **wide section tyres** or with **high speed tyres** (code letters H, V or Y on the sidewall).

Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The sizes of these tyres are specified in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC[1]). The vehicle documentation varies depending on the country of residence.

Winter tyres lose a great deal of their properties when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm.

The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by **ageing**, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

A code letter indicating the speed limit is stamped on all winter tyres ››› page 327.

In the infotainment system's **Vehicle settings** menu, a speed warning can be set in the **Tyres** menu.

Vehicles capable of exceeding these speeds must have an appropriate **sticker** attached so that it is visible to the driver. Suitable stickers are available at specialised CUPRA Services, SEAT Official Service centres and specialised workshops. Please note the regulations to this effect in your country.

"All-weather" tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres.

### Using winter tyres with a V-rating

Please note that the generally applicable 240 km/h (149 mph) speed for winter tyres with the letter V is subject to **technical restrictions; the maximum permissible speed for your vehicle may be significantly lower**. The maximum speed limit for these tyres depends directly on the maximum axle weights for your car and on the listed weight rating of the tyres being used.

It is best to contact a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service to check the maximum speed which is permissible for the V-rated tyres fitted on your car on the basis of this information.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Exceeding the maximum speed permitted for the winter tyres fitted on your car can cause tyre failure, resulting in a loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident.**

[1] COC = *certificate of conformity.*

**For the sake of the environment**

**When winter is over, change back to summer tyres at an appropriate moment. In temperatures above +7°C (+45°F), performance will be improved if summer tyres are used. Rolling noise, wear and energy consumption will all be reduced.**

## Snow chains

Snow chains **may only be fitted to the rear wheels**.

- Check that they are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; correct the position if necessary, in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
- Keep your speed below 50 km/h (30 mph).

Snow chains will improve *braking ability* as well as *traction* in winter conditions.

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains is only permitted on the following rim and tyre combinations:

| Tyres | Wheel rim | Chains |
|---|---|---|
| 215/55 R18 | 7.5Jx18 ET50 | Max. link 9 mm |
| 215/50 R19 | 7.5Jx19 ET50 | |
| 215/45 R20 | 7.5Jx20 ET44<br>7.5J-Nx20 ET44 | |

| Tyres | Wheel rim | Chains |
|---|---|---|
| Other dimensions do not allow chains | | |

Remove any central wheel trims before fitting snow chains.

### Use of snow chains with the emergency wheel or inflatable spare wheel installed

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the emergency wheel and the inflatable spare wheel is not permitted.

- If a rear wheel fails, fit the emergency wheel or inflatable spare wheel on the front axle.
- Swap the damaged rear wheel with the wheel removed from the front axle. When doing so, take into account the tyre rotation direction.

CUPRA recommends fitting the chains to the wheel before installing the wheel.

**WARNING**

**The use of unsuitable or incorrectly fitted chains could lead to serious accidents and damage.**

- **Always use appropriate snow chains.**
- **Observe the fitting instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **Never exceed the speed limits when driving with snow chains.**
- **Before fitting the chains, check that the wheel/tyre combination on the table is the one installed on your vehicle. The combination can also be found on the technical datasheet.**

**NOTICE**

- **Remove the snow chains to drive on roads without snow. Otherwise they will impair vehicle handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.**
- **Wheel rims may be damaged or scratched if the chains come into direct contact with them. CUPRA recommends the use of coated snow chains.**

# Changing a wheel

## Introduction

Only change a wheel yourself if you are familiar with the necessary operations and safety measures, if you have the necessary tools and if the vehicle is parked safely.

### Preliminary actions

- Stop the vehicle on a level surface and in a safe place, as far away from road traffic as possible.
- Apply the electronic parking brake.
- Switch off the drive system and ignition.

- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Lay out the on-board tools >>> page 300 and the wheel to be changed.
- Follow the legal provisions of each country (reflective vest, warning triangles, light beacon, etc.).
- Get all occupants out of the vehicle and keep them out of the danger zone (e.g. behind the guard rail).

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Always observe the above steps and protect yourself and other road users.**
- **If you change the wheel on a slope, block the wheel on the opposite side of the car with a stone or similar to prevent the vehicle from moving.**

## Wheel central trim

**Fig. 208** Changing the wheel: removing the central trim.

Depending on the type of wheel, to access the wheel nuts it is first necessary to remove the central trim.

### Removing

Follow the sequence below to extract the trim:

1. Pull on the trim's first clip ① using the hook from the vehicle tool kit >>> Fig. 184.
2. Follow the sequence ①-⑥ to remove the remaining clips.

### Fitting

1. Put the trim in place so that the clips match up with their housings on the wheel.
2. Fit the trim without using any tools, if possible, by pushing against the centre of the part until it is heard to fit in place.

## Wheel nut caps

**Fig. 209** Wheel: wheel nuts with caps.

### Removal

- Fit the plastic clip (vehicle tools >>> page 300) over the cap until it clicks into place >>> Fig. 209.
- Remove the cap with the plastic clip.

The caps protect the wheel nuts and should be remounted after changing the tyre.

The **anti-theft wheel locking bolt** has a special cap. This only fits on anti-theft locking bolts and is not for use with standard wheel nuts.

## Anti-theft wheel nuts

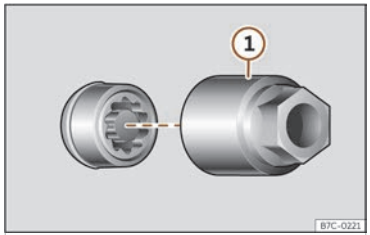



**Fig. 210** Anti-theft wheel nut with cap and adapter.

### Loosening the anti-theft wheel nut

- Remove the wheel trim or hub cap.
- Insert the special adapter ››› **Fig. 210** ① (vehicle tools ››› **page 300**) onto the anti-theft wheel nut and push it on as far as it will go.
- Insert the wheel wrench (vehicle tools) onto the adapter as far as it will go.
- Remove the wheel nut ››› **page 335**.

**Note**

**Make a note of the code number of the anti-theft wheel nut and keep it in a safe place, but not in your vehicle. If you need a new adapter, you can obtain it from the specialised CUPRA service or the SEAT Official Service, by giving the code number.**

## Loosening wheel nuts

**Fig. 211** Tyre change: loosen the wheel nuts.

Use only the wheel wrench belonging to the car to loosen the wheel nuts.

Loosen the wheel nuts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.

If the wheel nut is very tight, carefully push on the end of the wheel wrench with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip during this operation.

### Loosening wheel nuts

- Fit the box spanner into the bolt as far as it will go ››› **Fig. 211**.
- Hold the wrench at the end and rotate the bolt approximately *one* turn anticlockwise ››› ⚠.

### Important information about wheel nuts

Factory-fitted rims and wheel nuts are specially matched during construction. Therefore, if different rims are fitted, the correct wheel nuts with the right length and heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you should not even use wheel nuts from vehicles of the same model.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the wheel nuts are not properly tightened, they could come loose while driving and cause an accident, serious injury and loss of vehicle control.**

- **Use only wheel nuts which correspond to the rim in question.**
- **Never use different wheel nuts.**
- **Wheel nuts and threads should be clean, free of oil and grease, and it should be possible to screw them easily.**

- To loosen and tighten wheel nuts, only use the wheel wrench that came with the car from the factory.
- The wheel nuts should only be loosened slightly (about one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack. Risk of accident!
- Never apply grease or oil to wheel nuts or to the wheel hub threads. Even if the bolts have been tightened to the required torque, they could come loose while driving.
- Never loosen the screwed joints of wheel rims with bolted ring trims.
- If wheel nuts are tightened below the required torque, the bolts and rims could come loose while driving. If tightening torque is too high, the wheel nuts or threads can be damaged.

## Raise the vehicle

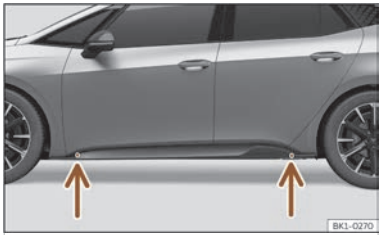



**Fig. 212** Jack position points.

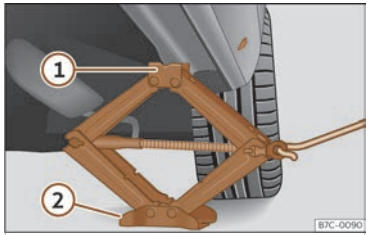



**Fig. 213** Crossbar: mounting the jack on the vehicle.

- Rest the jack (vehicles tools) on firm ground. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. If the surface is slippery (for example tiles) place the jack on a rubber mat or similar to prevent it from slipping ››› ⚠.
- Look on the crossbar for the mark of the jack support point (sunken area) closest to the wheel to be changed ››› **Fig. 212**.
- Turn the jack crank handle, located below the crossbar support point, to raise it until the tab ① ››› **Fig. 213** is below the housing that is provided.
- Align the jack so that the tab ① "grips" onto the housing provided on the cross member and the mobile base ② is resting on the ground. The base plate ② should fall vertically with respect to the support point ①.
- Continue turning the jack until the wheel is slightly lifted off the ground.

### ⚠ WARNING

The factory-supplied jack is only designed for changing wheels on this model. On no account attempt to use it for lifting heavier vehicles or other loads. Risk of injury.

- Make sure the jack remains stable. If the surface is slippery or soft, the jack could slip or sink, respectively, with the consequent risk of causing injuries.
- Lift the vehicle using only the jack supplied from the factory. Other jacks, even those approved for other CUPRA models could slip, with the consequent risk of injury.
- Place the jack only at the support points provided on the crossbar and align it. Otherwise, the jack could slip because it does not have sufficient grip on the vehicle. Risk of injury!
- You should never place a body limb such as an arm or leg under a raised vehicle that is solely supported by the jack.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, you must use suitable stands additionally to support the vehicle. Accident risk!.
- Do not raise the vehicle if it is tilting to one side or the drive system is switched on.
- Do not switch on the drive system while the vehicle is raised. The vehicle may come loose from the jack due to the vibrations.

**NOTICE**

- **The vehicle must not be raised on the crossbar. Place the jack only at the support points provided on the crossbar and align it. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged.**
- **Any type of load or weight applied to the external trim/door (treading on it, fitting the jack, resting heavy objects, etc.) can cause damage to it. CUPRA accepts no responsibility for any damages caused by improper use of the external trim or body.**

## Removing and installing a wheel

Change the wheel after loosening the wheel nuts and raising the vehicle with the jack.

When removing/fitting the wheel, the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. Therefore, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

### Taking off the wheel

- Unscrew the nuts with the wheel wrench and place them on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

### Putting on the spare wheel

Check the rotation direction of the tyre ››› page 337.

- Place the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel into position.
- Screw in the wheel nuts and tighten them a little with the wheel wrench.
- Use the appropriate adapter to tighten the anti-theft wheel nuts.
- Carefully lower the vehicle using the jack.
- Use the wheel wrench to tighten all of the wheel nuts clockwise. Tighten the bolts in diagonal pairs (not in a circle).
- Put the caps, trim or full hubcap back on.

### Tightening torque of the wheel nuts

The required tightening torque for wheel nuts for alloy rims is **120 Nm**.

After changing a wheel, have the tightening torque checked immediately with a torque wrench that is working perfectly.

The wheel nuts should be clean and turn easily. Before fitting the spare wheel, inspect the wheel condition and hub mounting surfaces. These surfaces must be clean before fitting the wheel.

**Before checking** the tightening torque, have any rusty wheel nuts that are difficult to screw replaced and clean the wheel hub threads.

Never apply grease or oil to wheel nuts or to the wheel hub threads. Even if the bolts have been tightened to the required torque, they could come loose while driving.

## Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been designed to operate best when rotating in only one direction. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the rotation direction on tyres with directional tread. Always observe the indicated rotation direction in order to guarantee optimum grip and help avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If the tyre is mounted in the opposite rotation direction, drive with extreme caution, as the tyre is no longer being used correctly. This is of particular importance when the road surface is wet. Change the tyre as soon as possible or remount it with the correct rotation direction.

## Works after changing a wheel

- Replace the hub caps or wheel nut caps (depending on equipment).
- Return all tools to their proper storage location.
- There is no space in your vehicle for the wheel to be replaced; if necessary, store it safely in the luggage compartment ››› page 289.
- Check the tyre pressure of the newly mounted tyre as soon as possible.
- In vehicles fitted with a tyre pressure indicator, adjust the pressure and store it in the memory ››› page 338.

- Have the tightening torque of the wheel nuts checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench >>> page 337. Meanwhile, drive carefully.
- Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

# Tyre pressure monitor system

## Tyre pressure monitor indicator

The tyre pressure monitoring system compares the individual speeds of each wheel and thus the dynamic radius with the help of the ABS sensors.

If the rolling circumference of one or more wheels has changed, the tyre pressure monitoring indicator will indicate this on the instrument cluster through a warning lamp and a warning to the driver. If only one tyre is affected, its position on the vehicle will be indicated.

**(!) Loss of pressure: Check left tyre pressure!**

### Change in wheel diameter

The wheel diameter changes when:

- Tyre pressure is changed manually.
- The tyre pressure is insufficient.
- The tyre's structure is damaged.
- The vehicle is not level due to a load.
- The wheels on an axle are subject to a heavier load (e.g. with a heavy load).
- The vehicle is fitted with snow chains.
- The temporary spare wheel has been fitted.
- One wheel on an axle has been changed.

There may be a delay in the reaction of the tyre pressure monitoring indicator (!) or it may not indicate anything under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty driving, snow-covered or unpaved roads, or when driving with snow chains).

### Calibrate the tyre pressure monitoring indicator

After changing the tyre pressure or replacing one or more wheels, the tyre pressure monitoring indicator must be recalibrated. This should also be done, for example, when swapping the front and rear tyres.

It should be calibrated with the vehicle stopped and its tyres cold. If calibrated while the tyres are hot, the pressure check and calibration procedure should be repeated when cold before the next trip.

- Switch the ignition on.
- Save the new inflation pressure in the Infotainment system: function button ⠿ > **Service** > **Tyres** >>> page 35.
- **OR:** ⠿ > 🚗 **Vehicle** > **Status** > **Tyres**.

After storing the new inflation pressure, a confirmation message will be displayed, the warning light in the instrument cluster will flash briefly and a driver alert tone will be played.

The tyre pressure loss indicator uses the ABS sensors to compare the turns of each wheel and, therefore, their tread circumferences, among other aspects. The set values are collected and monitored after a long journey at different speeds.

For example, if the wheels are under very heavy loads, the tyre pressure must be increased to the total recommended tyre pressure before calibration.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the tyres are inflated to different pressures, or to a pressure that is too low, a tyre may be damaged and control of the vehicle may be lost. This could lead to a serious or even fatal accident.**

- **If the lamp (!) lights up, reduce speed immediately and avoid any sudden turning or braking manoeuvres. Stop as soon as possible, and check the pressure and status of all tyres.**
- **The tyre pressure loss indicator only works correctly if all the tyres are at the correct pressure when cold, and it is subsequently calibrated according to the described procedure.**

- **If the tyres have no punctures and do not need to be replaced immediately, drive to the nearest specialist workshop at low speed and have the tyre pressure checked and corrected.**

**Note**

- **When driving for the first time with new tyres at high speeds, the tyres may expand slightly, which may result in an air pressure warning.**
- **If a low tyre pressure is detected when the ignition is switched on, an audible warning will sound. If the system fails, an audible signal sounds.**
- **Driving on unpaved roads for a long period of time, or sporty driving, may temporarily deactivate the system. The warning lamp shows a fault, but disappears when road conditions or driving behaviour change.**
- **Do not only rely on the tyre pressure monitoring system. Check the tyres regularly to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct and that the tyres are free of damage such as punctures, cuts, gouges and dents. Remove any non-puncturing objects from the tyres.**
- **The tyre pressure monitoring indicator does not function when there is a fault in the ESC or ABS** >>> page 170.

## Troubleshooting

### Tyre pressure low

The control lamp lights up in yellow.

The inflation pressure of one or more wheels is much lower than the value set by the driver, or the tyre has structural damage. In addition, a audible warning sounds and a text message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- **Stop the vehicle!** Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place.
- Check all tyres and pressures.
- Replace any damaged tyres.

### Fault in the tyre pressure loss indicator

The control lamp flashes for approximately 1 minute and then lights up permanently in yellow.

- If the tyre is inflated correctly, switch the ignition off and on again.
- Re-calibrate the tyre pressure monitoring system >>> page 338
- If the fault continues, go to a specialised workshop.

# Tyre repair

## TMS (Tyre Mobility System) puncture repair kit

The puncture repair kit (Tyre Mobility System) will reliably seal punctures caused by the penetration of a foreign body of up to about **4 mm** in diameter. **Do not remove foreign objects, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.**

After inserting the sealant residue in the tyre, you must recheck the tyre pressure about 10 minutes after starting the engine.

You should only use the tyre mobility set if the vehicle is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the procedure and you have the necessary tyre mobility set. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.

**Tyre sealant must not be used in the following cases:**

- If the wheel rim has been damaged.
- In outside temperatures below -20°C (-4°F).
- If the cut or punctures in the tyres are larger than 4 mm.
- If the tyre has been driven on with very low inflation pressure or no tyre pressure.
- If the expiry date of the sealant bottle has passed.

**⚠ WARNING**

Using the puncture repair kit can be dangerous, particularly when filling the tyre on the roadside. To reduce the risk of serious injury, consider the following:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe place. Park it at a safe distance from road traffic to fill the tyres.
- Make sure the ground is flat and firm.
- All occupants, especially children, should stay a safe distance away from the work area.
- Turn on the hazard lights to warn other road users.
- Apply the electronic parking brake and switch off the drive system.
- Always switch off the engine and activate the electronic parking brake to reduce the risk of accidental vehicle movement.
- Use the puncture repair kit only if you are familiar with the necessary operations. Otherwise, you should seek professional assistance.
- The puncture repair kit should only be used in an emergency, to reach the nearest garage.
- Replace tyres repaired with the puncture kit as soon as possible.

**⚠ WARNING**

A tyre filled with sealant does not have the same driving properties as a conventional tyre.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full throttle, braking heavily and cornering at high speeds.
- Drive for only 10 minutes at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- The sealant is harmful to health and must be cleaned off immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Always keep the puncture repair kit out of the reach of children.

**For the sake of the environment**

Dispose of used or expired tyre sealant in accordance with the relevant legal requirements.

**Note**

You can purchase new bottles of tyre sealant from CUPRA specialist dealers or any SEAT network dealer.

**Note**

Take into account the separate instruction manual provided by the tyre mobility system manufacturer.

## Tyre mobility system contents

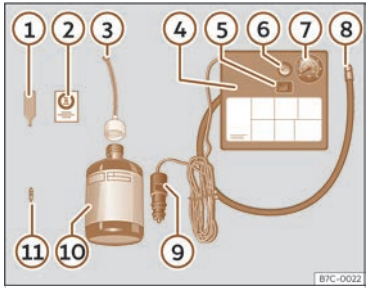



**Fig. 214** Standard display: contents of the tyre mobility system.

The tyre mobility system is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. Includes the following components >>> **Fig. 214**:

1. Valve insert remover
2. A sticker to be stuck to the instrument cluster, in the driver's field of view, as a reminder of the advisable maximum speed “max. 80 km/h” or “max. 50 mph”

③ Filler tube with cap

④ Air compressor (depending on the version, the model may vary).

⑤ ON/OFF switch

⑥ Air bleed screw (it can also be integrated in the inflator tube).

⑦ Warning provided by tyre pressure monitoring system (it can also be integrated in the inflator tube).

⑧ Tube for inflating tyres

⑨ 12 volt connector

⑩ Bottle of sealant

⑪ Spare tyre valve

The **valve insert remover** ① has a gap at the lower end for a valve insert. The valve insert can only be screwed or unscrewed in this way. This also applies to its replacement part ⑪.

## Sealing and inflating a tyre

### Sealing the tyre

- Unscrew the tyre valve cap and insert. Use the device ››› **Fig. 214** ① to remove the valve cap. Place it on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre sealant bottle vigorously ››› **Fig. 214** ⑩.
- Screw the tyre inflation hose ››› **Fig. 214** ③ into the tyre sealant bottle. The bottle's seal will break automatically.
- Remove the filler cap ››› **Fig. 214** ③ and screw the open end of the tube into the tyre valve.
- With the bottle upside down, empty **all** of the contents into the tyre.
- Remove the bottle from the valve.
- Replace the valve insert with the device ››› **Fig. 214** ① onto the tyre valve.

### Inflating the tyre

- Screw the tyre inflation tube of the compressor ››› **Fig. 214** ⑧ onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the air evacuation screw is closed ››› **Fig. 214** ⑥.
- Connect the drive system.
- Attach the connector ››› **Fig. 214** ⑨ to the vehicle's 12 volt power outlet ››› **page 238**.
- Switch on the air compressor with the ON/OFF switch ››› **Fig. 214** ⑤.
- Keep the air compressor running until it reaches a pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar (29-36 psi/ 200-250 kPa). **A maximum of 8 minutes**.
- Disconnect the air compressor.
- If it does not reach the indicated pressure, unscrew the tyre inflater tube from the valve.
- Move the vehicle 10m so that the sealant is distributed throughout the tyre.
- Screw the compressor tyre inflator into the valve.
- Repeat the inflation process.
- If it still does not come up to pressure, the tyre is too badly damaged. Stop and seek assistance from authorised personnel.
- Disconnect the air compressor. Unscrew the tyre inflation tube from the tyre valve.
- When the tyre pressure is between 2.5 and 2.0 bars, continue driving without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Attach the sticker ››› **Fig. 214** ② to the instrument cluster display, within the driver's field of vision.
- Check the pressure again after 10 minutes ››› **page 342**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**When inflating the wheel, the air compressor and the inflator tube may become hot.**

- **Protect hands and skin from hot parts.**
- **Do not place the hot flexible inflator tube or hot air compressor on flammable material.**
- **Allow them to cool before storing the device.**
- **If it is not possible to inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bars (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too badly damaged. The sealant is not in a good condition to seal the tyre. Do not continue driving. Seek specialist assistance.**

**NOTICE**

**Switch off the air compressor after a maximum of 8 minutes of operation to avoid overheating! Before switching on the air compressor again, let it cool for several minutes.**

## Check after 10 minutes of driving

Screw in the inflator tube >>> **Fig. 214** ⑧ again and check the pressure on the gauge ⑦.

**1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower:**

- **Stop the vehicle!** The tyre cannot be sealed sufficiently with the tyre mobility set.
- You should obtain professional assistance >>> ⚠.

**1.4 bar (20 psi/140 kPa) and higher:**

- Set the tyre pressure to the correct value again.
- Carefully resume your journey until you reach the nearest specialised workshop without exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Have the damaged tyre replaced.

**WARNING**

**Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injury.**

- **Do not continue driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower.**
- **Seek specialist assistance.**

# Maintenance

## Service

### Service work and the Digital Maintenance Plan

**Log of services performed ("Digital Maintenance Plan")**

Specialised CUPRA dealers, SEAT dealerships or a specialised workshop records Service receipts in a central system. Thanks to this comprehensive documentation of the service history, it is possible to view the services performed any time. CUPRA recommends requesting a Service receipt after every service containing all the services carried out on the system.

Whenever a new service is performed the receipt is replaced with a current one.

**The Digital Maintenance Plan is not available in some markets. In this case, your specialised CUPRA dealer or a SEAT dealership will inform you about the documentation of the service work.**

**Service works**

In the Digital Maintenance Plan, your specialised CUPRA dealer, SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop will document the following information:

- When each one of the services was carried out.
- Whether a specific repair has been suggested, e.g. changing the brake pads in the near future.
- If you have made a special request for the maintenance. Your Service Advisor will write the work order.
- The components or fluids that were changed.
- The date of the next service.

This information is documented in all checks performed.

The type and the volume of the service may vary from one vehicle to another. A specialised workshop will be able to provide specific information on the jobs for your vehicle.

**WARNING**

**If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic, which can cause an accident and severe injuries.**

- **Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer, a SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop.**

**NOTICE**

**CUPRA accepts no liability for any damage to the vehicle caused either by inadequate workshop service or damage resulting from the unavailability of spare parts.**

**Note**

**Regular services on the vehicle not only maintain its value, but also its correct operation and road safety. For this reason, conduct the services in accordance with CUPRA guidelines.**

### Inspection

| Service | Service interval |
|---|---|
| Inspection | According to the service interval indicator[a] or at least every 2 years. |

[a] In some markets, services are performed at intervals different from those shown on the indicator. Further information is available at the specialised workshops.

**How to know which type of service needs to his vehicle**

The vehicle service type can be checked at a specialised workshop. Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer, any SEAT network dealership or a specialised workshop.

**Service indicator**

The service indicator on the instrument cluster informs you that an inspection is required >>> page 21. Where necessary, other additional work such as changing the brake fluid, may also be carried out.

## Information about the terms of use

The service intervals and groups are usually based on **normal usage conditions**.

If, on the other hand, the vehicle is under **adverse usage conditions**, some of the work must be carried out before the next service period or even between service intervals.

**Adverse usage conditions include:**

- Using the vehicle in areas with thick dust.
- Using the vehicle mostly in winter.

**This applies especially for the following parts (depending on equipment):**

- Dust and pollen filter
- Air Care allergen filter

**The Service Advisor of your specialised workshop will gladly inform you** about the need to perform service work between normal service intervals, always considering the usage conditions of your vehicle.

**⚠ WARNING**

**If the services are insufficient or not performed and if the service intervals are not observed, the vehicle may be immobilised in traffic and cause accidents and severe injuries.**

- **Make sure that any repairs are carried out by a specialised CUPRA dealer, a SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**CUPRA cannot be held liable for any damage to the vehicle due to insufficient work or lack of availability of spare parts.**

## Service packages

Service packages include all **maintenance work** that is necessary to ensure road safety and the proper operation of your vehicle (**depending on the usage conditions and the vehicle's equipment**).

Maintenance services are divided into *inspection* and *review* services. Consult the details of the jobs required for your vehicle at:

- Your CUPRA dealer
- Your specialised workshop

Due to technical reasons (continuous development of components) the service packages may vary. Your specialised CUPRA dealer, any SEAT dealership or a specialised workshop always receives updated information about any modifications that are made.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The 12 volt battery is a subject to wear. A reduction in battery power can mean that some important safety systems, such as power steering, braking intervention, lights or airbag systems, operate with limitations or stop working entirely. This may cause serious accidents and injuries. To avoid this, it is necessary to take the following safety measure:**

- **Get a professional service centre to replace the 12-volt vehicle battery every four years.**

# Additional service offers

## Approved spare parts

Original CUPRA Spare Parts have been designed for your vehicle and approved by SEAT, with a special emphasis on safety. These parts correspond exactly to the manufacturer's requirements in terms of design, accuracy of the measurements and materials.

CUPRA Genuine Parts are designed exclusively for your vehicle. For this reason we recommend always using CUPRA Genuine Parts. SEAT S.A. cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

## Approved spare parts

The approved exchange parts, following the manufacturer's instructions, are an additional service to you, offering the possibility of replacing complete sets, such as: lightened engine, control units, electrical components, etc.

These parts are, **approved parts**, and are the same as the factory parts, which are also approved spare parts.

## Original accessories

We recommend you only use CUPRA Original Accessories and CUPRA approved accessories for your vehicle. The reliability, safety and suitability of these accessories have been inspected specifically for this type of vehicle. CUPRA cannot be held liable for the safety and suitability of parts from other manufacturers.

## Roadside assistance

From the moment you purchase your new CUPRA, you will benefit from the Roadside Assistance Service cover and advantages.

For the first two years after purchase, depending on the country, your new CUPRA is automatically covered by the Roadside Assistance Service at no additional cost.

To continue enjoying this service, you can extend Roadside Assistance provided you carry out the recommended Inspection or Maintenance Services at a CUPRA Authorised Service Partner.

If your CUPRA vehicle is immobilised due to a fault or an accident, our assistance services will help you keep moving.

Note that Roadside Assistance differs depending on the country in which the vehicle was sold. For more information, contact your CUPRA Authorised Service Partner or visit the CUPRA website in your country.

# Vehicle upkeep and cleaning

## Basic observations

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of your vehicle. In addition, it may become a prerequisite for a warranty claim in the event of corrosion damage and deficiencies in the paint coat of the bodywork.

Specialised workshops have the necessary care products. Please follow the application instructions on the packaging.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can be damaging to your health if misused.**
- **Always keep care products in a safe place, out of the reach of children. Danger of poisoning!**

**For the sake of the environment**

- **When purchasing car care products, chose products that are compatible with the environment.**
- **The waste from car-care products should not be disposed of with ordinary household waste.**

## Washing the vehicle

The longer you take to clean off deposits, e.g. remains of insects, bird excrements, tree resin or road salt adhered to your vehicle, the more damage it can cause to the surface. High temperatures, for instance strong sunlight, further intensify the damage.

Before washing the car, soften the dirt using plenty of water.

To remove encrusted dirt such as insects, bird droppings or tree resin, use a lot of water and a microfibre cloth.

Have the underside of the vehicle washed after the end of the road salts in winter.

### High pressure cleaning equipment

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the distance between the water jet and the vehicle.

**Do not aim the jet directly** towards the side windows, doors, sunroof or covers; the same applies for the tyres, rubber hoses, damping material, radar sensors or camera lenses. Keep a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not remove snow and ice with a high-pressure cleaner.

Do not use a nozzle that sprays the water out in a direct stream or one that has a rotating jet for forcing off dirt.

The water temperature must not exceed 60°C.

### Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle before starting the car wash.

Make sure that the windows are closed and the windscreen wipers are deactivated. Bear in mind the instructions of the car wash tunnel operator, especially if your vehicle has detachable parts.

Use car washes without brushes if possible.

### Washing by hand

Clean your vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or with a brush. Only use cleaning products that do not contain solvents.

### High-voltage system instructions

Before washing the vehicle, end the charging process and close the charging socket completely.

Please also note the safety warning regarding high-pressure cleaning equipment ››› ⚠ on page 345.

### Polishing

Polishing is only necessary when the vehicle's paintwork has lost its gloss and cannot be restored with care products.

Do not polish matt painted surfaces! If the paintwork is polished, the surface will be irreparably damaged.

### Washing vehicles with matte paintwork

**To wash the vehicle, it is best to use a special cleaner for matte paintwork.** For further information, please contact an official service centre.

Apply the product by spraying it onto the bodywork. Work in one zone at a time and leave the product to act for at least 2 minutes. Wipe it with a microfibre cloth and **avoid placing excessive pressure** on the treated area until the dirt is removed. Once clean, repeat the application of the product area by area and spread it until a uniform finish is achieved.

If the vehicle is affected by mosquitoes or larger amounts of dirt, spray the product on the entire surface, leave it to act for 2 minutes and apply pressurised water until it is completely clean. Once dry, apply the product one zone at a time and spread it with microfibre, **avoiding excessive pressure,** to achieve a uniform finish.

In both cases, the final application cares for the vehicle in an optimal manner and provides a protective layer against dirt and water.

**⚠ WARNING**

- **Only wash the vehicle with the ignition switched off or according to the specifications of the car wash tunnel operator. Accident hazard!**
- **When cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel arches, protect yourself from sharp or pointy metal parts. Risk of cuts!**
- **After cleaning, the brakes could act more slowly due to moisture or, in winter, ice on the brake discs and pads. Accident hazard! In this case the brakes should be dried by pressing the brake pedal several times.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrect use of high-pressure cleaning equipment can cause damage. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Never direct the jet of the high-pressure cleaning equipment directly at the orange high-voltage cables, the high-voltage system components or the 12-volt on-board network.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

- **Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, the exterior mirrors should be folded in to prevent them from being damaged. The electric folding exterior mirrors should only be folded or unfolded electrically!**
- **Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!**
- **Do not use sponges, abrasive household sponges or similar to clean insect remains. Risk of damaging the surface!**
- **Vehicle parts with matte paint:**
  - **Do not use polish or hard wax. Risk of damaging the surface!**
  - **Never select washing programmes that include the use of wax. This could damage the appearance of matte paint.**
  - **Do not put stickers or magnets on parts with matte paint, as removing them may damage the paint.**

**❀ For the sake of the environment**

**The car should only be washed in special wash bays. These places are designed to prevent oily water from getting into the public drains.**

## Cleaning the exterior

Below can be found some recommendations on the cleaning and upkeep of individual vehicle components.

Go to your specialised workshop if you have special questions or parts that are not listed.

Take the general considerations into account ››› page 349, *Take special care with...*.

### Windscreen wipers

- *Dirt:* Soft cloth with windscreen cleaner.

### Headlights / Tail lights

- *Dirt:* Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[1].

### Sensors / Camera lenses

- *Dirt:*
  - *Sensors*: soft cloth with a solvent-free cleaning product.
  - *Camera lenses*: soft cloth with an alcohol-free cleaning product.
- *Snow/ice:* Hand brush/Solvent-free anti-freeze spray

### Wheels

- *Road salt:* Water.
- *Brake abrasion dust:* Special acid-free cleaning product.

[1] Neutral soap solution: maximum of two tablespoons in 1 l of water.

### Covers / Trims

- *Dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1], if a fine steel cleaning product is required.

### Paint

- *Paint flaws:* Check the paint's colour code at an authorised service and restore with a touch-up pencil.
- *Spilled fuel:* Immediately rinse with water.
- *Environmental rust deposit:* Apply rust remover and then apply hard wax. Go you your specialised workshop if you have any queries.
- *Corrosion:* Have your specialised workshop take care of this.
- *Water does not form droplets on the clean paint:* Maintain with hard wax (at least twice a year).
- *No shine despite maintenance/unattractive paint:* Treat with suitable wax and apply paint preservative afterwards if the wax used does not contain preservative ingredients.
- *Tanks, e.g. insect remains, bird droppings, tree sap, road salt:* Immediately soak with water and remove with a microfibre cloth.
- *Grease-based dirt, e.g. cosmetic products or sunscreen:* Remove immediately with a neutral soap solution[1] and a soft cloth.

### Carbon fibre parts

- *Dirt:* Clean in the same way as painted parts ››› page 346.

### Decorative laminates

- *Dirt:* Soft sponge with neutral soap solution[1].

## Interior cleaning

Below can be found some recommendations on the cleaning and upkeep of individual vehicle components.

Go to your specialised workshop if you have special questions or parts that are not listed.

Take the general considerations into account ››› page 349, *Take special care with...*.

### Windows

- *Dirt:* Apply windscreen cleaner and then dry with a cloth.

### Covers / Trims

- *Dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1].

### Plastic parts

- *Dirt:* Damp cloth.
- *Encrusted dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1], if possible a solvent-free plastic cleaning product.

### Displays/instrument cluster

- *Dirt:* Soft cloth with a liquid crystal display cleaner.

### Control panels

- *Dirt:* Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a neutral soap solution[1].

### Seat belts

- *Dirt:* Neutral soap solution[1], allowed to dry before retracting.

### Fabrics, artificial, Alcantara leather

- *Particles of dirt stuck to surfaces:* Vacuum cleaner.
- *Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.:* Absorbent cloth and neutral soap solution[1].
- *Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.:* Apply a neutral soap solution[1]. Absorb the dissolved grease and paint particles by drying with an absorbent cloth, if you have to treat it with water afterwards.
- *Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, spray paint, shoe polish, etc.:* Special stain remover: dry with an absorbent cloth, if applicable, apply neutral soap solution afterwards[1].

---

[1] Neutral soap solution: maximum of two tablespoons in 1 l of water.

### Natural leather

- *Recent dirt:* Cotton cloth with neutral soap solution[1].
- *Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea, blood etc.:*
  - *Recent stains:* absorbent cloth.
  - *Dry stains:* stain remover suitable for leather.
- *Grease-based dirt, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.:*
  - *Recent stains:* absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather.
  - *Dry stains:* grease solvent spray.
- *Special dirt, e.g. pens, nail polish, spray paint, shoe polish etc.:* Stain remover suitable for leather.
- *Care:* Apply preservative cream regularly to protect from sunlight. Use a coloured preservative if required.

### Composite fibre parts

- *Dirt:* Clean as with plastic parts.

## Take special care with...

### Headlights/tail lights

- Do not clean the headlights/tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
- Do not use cleaning products that contain alcohol. Risk of cracks!

### Wheels

- Do not use paint wax or other abrasive products.
- If the protective coating on the paint of the rim has been damaged due to stone impacts, scratches, etc., the damage should be repaired immediately.

### Camera lenses

- Do not use hot or warm water to remove ice or snow from the camera lenses. Risk of cracking the lens!
- To clean the camera lens, never use abrasive cleaning products or products with alcohol. Risk of scratches and cracks!

### Radar sensors

- Avoid aiming the jet of pressurised water at the radar sensors.
- Paint the bumpers only with CUPRA approved paint.

### Windows

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never remove snow or ice from windows and rearview mirrors with warm or hot water. Risk of cracks on the windows!
- To prevent damage to the heating of the rear window, do not put stickers over the heating elements.

### Covers/trims

- Do not use cleaning products or chrome based cleaning agents.

### Paint

- The vehicle must be free from dirt and dust before applying wax or care products. Risk of scratches!
- Do not apply wax or care products if the vehicle is exposed to direct sunlight. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- Environmental rust deposits must not be removed by friction. Risk of damaging the paint job!
- Remove cosmetic products and suncream immediately. Risk of damaging the paint job!

### Displays/instrument cluster

- The displays, the instrument cluster and the trim around it must not be cleaned dry. Risk of scratches!

---

[1] Neutral soap solution: maximum of two tablespoons in 1 l of water.

- Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and cooled down before cleaning.
- Make sure that no liquid leaks between the instrument cluster and the trim. Risk of damage!

### Control panels

- Make sure that no liquid leaks into the control panels. Risk of damage!

### Seat belts

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Seat belts and their components must never be cleaned with chemical products, nor should they be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp objects. Risk of damaging the fabric!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, ask your specialised workshop to replace the belt in question.

### Fabrics/artificial leather/microfibre

- Do not treat artificial leather/microfibre with leather cleaning products, solvents, wax polish, shoe polish, stain removers or similar products.
- If the stain is very hard to remove, take the vehicle to a specialised workshop to have it removed there. This will prevent damage.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating to dry the seats.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Open Velcro, e.g. on clothes can damage the seat upholstery. Make sure that Velcro fasteners are closed.

### Natural leather

- Never use solvents, wax polish, shoe polish, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- Sharp objects on clothing, such as zips, rivets or belts can damage the surface.
- Do not use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. to clean.
- Do not turn on seat heating to dry the seats.
- Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as humid weather, darkness or when the sun is in its lowest point, visibility may be impacted. Accident hazard! Such coatings can also cause the windscreen wiper blades to make noise.**

**Note**

- **Remains of insects can be removed much more easily with previously treated paint.**
- **Regular car care treatments can prevent deposits of environmental rust.**

## Taking your vehicle out of service

If you want to leave your vehicle stationary for a long period of time, contact a qualified workshop. They will gladly inform you about the necessary measures, such as anti-corrosion protection, Service and storage.

Also take into account the indications relating to the vehicle's battery >>> page 322, *Introduction*.

# Accessories, spare parts and repair work

## Introduction

Always ask your dealer or specialist retailer for advice before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety. For this reason, we recommend that you ask a specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service for advice before fitting accessories or replacement parts. Your Official Service has the latest in-

formation from the manufacturer and can recommend accessories and replacement parts which are suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

We recommend only using **CUPRA accessories** and **Genuine CUPRA parts®**. Specialised CUPRA Services or SEAT Official Services have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed correctly and professionally.

Although CUPRA continuously monitors the market, it cannot judge whether products **not authorised by CUPRA** meet the vehicle's reliability, safety and suitability requirements. CUPRA therefore accepts no liability for these products, even if, in certain cases, they are authorised by an officially recognised technical inspection institute or official body.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the vehicle and/or the way it is driven, such as a cruise control system **or electronically-controlled suspension**, must be approved for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorisation symbol).

If **any additional electrical devices** are fitted which do not serve to control the vehicle itself (for instance a refrigerator box, laptop or ventilator fan, etc.), they must bear the CE marking (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union).

**⚠ WARNING**

**Accessories, for example telephone holders or drink holders, should never be fitted on the covers, or inside the operating range of the airbags. Otherwise, there is a danger of injury if the airbag is triggered in an accident.**

## Technical modifications

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctioning.

We request your understanding that your specialised CUPRA dealer or SEAT dealership cannot be held liable for any damage caused by modifications and/or work performed incorrectly in the vehicle.

We therefore recommend that all work should be performed by a specialised CUPRA Service or a SEAT Official Service using **genuine CUPRA parts®**.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Incorrectly performed modifications or other work on your vehicle can lead to malfunctions and cause accidents.**

## Radio telephones and office equipment

### Radio transmitters (fixed installation)

Any retrofit installations of radio transmitters in the vehicle require prior approval. CUPRA generally authorises in-vehicle installations of approved types of radio transmitters provided that:

- The antenna is installed correctly.
- The aerial is installed on the exterior of the vehicle (and shielded cables are used together with non-reflective aerial trimming).
- The effective transmitting power does not exceed 10 Watts at the aerial base.

A specialised CUPRA Service, SEAT Official Service or specialised workshop will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters with a higher transmitting power.

### Mobile radio transmitters

Commercial mobile telephones or radio equipment might interfere with the electronics of your vehicle and cause malfunctions. This may be due to:

- No external aerial.
- External aerial incorrectly installed.
- Transmitting power more than 10 W.

Therefore you must not operate portable mobile telephones or radio equipment *inside the vehicle* without a properly installed external aerial ›››.

Please note also that the maximum range of the equipment can only be achieved with an *external* aerial.

### Business equipment

Retrofit installation of business or private equipment in the vehicle is permitted, provided the equipment cannot interfere with the driver's immediate control of the vehicle and that any such equipment carries the CE mark. Any retrofit equipment that could influence the driver's control of the vehicle must have a type approval for your vehicle and must carry the **e** mark.

**WARNING**

**Mobile telephones or radio equipment which is operated inside the vehicle without a properly installed external aerial can create excessive magnetic fields that could cause a health hazard.**

**Note**

- **Retrofitting electric and electronic equipment in this vehicle affects its licence and could lead to the withdrawal of the vehicle registration document under certain circumstances.**
- **Please follow the mobile telephone/radio operating instructions.**

# User information

## Warranty

### Fault-free operation warranty

Specialised CUPRA Services or SEAT Official Services ensure the perfect condition of new vehicles. Check the purchase agreement or complementary additional documentation provided by your Technical Service for the conditions and terms of the warranty. Get further information about this from your specialised CUPRA Service or SEAT Official Service.

### Commercial warranty for high voltage batteries for electric and hybrid vehicles

To supplement the aforementioned warranties and guarantees, SEAT Official Services also offer a warranty for high voltage batteries existing in many countries.

Consult the details of this warranty in the sales contract or contact a SEAT Official Service.

## Information stored by the control units

### Preset lists and data services

Valid in EU countries where the European Union's General Data Protection Regulation applies:

#### In-vehicle data processing

Electronic control units are installed in the vehicle. The control units process data which they may receive from the vehicle's sensors, generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of them are necessary for the safe operation of the vehicle, others assist with driving (driver assistance systems) and others allow comfort functions or additional infotainment system functions to be provided.

#### Personal data references

All vehicles are identified with a unique chassis number. This vehicle identification number can be used to identify the current and previous owners of the vehicle, e.g. in Germany by contacting the Federal Motor Vehicle Office. There are also other ways to identify the owner or driver from data taken from the vehicle, e.g. the license plate.

Therefore, the data generated or processed by the control units may be of a personal nature or, under certain conditions, become so.

Depending on the available vehicle data, conclusions can be drawn about aspects such as driving style, location, route or usage patterns in certain cases.

#### Your data protection rights

Under current data protection legislation, you have certain rights vis-à-vis CUPRA regarding the possible processing of your personal data.

Accordingly, you are entitled to request that CUPRA or third parties, e.g. roadside assistance companies, workshops or providers of online services in the vehicle, inform you extensively and free of charge, insofar as they have stored your personal data, about what data they hold on you and for what purpose, as well as the source of the data. You can also request information about data transfers to other parties.

Further information about your legal rights, e.g. to delete or rectify data, can be found in the applicable legal data protection notices on the CUPRA website, including contact details and a note about the data protection officer.

With specialist help, e.g. at a workshop (for a fee, if necessary), you can view all of the data stored locally in the vehicle.

### Legal requirements for data disclosure

In exceptional cases, CUPRA is under the obligation to provide, insofar as there are legal provisions to this effect and to the extent necessary, any data in its possession at the behest of public authorities, e.g. to investigate a crime.

Public bodies are also authorised, within the framework of current legislation, to consult vehicle data themselves, in isolated cases. Therefore in the event of an accident, they could, for example, consult information recorded in the airbag control unit which could help to clarify the details of an accident.

### Vehicle operating data

The control units process data to allow the vehicle to operate. For example:

- Vehicle status information, e.g. speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation, seat belt fastening indication, etc.
- Environmental circumstances, e.g. temperature, rain and light sensors, distance control sensors, etc.

As a rule, this data is transitory, is not stored beyond the operating time and is only processed by the vehicle itself. The control units usually contain data memories. These memories are used to temporarily or permanently document information on the status of the vehicle, maintenance requirements, technical incidents and faults, as well as to order components.

Depending on the technical equipment, the following information is stored:

- Status of system components, e.g. fill levels, tyre pressure, battery status, etc.
- Faults and defects in major system components, e.g. lights, brakes, etc.
- Reactions of systems in special driving situations, e.g. when an airbag triggers, the intervention of stability regulation systems, etc.
- Information on incidents that could cause damage or faults in the vehicle.

In special cases, e.g. if the vehicle detects a malfunction, it may be necessary to save data that would otherwise only be kept temporarily.

When using services such as repair or maintenance services, the stored operating data as well as the vehicle identification number can be retrieved and used if necessary. These data can be accessed by employees of the Service network, e.g. workshops, or third parties, or employees of roadside assistance services in the event of a breakdown. This also applies to cases of warranties or the implementation of quality assurance measures.

The data is retrieved over the vehicle's OBD (On-Board-Diagnosis) connection, which is required by law >>> ⚠. Operating data document the technical condition of the vehicle or individual components, help to diagnose faults, to fulfil legal warranty obligations and to improve quality. If necessary, these data, particularly information on component orders, technical incidents, operating errors and other faults, are transmitted to CUPRA along with the vehicle identification number. In addition, the manufacturer is liable for damages caused by a defective product. CUPRA also uses vehicle operating data for this purpose, e.g. for recall campaigns. These data can also be used to check customer claims where they wish to take advantage of a legal or commercial warranty.

Technical service workshops can reset the vehicle's fault memories during repair or maintenance work, or at your request.

Make sure that only specialised workshops retrieve and reset the incident memories. Further information on the stored data can be obtained from the specialised workshops.

Once a fault has been rectified, the information on it is deleted from the memory. Other memory content is successively overwritten.

### Reprogramming the control units

As a rule, all data required for component management are stored in the control units. The programming of some comfort functions, such as the comfort turn signals, single door opening and screen indications, can be changed by special workshop equipment. If the comfort functions are reprogrammed, the data and descriptions about these functions in this instruction manual will not match them. CUPRA recommends that you visit one of its

dealers or a specialist workshop and ask for the reprogramming to be logged in the digital Maintenance Plan.

CUPRA dealers are aware of possible changes to the programming.

### Infotainment system

Depending on the equipment you have selected, you can provide data to the vehicle's infotainment system yourself.

Depending on the equipment in question, for example:

- Media data for playing music, films or photos on an infotainment system.
- Phonebook data for use in combination with a handsfree device or navigation system.
- Entered navigation destinations.
- Data on the use of online services.

These data can be stored locally in the vehicle or on a device that you have connected to the vehicle, e.g. a mobile device, a USB drive or an MP3 player. As long as these data are stored in the vehicle, they can be deleted at any time.

These data are only passed on to third parties at your request, depending on the settings you have selected (particularly in the context of using online services).

### Integration of mobile devices

If the vehicle has the appropriate equipment, you can connect your mobile device or other mobile terminal, if the corresponding function is available, to the vehicle so that you can control them with the controls integrated in the vehicle. In this case, the image and sound from the mobile phone can be displayed and played through the infotainment system. At the same time, certain information is transmitted to your mobile device. For example, depending on the type of integration, position data and other general vehicle information. In this regard, seek more information about viewing apps in the infotainment system.

This makes it possible to use certain apps installed on the mobile device, e.g. navigation or music playback. No other interaction takes place between the mobile device and the vehicle. In particular there is no active access to vehicle data. The supplier of the application that is used determines the type of processing that the data subsequently undergo. Depending on the app in question and the operating system of your mobile device, you may or may not be able to configure settings for this.

### Online services[1)]

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this makes it possible to exchange data between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is made through the vehicle's own transmitter and receiver unit, or through your own mobile terminal, e.g. a mobile device. Online functions such as online services and apps provided by CUPRA or other providers can be used over this connection.

### The manufacturer's own services

In the case of CUPRA online services, the corresponding functions and their related data protection information are described or can be found in an appropriate place, e.g. in a separate service description or on an Internet page. Personal data may be used for the provision of online services. The data exchange takes place via a secure connection, e.g. using the manufacturer's IT systems provided for this purpose. In the absence of legal permission, contractual agreement or consent, personal data is only collected, processed and used for the provision of services.

You can activate and deactivate services and functions and, in some cases, also the vehicle's entire data connection. Special functions and services required by law, e.g. emergency call systems, are an exception to this.

### Third party services

If it is possible to use online services of other providers, these providers are solely responsible for the services in question, and these services are subject to the data protection and

[1)] Not available in all markets.

usage conditions of these providers. CUPRA has no influence over the content exchanged within the framework of these services.

Therefore, please seek information from the provider in question about the type, scope and purpose of the collection and use of personal data in the context of the services provided by the provider.

**⚠ WARNING**

**Failure to use the diagnostic connection socket as intended can lead to malfunctions and, as a result, to accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Never query the event memory yourself via the diagnostic connection socket.**
- **Only have the fault memory retrieved via the diagnostic connection socket by specialised workshops. CUPRA recommends going to a specialised CUPRA dealer or any SEAT dealership for this purpose.**

### Storage of accident data (Event Data Recorder)

Your vehicle has an event data recorder (EDR).

The EDR's function is to record data in the event of a mild or serious accident. These data are used to support the analysis of how different vehicle systems behaved.

The EDR records, over a reduced time range (normally 10 seconds or less), dynamic driving data and data from the restraint systems, such as:

- How different vehicle systems worked.
- Whether the driver and the occupants were wearing their seat belts.
- How hard the accelerator or brake pedal was pressed.
- Vehicle speed.

These data will provide a better understanding of the circumstances of the accident.

Data from the driving assist systems are also recorded. This includes data such as whether the systems were inactive or active and if such action had an impact on the vehicle's dynamic behaviour, changing its path in the aforementioned situations, or accelerating or decelerating the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle equipment, this includes data from systems such as:

- the adaptive cruise control
- the lane assist system
- the park assist systems
- the emergency brake functions.

The EDR data are only recorded in specific accident situations. No data are recorded in normal driving conditions.

No audio or video data inside or around the vehicle are recorded. Under no circumstances are personal data such as name, age, or gender recorded. Nevertheless, third parties (such as criminal proceedings authorities) may relate the contents of the EDR data to other data sources and create a personal reference in the context of an accident investigation.

In order to read the EDR data it is necessary to access (if legally permitted to do so) the vehicle's ODB ("On-Board-Diagnose") interface while the vehicle is switched on.

In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties, such as judicial organisations with the appropriate tools, may be able to access the information if they have access to the vehicle or to the data recorded in the EDR.

CUPRA will not have access to EDR data unless the owner (or, in "Leasing" cases, the lessee or hirer) gives their consent. There may be exceptions to this, depending on legal or contractual provisions.

Due to legal requirements in safety-related products, CUPRA may use the EDR data for field research and in order to improve vehicle system quality. Any data used for research purposes will be treated anonymously (in other words, no reference will be made to the vehicle, its owner or the lessee/hirer).

## Vehicle antennas

### Infotainment system and antennas

The infotainment system's antennas are installed on different locations on the vehicle:

- On the roof.
- On the windscreen, between the layers of glass.
- On the rear and side windows with a printed antenna structure ››› ⓘ.

**NOTICE**

**The printed antenna structure on the rear and side windows can be damaged by objects rubbing against it or by the use of corrosive products, or products containing acids.**

- **Do not apply any stickers to the rear and side window areas.**
- **Never clean the antenna structure with corrosive or acidic products.**

# Fluids in the air conditioning system

### Refrigerant in the air conditioning system

The label in the front compartment provides information on the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. The label is located at the front of the front compartment, near the refrigerant filling valves ››› ⚠.

### Detailed information on the refrigerant used

If the type of refrigerant indicated on the label is R1234yf, the air conditioning system contains fluorinated gases.

If the type of refrigerant is R744, this gas does not contain fluorinated gases.

Pursuant to Regulation (EU) 2024/573 on fluorinated greenhouse gases, article 12 referring to labelling and product and equipment information, applicable from 1 January 2025 onwards.

| Type of refrigerant | R1234yf | R744 |
|---|---|---|
| Refrigerant weight | 460 g | 470 g |
| $CO_2$ equivalent | 0.0002 t | 0.0005 t |
| Global warming potential | 0.501 | 1 |

### Refrigerant oil in the air conditioning

The air conditioning system is filled with a refrigerant oil. For information on the type and amount of refrigerant oil used, contact a qualified specialist company.

CUPRA recommends a CUPRA official service

Warning: Maintenance of the air conditioning system must be performed by qualified specialists.

Type of refrigerant.

Type of refrigerant oil

Refer to the workshop information (available only at CUPRA official services).

Maintenance of the air conditioning system must be performed by qualified specialists.

Flammable refrigerant.

Ensure all components are properly disposed of. Do not install components removed from end-of-life vehicles or recycled components in your vehicle.

**DANGER**

**Maintenance of the air conditioning system by unqualified personnel can cause serious and fatal injuries.**

- **For air conditioning system maintenance, contact qualified personnel trained according to the required country standards, such as the standard SAE J2845.**

- **Bear in mind the service intervals recommended by CUPRA. For this, contact a qualified specialist company. CUPRA recommends a CUPRA official service.**

**⚠ DANGER**

**The refrigerant is flammable and can cause serious and fatal injuries if not properly maintained.**

**The refrigerant is under pressure and can explode when heated. This can cause serious and fatal injuries.**

**The refrigerant can form toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces. If inhaled, they can cause poisoning or even death.**

- **Have the air conditioning system repaired by qualified personnel.**
- **Keep the vehicle away from flames, sparks, or other sources of ignition.**

**ⓘ NOTICE**

**Repair or replacement of the evaporator with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or recycling can damage the air conditioning system.**

- **Never have the evaporator repaired with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or recycling.**

# Information on the EU chemicals regulation REACH

In accordance with the European Chemicals Regulation REACH, SEAT, S.A. has information on the substances that may be contained in the vehicle.

You can ask for this information at your CUPRA Official Service or at any SEAT dealership.

# Materials and recycling information

## Environmental compatibility

Environmental protection is a top priority in the design, choice of materials and manufacture of your new CUPRA.

**Constructive measures to encourage recycling**

- Joints and connections designed for easy dismantling.
- Modular construction to facilitate dismantling.
- Increased use of single-grade materials.
- Plastic parts and elastomers are marked in accordance with ISO 1043, ISO 11469 and ISO 1629.

**Choice of materials**

- Use of recycled materials.
- Use of compatible plastics in the same part if its components are not easily separated.
- Use of recycled materials and/or materials originating from renewable sources.
- Reduction of volatile components, including odour, in plastic materials.
- Use of CFC-free coolants.

**Ban on heavy metals, with the exceptions provided for by law (Annex II of ELV Directive 2000/53/EC)**: cadmium, lead, mercury, hexavalent chromium.

**Manufacturing methods**

- Reduction of the quantity of thinner in the protective wax for cavities.
- Use of plastic film as protection during vehicle transport.
- Use of solvent-free stickers.
- Use of CFC-free coolants in cooling systems.
- Recycling and energy recovery of waste (RDF).
- Improvement in the quality of waste water.
- Use of systems for the recovery of residual heat (thermal recovery, enthalpy wheels, etc.).
- The use of water-soluble paints.

## Information on the European Regulation on batteries and accumulators

Technical data and documents relating to the requirements of Regulation (EU) 2023/1542 of the European Parliament and of the Council on batteries and waste batteries can be found at:

https://product-pass.online/vehicle?id_type=brand&id=S

## Recycling of electrical or electronic devices

All electrical or electronic devices (EED) that are not permanently fitted in the vehicle must be marked with the following symbol:

This symbol indicates that EED must not be discarded as home waste but through selective waste collection.

## Product recycling

✓ Valid for market: France

**Fig. 215** Recycling notice for France.

Please note the recycling instructions in ››› **Fig. 215** for the following items:

- Vehicle keys
- Remote control of auxiliary heating and ventilation.
- Compressor.
- Charging cable.
- Mobile key card.

**Fig. 216** Fire extinguisher recycling notice for France.

Please note the recycling instructions in ››› **Fig. 216** for the following items:

- Extinguishers.

**Fig. 217** Recycling notice for France.

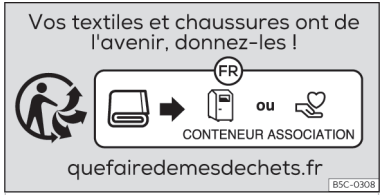



**Fig. 218** Recycling notice for France.

Please observe the recycling instructions ››› **Fig. 217**, ››› **Fig. 218** for documentation and packaging or bags of the following items:

- Maintenance manual.
- First aid kit.
- Extinguishers.
- Compressor.
- Charging cable.
- Charging socket and watertight seal.
- Vehicle toolbox.
- Puncture repair spray.
- Jack.
- Warning triangle.
- High visibility jacket.
- Tool bag.

**For the sake of the environment**

**The Triman logo and the Info-tri symbol contain important classification information for the end user.**

## Product recycling

✓ Valid for market: Italy

**Environmental labelling**

Legislative decree no. 116 (3 September 2020), which transposes EU Directive 2018/851 on waste, and EU Directive 2018/852 on packaging and packaging waste, states that all packaging must be properly labelled to facilitate the collection, reuse, recovery and recycling of packaging, and to give users correct information about the final destination of the packaging.

Information about the environmental labelling of packaging present in the vehicle can be accessed by scanning the following QR code, which links to a website where the information required by this regulation can be found:

# Third-party copyright information

*https://www.seat.com/company/softwareinfo.html*

Some products installed in the vehicle include software components that require Open Source licenses.

A list of the Open Source software components used, including information on copyright laws, the respective Open Source license terms, and the text of the corresponding license, is available on the website mentioned above. The source code for certain Open Source software components can be requested from the vehicle manufacturer. The manufacturer will provide the source code in accordance with the respective license terms, and only the cost of making it available will be charged (e.g., costs for data storage devices, shipping, and packaging). The required information can be found on the website mentioned above.

# Return and scrapping of end-of-life vehicles

**End-of-life return**

At the end of its useful life, your vehicle must be recycled and disposed of in an environmentally sound manner. For this reason, final vehicle owners in the EU and in many other countries are required by law to take their vehicle to an authorised collection point, vehicle return centre or authorised dismantling facility.

CUPRA has already made the necessary arrangements for this: an extensive network of vehicle return centres is available throughout the EU and in many other countries, where you can drop off your vehicle. If you meet the national legal requirements, you can return your end-of-life vehicle free of charge within the EU.

The vehicle return centre issues a recycling certificate which serves as proof that the end-of-life vehicle has been recycled correctly.

Information about the Vehicle Return Centres can be obtained from your CUPRA dealer.

### Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when scrapping the vehicle or its individual components, e.g. airbag system and seatbelt tensioners. Qualified workshops are already familiar with these requirements. CUPRA recommends using a CUPRA dealer.

## Declaration of conformity

**Commercialisation of finished products on the British market (England, Wales and Scotland):**

UK CA The UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) marking is a new British marking used for products commercialised in Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland).

Importer:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands
Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN
United Kingdom

Vehicles commercialised on the British market by the importer mentioned above may include complete products that comply with the following provisions:

- The Electromagnetic Compatibility Regulations, 2016
- The Electrical Equipment (Safety) Regulations, 2016
- The Supply of Machinery (Safety) (Amendment) Regulations, 2011
- The Noise Emission in the Environment by Equipment for use Outdoors Regulations, 2001
- The Restriction of the Use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations, 2012
- The Medical Devices Regulations, 2002 (SISI 2002, no. 618, in its amended version) (UK MDR 2002)
- The Pressure Equipment (Safety) Regulations, 2016
- The Personal Protective Equipment (Enforcement) Regulations, 2018

**Note**

**For medical devices, the CE marking will remain valid in the UK until 30 June, 2023.**

In accordance with the aforementioned regulations, the importer has ensured that:

The manufacturer has performed the corresponding conformity assessment, has drawn up the technical documentation and meets the market requirements.

**Note**

**Until 31 December 2025, the British market may be placed on a label that is affixed to the product or the attached documentation.**

## Radioelectrical equipment

### Simplified declaration of conformity

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with Directive 2014/53/EU when legally required.

The full text of the EU compliance declaration is available online at the following website:

www.cupraofficial.com/owners/technical-support/declarations-of-conformity CE

**United Kingdom**

Your vehicle has different radioelectrical devices. The manufacturers of these devices declare that they comply with the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 (SI 2017/1206) if required by law.

The full text of the declaration of conformity is available online at the following website:

www.cupraofficial.com/owners/technical-support/declarations-of-conformity

## Addresses of the manufacturers

The address of the manufacturers of components that, due to their size or nature, cannot include a sticker are listed below, as long as it is legally required:

**Central control unit (SAM)**

Continental Automotive Technologies GmbH
Siemensstraße 12
93055 Regensburg, Germany
Tel.: +49 941 7900
www.continental-automotive.com

**Keyless Access system and key with radio remote control of the central locking system**

HELLA GmbH & Co. KGaA/Hamm
Roemerstr. 66
59075 - Hamm, Germany
Tel.: 0049 23817980
www.hella.com

**Roof antenna**

Molex CVS Hildesheim GmbH
Daimlerring 31
31135 Hildesheim, Germany
Tel.: +49 3377 3160
www.molex.com

**Antenna amplifiers**

*Valid for: Born, Tavascan*
Molex CVS Hildesheim GmbH
Daimlerring 31
31135 Hildesheim, Germany
Tel.: +49 3377 3160
www.molex.com

*Valid for: Raval*
fuba Automotive Electronics GmbH
Tec Center
D 31162 Bad Salzdetfurth
Tel.: +49 (5063) 990 0
www.fuba-automotive.com

**Connectivity Box**

Strona główna - BURY
ul. Wojska Polskiego 4
39-300 Mielec, Polska
info@bury.com
Tel.: +48 17 78846-00

**Infotainment System**

Harman Becker Automotive Systems GmbH
Becker-Göring-Strasse 16
76307 Karlsbad, Germany
Tel.: +49 7248 710
www.harman.com

**Instrument cluster (Digital Cockpit)**

CarUX Technology Pte. Ltd.
Stationstraat 39G
6411 NK Heerlen, The Netherlands
Tel.: +31 45 850 6000
www.carux.com

**Front radar sensors**

Robert Bosch GmbH
Markwiesenstraße, 46
72770 Reutlingen (Kusterdingen) Germany
Tel.: +49 7121 350
www.bosch.com

**Rear radar sensors**

Hella GmbH & Co. KGaA
Rixbecker Straße 75
59552 Lippstadt (Germany)
Tel.: +49 2941 380
www.hella.com

**Telematics unit (ConMod)**

HARMAN BECKER Automotive Systems GmbH
Becker-Göring-Str. 16
D-76307 Karlsbad, Germany
Tel.: +49 7248 710
www.harman.com

**Easy Open**

Vitesco Technologies GmbH
Siemensstrasse 12
Regensburg, 93055 Germany
Tel.: +49 941 20310
www.vitesco-technologies.com

## Radio equipment, frequency band, maximum transmitting power

Below can be found details of the radio equipment[1] that may be fitted to the CUPRA models.

| Frequency band | Max. station power |
|---|---|
| **Key with radio-operated remote control (vehicle)** | |
| 433.05-434.78 MHz | 10 mW (ERP) |
| 433.05-434.79 MHz | 10 mW |
| 434.42 MHz | 32 µW |
| **Bluetooth®** | |
| 2400-2483.5 MHz | 16.63 dBm |
| **Auxiliary antenna for Car2X** | |
| 5855-5925 MHz | 2 W PIRE |
| **Wireless hotspot** | |
| 2400-2483.5 MHz | 16.63 dBm |
| **Keyless Access** | |
| 434.42 MHz | 32 µW |
| 125 kHz | 89 dBµA/m[a)] |

[a)] *Valid for market: Ukraine*

| | |
|---|---|
| **Radar sensors for front assist systems** | |
| 76 GHz-77 GHz | 37 dBm |
| **Radar sensors for rear assist systems** | |
| 24050-24250 MHz | 20 dBm |
| **Radar sensors for rear and side assist systems** | |
| 76-77 GHz | 27.2 dBm |
| **Wireless charging function** | |
| 110-128 kHz | 15 W |
| **Telematics unit (ConMod)** | |
| EGSM900: 880-915 MHz | 33 dBm |
| DCS1800: 1710-1785 MHz | 31 dBm |
| UMTS FDD 1: 1920-1980 MHz | 24 dBm |
| UMTS FDD 3: 1710-1785 MHz | 24 dBm |
| UMTS FDD 8: 880-915 MHz | 24 dBm |
| E-UTRA FDD 1: 1920-1980 MHz | 23.5 dBm |
| E-UTRA FDD 3: 1710-1785 MHz | 23.0 dBm |
| E-UTRA FDD 7: 2500-2570 MHz | 23.5 dBm |
| E-UTRA FDD 8: 880-915 MHz | 23.0 dBm |
| E-UTRA FDD 20: 832-862 MHz | 23.5 dBm |
| E-UTRA FDD 28: 703-748 MHz | 23.0 dBm |

[1] The commissioning or authorisation of radioelectrical technology may be restricted in some European countries, forbidden or only allowed with additional requirements.

| | |
|---|---|
| dBµA/m | decibel over 1 µA/m |
| dBm | decibel over 1 mW |
| µW | Microwatt |
| mW | Milliwatt |
| W | Watt |

## Additional information for countries outside the European Union

### United Kingdom

The following applies to importers in the UK market:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands
Milton Keynes, MK 14 5AN
United Kingdom

### Turkey

*Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB)*

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır.

Telsiz Ekipmanlari Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için radyo ekipmanı ithalatçısı (bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir):

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.
Şekerpınar Mahallesi, Anadolu Caddesi, No: 22 ve 45
41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli

### Chile

This equipment complies with Exempt Resolution No. 403 of 2008 and its amendments of the Undersecretariat of Telecommunications, regarding electromagnetic radiation.

### Mexico

**ift** The operation of this equipment is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this equipment or device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this equipment or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

# Technical data

## Indications about the technical data

### Vehicle identification data

The values indicated in the technical data may differ depending on optional equipment or version of the model, as well as in the case of special vehicles and equipment for certain countries.

The information in the official vehicle documentation takes precedence at all times.

#### Abbreviations used in the Technical Specifications section

| | |
|---|---|
| kW | Kilowatt, engine power measurement. |
| kWh | Kilowatt-hour, battery capacity. |
| Nm | Newton metres, unit of engine torque. |

#### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Depending on the version you can find the frame number in the following places:

- In the infotainment system using the function button **Vehicle > Status > Service**.
- Front, visible through the small window on the lower left side of the windscreen.
- Behind the front right seat, under the floor covering.
- On the vehicle's data label.
- On the right in the front compartment.

#### Type plate

The type plate is located on the vehicle's right hand door frame. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

#### Performance

The values apply only to optimal road and weather conditions.

The vehicle's performance has been calculated without any equipment that would affect it, e.g. accessories.

#### Weights

The kerb weight values apply to a vehicle that is ready to drive with a driver (75 kg), operating fluids and, if applicable, tools and the spare wheel. The kerb weight increases with optional equipment and retrofitting of accessories, which reduce the possible payload accordingly.

#### Maximum vertical load on the coupling

The maximum vertical load on the bicycle carrier pre-installation coupling is **55 kg** or **75 kg** depending on equipment. Observe the data on the label next to the bicycle carrier pre-installation housing behind the number plate holder.

**⚠ WARNING**

**The values indicated for the maximum permitted weights must not be exceeded. There is a risk of accident and damage!**

# Engine specifications

| 125 kW / 61 kWh electric motor | |
|---|---|
| Traction | Rear |
| Maximum power (kW) | 125 |
| Engine | Synchronous permanent magnet |
| Maximum torque (Nm) | 350 |
| Top speed (km/h) | 160 |
| Acceleration 0/100 km/h (seconds) | 8.7 |
| Maximum authorised weight (kg) | 2,360 |
| **High-voltage system** | |
| Gross battery capacity (kWh) | 61 |
| Net battery capacity (kWh) | 52 |
| Maximum AC charging power (kW) | 11 |

| 140 kW / 61 kWh electric motor | |
|---|---|
| Traction | Rear |
| Maximum power (kW) | 140 |
| Engine | Synchronous permanent magnet |
| Maximum torque (Nm) | 350 |
| Top speed (km/h) | 160 |
| Acceleration 0/100 km/h (seconds) | 8.1 |
| Maximum authorised weight (kg) | 2,360 |
| **High-voltage system** | |
| Gross battery capacity (kWh) | 61 |
| Net battery capacity (kWh) | 58 |
| Maximum AC charging power (kW) | 11 |

| 150 kW / 84 kWh electric motor | |
|---|---|
| Traction | Rear |
| Maximum power (kW) | 150 |
| Engine | Synchronous permanent magnet |
| Maximum torque (Nm) | 265 |
| Top speed (km/h) | 160 |
| Acceleration 0/100 km/h (seconds) | 8.1 |
| Maximum authorised weight (kg) | 2,420 |
| **High-voltage system** | |
| Gross battery capacity (kWh) | 84 |
| Net battery capacity (kWh) | 79 |
| Maximum AC charging power (kW) | 11 |

| 170 kW / 84 kWh electric motor | |
|---|---|
| Traction | Rear |
| Maximum power (kW) | 170 |
| Engine | Synchronous permanent magnet |
| Maximum torque (Nm) | 350 |
| Top speed (km/h) | 160 |
| Acceleration 0/100 km/h (seconds) | 7.0 |
| Maximum authorised weight (kg) | 2,420 |
| **High-voltage system** | |
| Gross battery capacity (kWh) | 84 |
| Net battery capacity (kWh) | 79 |
| Maximum AC charging power (kW) | 11 |

| 240 kW / 84 kWh electric motor | |
|---|---|
| Traction | Rear |
| Maximum power (kW) | 240 |
| Engine | Synchronous permanent magnet |
| Maximum torque (Nm) | 545 |
| Top speed (km/h) | 200 |
| Acceleration 0/100 km/h (seconds) | 5.6 |
| Maximum authorised weight (kg) | 2,430 |
| **High-voltage system** | |
| Gross battery capacity (kWh) | 84 |
| Net battery capacity (kWh) | 79 |
| Maximum AC charging power (kW) | 11 |

# Dimensions.

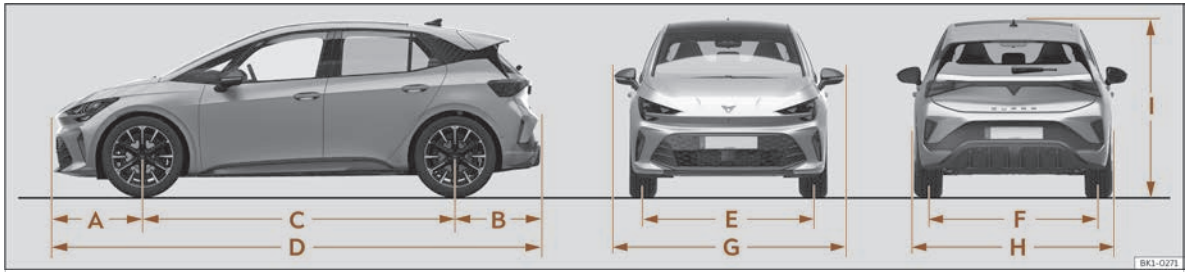



**Fig. 219** Dimensions.

| ››› Fig. 219 | | |
|---|---|---|
| A | Front projection (mm) | 803 |
| B | Rear projection (mm) | 767 |
| C | Wheelbase (mm) | 2,766 |
| D | Length (mm) | 4,336 |
| E | Front track (mm) | 1,537 |
| F | Rear track (mm) | 1,513 |
| G | Width from one exterior mirror to the other (mm) | 2,070 |
| H | Width (mm) | 1,809 |
| I | Height at unladen weight (without aerial) (mm) | 1,540 |
| | Turning radius (m) | 10.2 |

# Index

## Numbers and Symbols


12-volt battery . . . 322
assisted start . . . 302
charging . . . 323
control lamps . . . 325
disconnect and connect . . . 323
electrolyte level . . . 323
replacement . . . 323


## A


ACC . . . 184
Accessories . . . 350
Activating CUPRA CONNECT . . . 248
Adaptive Cruise Control . . . 184
control and warning lamp . . . 188
malfunction . . . 188
operation . . . 185
special driving situations . . . 187
status display . . . 185
System limitations . . . 187
Adjust
date and time . . . 21
front seats . . . 117
headrest . . . 120
lights . . . 130
seat with memory . . . 123
seats . . . 38
Adjusting the seat belt . . . 44
Air conditioning . . . 141
air recirculation . . . 145
controls . . . 143
refrigerant oil . . . 357
stationary air conditioning . . . 149
troubleshooting . . . 149
vehicle fluids . . . 357
Air recirculation . . . 145
Airbag system . . . 48
activation . . . 50
control lamp . . . 50
deactivation of the front airbag . . . 52
description . . . 49
front airbags . . . 51
how it works . . . 50
Airbags . . . 48
activating and deactivating . . . 52
centre . . . 53
description . . . 49
for the head . . . 55
front . . . 51
side . . . 54
Android Auto™
establish connection . . . 272
menu . . . 272
requirements . . . 272
special characteristics . . . 273
Anti-lock system . . . 170
Anti-theft alarm . . . 107
interior monitoring and anti-tow system . . . 107
Anti-theft alarm system . . . 107
Anti-trap function
windows . . . 113
Antifreeze . . . 317
Apple CarPlay
establish connection . . . 272
menu . . . 271
requirements . . . 271
special characteristics . . . 272
Approved spare parts . . . 345
Area View system . . . 178
Aspects to think about before starting the vehicle . . . 37
Assistance call . . . 67
Assistance systems
adaptive cruise control . . . 184
area view system . . . 178
attention monitor . . . 24
Auto Hold function . . . 211
Automatic Parking System Plus . . . 222
automatic parking system Plus with remote function . . . 226
connecting . . . 174
cruise control . . . 178
drowsiness monitor . . . 22
Emergency Assist . . . 203
emergency braking (Front Assist) . . . 192
front camera . . . 176
front radar . . . 175
general notes . . . 174
lane departure warning (Side Assist) . . . 205
park assist Plus . . . 213
peripheral view system (Top View Camera) . 232
predictive speed and events adjustment . . . 189
proactive occupant protection . . . 47
rear radar . . . 177
road signs detection system . . . 26
safety advice . . . 174
side radars . . . 175
speed limiter . . . 180
speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment . . . 181
switching off . . . 174
system limits . . . 174
Travel Assist . . . 198
tyre pressure monitor indicator . . . 338

tyre pressure monitoring ... 339
ultrasound sensors ... 177
Assisted start ... 302
Attention monitor ... 24
settings ... 25
system limits ... 25
troubleshooting ... 26
warning levels ... 26
Audible warning
lights ... 127
unbuckled seat belt ... 41
Audio warning signals
warning and control lamps ... 11
Auto Hold ... 211
Auto Hold function ... 211
Auto Lock (central locking) ... 103
Auto Unlock ... 103
Automatic car wash ... 346
disconnecting the Auto Hold function ... 211
Automatic dipped beam headlight control ... 126
Automatic parking system ... 216
angle parking ... 220
description ... 217
leaving a parking space (only when parallel parked) ... 221
parallel parking ... 220
parking conditions ... 220
stop early ... 218
Automatic Parking System Plus ... 222
display and edit ... 225
driving from a parking space ... 225
driving to a parking space ... 225
parking as a navigation destination ... 226
programming ... 223
Automatic parking system plus with remote function
app ... 228
driving to a parking space ... 228
exiting a parking space ... 229
synchronise ... 228
Automatic parking system Plus with remote function ... 226
Average fuel consumption ... 16


## B


Background lighting ... 133
Backrest of the rear seat
folding ... 118
raise ... 118
Bag hooks ... 292
Battery ... 95
Before starting the vehicle ... 37
Belt force limiter ... 45
Belt tightening ... 45
Blown bulbs
change a bulb ... 312
Bluetooth ... 262
Brake fluid ... 320
Brakes ... 169
brake fluid ... 320
brake servo ... 169
braking assistant ... 170
electronic parking brake ... 209
new brake pads ... 169
Braking assistant ... 170
Braking system
warning lamp ... 170
Brands ... 256
Break recommendation
see Attention monitor ... 24
see Drowsiness monitor ... 22
Breathalyser ... 160


## C


Camera
cleaning the vehicle ... 28
Car2X ... 243
Car2X communication ... 243
Car2X limits ... 244
connecting and disconnecting ... 244
troubleshooting ... 246
Central armrests ... 124
Central locking ... 103
anti-theft alarm ... 107
auto-locking due to involuntary opening ... 103
central locking button ... 105
emergency lock ... 109
Keyless Access system ... 100
remote control key ... 104
Change a bulb ... 312
Change the wiper blades ... 300
Changing a wheel ... 333
raise the vehicle ... 336
subsequent work ... 337
wheel nuts ... 335
Changing parts ... 350
Changing the battery
of the vehicle key ... 95
Charging cable
for charging stations (AC) ... 91
for sockets ... 92
Charging socket ... 77, 78
Charging stations
navigation ... 285

Charging the high-voltage battery
charging cable ... 91
charging modes ... 75
charging process display ... 79
emergency unlocking ... 82
socket (AC) ... 77
socket (DC) ... 78
troubleshooting ... 80
Check lists
requirements for Android Auto™ ... 272
requirements for Apple CarPlay ... 271
reverse assist (Rear View) ... 230
Child lock
power windows ... 112
Child seats
attachment systems ... 59
group classification ... 57
i-Size ... 60
ISOFIX ... 60
safety instructions ... 58
securing with the seat belt ... 65
Top Tether system ... 63, 64
Cleaning
high pressure cleaning equipment ... 346
special care ... 349
vehicle exterior ... 347
vehicle interior ... 348
washing the vehicle ... 346
Clocks
set the time ... 21
Closing ... 103
bonnet ... 316
windows ... 112
Coming Home ... 130
Connection
Bluetooth ... 262
wireless ... 262
Connectivity
WLAN access point ... 263
Control and warning lamps
12-volt battery ... 325
ACC ... 188
adaptive cruise control ... 185
air conditioning ... 149
airbag system ... 50
airbags ... 52
anti-lock brake system ABS ... 173
braking system ... 170
coolant ... 320
cruise control ... 179
cruise control (GRA) ... 178
drive system ... 159, 163, 165
dynamic chassis control (DCC) ... 169
electromechanical steering ... 166
ESC ... 173
ESC in Sport mode ... 172
ESC off ... 172
high-voltage battery ... 80
high-voltage system ... 80
Lane Assist ... 197, 198
lane departure warning (Side Assist) ... 205
lights ... 131
parking brake ... 210
press on the brake ... 184
seat belt ... 41
speed limiter ... 181
steering column ... 166
TCS ... 173
tyre pressure monitor system ... 339
wipers ... 136
Controls on the steering wheel ... 115
Cooling ... 141
Cooling system
check the coolant ... 318
control lamps ... 320
refilling coolant ... 318
Copyright ... 256
Cornering light ... 126
Correct position ... 38
driver ... 38
passenger ... 39
Cruise control ... 178
Cruise control system ... 178
control lamps ... 179
operating ... 179
CUPRA Assistant ... 273
activation word: ... 274
end ... 275
start ... 275
CUPRA CONNECT ... 246
activation ... 248
CUPRA ID ... 248
deactivate ... 249
faults ... 249
legal provisions ... 248
users ... 251
CUPRA ID ... 248
Current documentation attached ... 253
Cybersecurity ... 240

## D

Dangers of not using the seat belt ... 42
Data label ... 365
Data transfer ... 246
Deactivating CUPRA CONNECT services ... 249
Deactivation of the front airbag ... 52

Disposal
seat belt tensioners ... 46
Door cylinder ... 109
Door handle ... 109
Door lock ... 109
Door opening assist (Exit Warning) ... 235
Doors ... 108
child lock ... 110
Download
over-the-air updates ... 242
Drink holder
bottle holder ... 238
front ... 238
in the rear central armrest ... 238
Drive profile ... 168
Drive Profile ... 166
Drive profiles ... 166
launch control ... 167
selecting a profile ... 166
Drive system ... 160
brake energy recuperation ... 157
connecting ... 161
control lamps ... 159, 163, 165
e-Sound ... 162
electronic immobilizer ... 162
functions ... 155
gear selector ... 163
leaving the vehicle with the drive system switched on ... 162
recuperation of braking energy with the steering wheel levers ... 158
switching off ... 161
Driving
driving on flooded roads ... 154
economical ... 152
launch control ... 167
loaded vehicle ... 153
safe ... 37
trips abroad ... 131, 154
with the luggage compartment open ... 153
Driving mode ... 168
Driving on flooded roads ... 154
Driving with a loaded vehicle ... 153
Driving with the luggage compartment open ... 153
Drowsiness monitor ... 22
settings ... 23
system limits ... 23
troubleshooting ... 24
warning levels ... 23
Duplicate keys ... 94
Dust and pollen filter ... 141
Dynamic headlight range control ... 130

## E

e-Call ... 70
Eco Assist ... 183
Electric devices ... 238
Electric motor data ... 366
Electrolyte ... 323
Electronic differential lock ... 170
Electronic immobilizer ... 162
Electronic parking brake ... 209
control lamps ... 210
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ... 170
Emergencies ... 67
changing a wheel ... 333
changing the battery ... 323
emergency vehicle towing ... 304
hazard warning lights ... 66
jump leads ... 302
replace a blown fuse ... 310
tyre mobility system ... 339
vehicle tool kit ... 300
Emergency Assist ... 203
problems and solutions ... 204
see Emergency Assist ... 203
status display ... 204
Emergency brake assist system (Front Assist)
activating and deactivating ... 195
junction assist ... 194
status display ... 192
system limitations ... 194
temporarily deactivating ... 195
warnings ... 192
Emergency brake assistance system (Front Assist) ... 175
dodge assist ... 193
pedestrian and cyclist recognition ... 193
turn-off assist ... 193
Emergency braking warning ... 66
Emergency call ... 67, 70
troubleshooting ... 71
Emergency call service ... 70
Emergency locking of the front passenger door ... 109
Emergency opening
driver's door ... 109
rear lid ... 111
Emergency operation
front passenger door ... 109
Energy
saving ... 152
Engine coolant ... 317
check the level ... 318
exterior ... 20
specifications ... 317

Environment
environmental compatibility . . . . . 358
recycling of electrical appliances . . . . . 359
ESC
connecting and disconnecting . . . . . 172
electronic stability control (ESC) . . . . . 170
Sport mode . . . . . 172
Event Data Recorder . . . . . 356
Exit Warning . . . . . 235
Exiting a parking space
with the automatic parking system . . . . . 221
Exterior lighting
change a bulb . . . . . 312
Exterior mirrors
folding . . . . . 137
heated . . . . . 137
settings . . . . . 137
External antenna . . . . . 351

## F

Fabrics: clean . . . . . 348
Factors that have a negative influence on safe driving . . . . . 37
Fastening rings . . . . . 292
Filling capacities
window washer water . . . . . 321
Fire . . . . . 67
Frequency bands . . . . . 277
Front bonnet . . . . . 313
opening and closing . . . . . 316
Front camera . . . . . 176
Front compartment
battery . . . . . 322
brake fluid . . . . . 320
coolant . . . . . 317, 318
opening and closing . . . . . 316
safety instructions . . . . . 313
windscreen washer reservoir . . . . . 321
Front passenger airbag
control lamp . . . . . 50
Full-LED headlights . . . . . 312
Fuses . . . . . 308
colour coded . . . . . 309
fuse box . . . . . 309, 310
preparations for replacing fuses . . . . . 310
recognise blown fuses . . . . . 310
replace . . . . . 310

## G

Gear selector . . . . . 163
Glass roof sun blind . . . . . 139
Glove compartment . . . . . 237
Google Assistant . . . . . 273

## H

Hazard warning lights . . . . . 66
Head-on collisions and the laws of physics . . . . 42
Head-up-Display (HUD) . . . . . 18
Headlight range control . . . . . 130
Headlights
change a bulb . . . . . 312
trips abroad . . . . . 131
Headrest . . . . . 119
adjust . . . . . 120
removing . . . . . 120
Heating . . . . . 141
High-voltage battery
bidirectional charging . . . . . 88
care . . . . . 74
charging settings in the infotainment system 85
charging with a home energy management system . . . . . 89
general settings . . . . . 87
safety instructions . . . . . 72
solar energy charging . . . . . 89
warning lettering . . . . . 72
High-voltage battery charging cable . . . . . 90

## I

i-Size . . . . . 60
Indicator lamps
overview . . . . . 11
Information call . . . . . 67
Infotainment . . . . . 253
adapt menus . . . . . 261
Android Auto™ . . . . . 272
Apple CarPlay . . . . . 271
before first use . . . . . 253
clean . . . . . 262
connecting and disconnecting . . . . . 260
customise . . . . . 261
customised menus . . . . . 261
departure menu . . . . . 36
drop-down menu . . . . . 261
executing functions . . . . . 260
function buttons . . . . . 31
help . . . . . 30
initial configuration . . . . . 33
Internet access . . . . . 264
Media mode . . . . . 278
navigation . . . . . 281
operating . . . . . 260
overview and controls . . . . . 259
Radio mode . . . . . 276
safety instructions . . . . . 253
sound settings . . . . . 261

system settings ... 262
technical data ... 257
telephone interface ... 265
tutorial ... 30
vehicle assistants ... 34
vehicle settings ... 35
Infotainment system
see Infotainment ... 30
Inspection ... 343
Inspection reminder ... 21
Installing software
over-the-air updates ... 242
Instrument cluster ... 15, 16
battery state of charge and range ... 17
date and time ... 21
Head-up-Display (HUD) ... 18
power display ... 18
service intervals display ... 21
status display ... 19
warning and information messages ... 20
Instrument cluster display ... 16, 19
instrument cluster lighting ... 131
Instrument panel
symbols ... 11
warning and control lamps ... 11
Interior mirror
anti-dazzle ... 137
Interior monitoring and the anti-tow system
activation ... 107
ISOFIX ... 60
ISOFIX system ... 60


## J


Jack ... 300
position points ... 336
Jump leads ... 302
Jump start ... 302
description ... 303
jump start connection point ... 303


## K


Key switch ... 52
Keyless Access
troubleshooting ... 102
unlocking and locking the vehicle ... 100
Keys
changing the battery ... 95
pull out the key blade ... 95
remote control ... 94
spare key ... 94
synchronise ... 96
unlock and lock ... 104, 109
vehicle key ... 94


## L


Lane Assist ... 196
control and warning lamp ... 197
control lamps ... 198
Lane Assist system ... 196
Lane change assist ... 201
Lane departure warning (Side Assist)
control lamp ... 205
driving situations ... 207
how it works ... 205
indication on the exterior mirror ... 206
lane change Plus ... 205
system limitations ... 205
Launch control ... 167
Leaving Home ... 130
Legal provisions ... 248
Licenses ... 256
Lift the vehicle ... 336
Light Assist ... 129
Lights
audible warnings ... 127
AUTO ... 126
background lighting ... 133
change a bulb ... 312
coming home ... 130
control lighting ... 131
control panel ... 126
cornering light ... 126
daytime running lights ... 126
fog light ... 126
headlight range control ... 130
instrument lighting ... 131
interior lights ... 131
leaving home ... 130
main beam assist ... 129
main beam headlight lever ... 127
reading lights ... 131
switching on and off ... 126
troubleshooting ... 131
turn signal lever ... 127
Loading the vehicle
fastening rings ... 292
general advice ... 289
luggage compartment ... 289
positioning the load ... 289
positioning the luggage ... 289
trapdoor for transporting long objects ... 293
Lock and unlock ... 100
in the locking cylinder ... 109
with the central locking button ... 105
Luggage compartment ... 111, 289
emergency unlocking ... 111
enlarge ... 118

luggage compartment lighting ..... 131
removing and fitting the shelf ..... 290
variable luggage compartment floor ..... 291
Luggage compartment floor ..... 291
Lumbar support ..... 117

## M

Main beam assist ..... 129
Main beam headlight lever ..... 127
Malfunction
adaptive cruise control ..... 188
proactive occupant protection ..... 48
Mats ..... 152
Media Mode ..... 278
equipment ..... 279
symbols ..... 279
Memory function ..... 123
Microfiber: clean ..... 348
Mirrors ..... 136
adjusting the exterior mirrors ..... 137
anti-dazzle ..... 137
Mobile phones ..... 351
Multimedia ..... 252, 276
favourites ..... 279
play ..... 279
select source ..... 279

## N

Navigation ..... 281, 284
decrease the navigation map ..... 282
edit route ..... 287
enter an address for a guide destination ..... 284
favourite destinations ..... 285
function: entering destination ..... 284
functions ..... 282
increase the navigation map ..... 282
last destinations ..... 285
learn usage pattern ..... 287
limitations ..... 282
navigation announcements ..... 281
operating the navigation map ..... 282
route details ..... 287
save destination ..... 285
saved data ..... 282
saved destinations ..... 285
select charging stations ..... 285
suggestions ..... 284
symbols ..... 282
traffic reports ..... 286
updating navigation data ..... 284
Noise
brakes ..... 169
parking brake ..... 209
tyres ..... 327
Number of seats ..... 39

## O

Odometer ..... 16
partial ..... 20
total ..... 20
On-board toolkit ..... 300
One-touch signalling function ..... 127
Online services ..... 246
Opening ..... 103
bonnet ..... 316
windows ..... 112
Opening and closing ..... 103
bonnet ..... 316
by remote control ..... 104
doors ..... 108
in the locking cylinder ..... 109
rear lid ..... 111
sunshade blind ..... 139
windows ..... 112
with the central locking button ..... 105
Operation in winter
salt on the roads ..... 135
snow chains ..... 333
tyres ..... 332
Original accessories ..... 345
Over-the-air updates ..... 241
download ..... 242
installing software ..... 242
requirements ..... 241
Overview
of warning and control lamps ..... 11
overview (left hand drive) ..... 9
overview (right hand drive) ..... 10
view of the vehicle from inside ..... 8
view of the vehicle from the front ..... 6
view of the vehicle from the rear ..... 7

## P

Painting the vehicle
care ..... 347
Park assist
fault ..... 213
operating ..... 215
park assist plus ..... 213
see the Automatic Parking System ..... 216
sensors and camera: clean ..... 347
surroundings warning ..... 213
visual indication ..... 216
Parking ..... 208
at an angle with the reverse assist ..... 231
with the automatic parking system ..... 220

Parking systems
automatic brake operation 212
reverse assist (Rear View Camera) 230
troubleshooting 213
Partial odometer 21
Pedals 39, 152
Peripheral view system (Top View Camera) 232
menus 234
modes 234
special characteristics 233
usage instructions 234
Power display 18
Power sockets 238
Power windows 112
Predictive speed adjustment
driving 190
limitations 190
troubleshooting 191
Predictive speed and events adjustment 189
activation 190
Privacy 250
settings 250
Private emergency call service 67
Proactive occupant protection 47
malfunction 48
status display 48

## R

Radar sensors 175
Radio 276
equipment 276
frequency bands 277
preset buttons 277
symbols 276
Traffic information (TP) 277
tune station 277
type of reception 277
Radio mode 276
Radio screen: clean 348
Radio telephones 351
Rain and light sensor 135
Rain sensor
function control 135
Raise the vehicle 336
Rear Cross Traffic Alert 234
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 234
Rear lid 110, 111
Rear radar 177
Rear View Camera 230
Rear window wiper 134
Releasing the seat belt 43
Remote control key
unlock and lock 104
Repair work 350
Requirements for Apple CarPlay 271
Rev counter 16
Reverse assist 230
Reverse assist (Rear View) 230
angle parking 231
check list 230
connecting and disconnecting 231
requirements 230, 232
settings 232
shown on the display 231
usage instructions 232
Reverse assist system 230
Road signs
shown on the display 27
Road signs detection system 27
how it works 26
limited operation 28
settings 28
shown on the display 27
troubleshooting 29
warning levels 29
windscreen damage 28
Roadside assistance 345
Roof carrier 294
Roof rack 294
Rotation direction
tyres 337
Running in
new brake pads 169
new tyres 327

## S

Safe 105, 162
Safe driving 37
Safe security system 105
troubleshooting 106
Safety
child safety 56
child seats 56
safe driving 37
Safety equipment 37
Safety instructions 253
central airbag 53
head-protection airbags 55
seat belt tensioners 46
side airbags 54
using child seats 58
using seat belts 41
Screen
clean 262
Seat belt tensioners 45
control lamp 50

Seat belts
adjusting the seat belt . . . . . 44
adjustment . . . . . 43
automatic retractor, tensioner and belt force limiter . . . . . 45
control lamp . . . . . 41
maintenance and disposal of seat belt tensioners . . . . . 46
protective function . . . . . 40
purpose . . . . . 48
safety instructions . . . . . 41
unfastened . . . . . 42
Seat heating . . . . . 146
Seats . . . . . 117
adjusting the headrests . . . . . 120
armrest . . . . . 124
backrest of the rear seat . . . . . 118
electric settings . . . . . 118
fitting the headrest . . . . . 120
heating . . . . . 146
incorrect positions . . . . . 39
manual adjustment . . . . . 117
memory function . . . . . 123
number of seats . . . . . 39
removing the headrest . . . . . 120
Selling the vehicle . . . . . 248
Service
Digital Maintenance plan . . . . . 343
inspection . . . . . 343
proof of Service . . . . . 343
service packages . . . . . 344
service works . . . . . 343
terms of use . . . . . 344
Service interval indicator . . . . . 21
Service intervals . . . . . 21
Service Menu
restart Trip . . . . . 21
service interval indicator . . . . . 21
vehicle identification number . . . . . 21
Set of vehicle keys . . . . . 94
Smartlight . . . . . 22
information provided . . . . . 22
settings . . . . . 22
Snow chains . . . . . 333
Sound settings . . . . . 261
Spare parts . . . . . 350
Special characteristics
Android Auto™ . . . . . 273
Apple CarPlay . . . . . 272
peripheral view system (Top View Camera) . 233
Speed limiter . . . . . 180
control lamps . . . . . 181
indication on display . . . . . 180
operating . . . . . 180
Speed limiter with proactive speed adjustment . . . . . 181
troubleshooting . . . . . 183
Speed symbol . . . . . 327
Stationary air conditioning . . . . . 149
activate . . . . . 150
connecting . . . . . 150
programming . . . . . 150
switching off . . . . . 150
Status display
adaptive cruise control . . . . . 185
date and time . . . . . 21
doors, front bonnet and rear lid open . . . . . 20
Drive Profile . . . . . 166
Eco Assist . . . . . 183
Emergency Assist . . . . . 204
Emergency brake assist system (Front Assist) . . . . . 192
instrument cluster . . . . . 19
odometer . . . . . 20
outside temperature . . . . . 20
proactive occupant protection . . . . . 48
range . . . . . 20
road signs . . . . . 27
service intervals . . . . . 21
speed limiter . . . . . 180
speed warning . . . . . 20
Travel Assist . . . . . 199
tyre pressure monitoring . . . . . 338
warning and information messages . . . . . 20
Steering
control lamp . . . . . 166
electromechanical steering . . . . . 165
Steering wheel
adjust . . . . . 116
controls . . . . . 115
Energy recuperation levers . . . . . 158
heating . . . . . 148
Steering wheel heating . . . . . 148
Storage compartment . . . . . 237
glove compartment . . . . . 237
on-board documentation . . . . . 237
Storage compartment accessories
see Storage . . . . . 237
Storage of accident data . . . . . 356
Storing objects . . . . . 289
bag hooks . . . . . 292
fastening rings . . . . . 292
positioning the load . . . . . 289
positioning the luggage . . . . . 289
roof carrier . . . . . 294

trailer ..... 294
trapdoor for transporting long objects ..... 293
Sun blind ..... 139
Sun protection ..... 139
Sunroof
sunshade blind ..... 139
Switching the ignition on/off ..... 160
Symbols
see Warning and control lamps ..... 11
System settings ..... 262


## T


Tail lights
change a bulb ..... 312
Technical data
electric motor data ..... 366
vehicle dimensions ..... 368
weights ..... 365
Technical modifications ..... 351
Telephone interface ..... 265
Time
adjust ..... 21
Top Tether ..... 63, 64
Top Tether System ..... 63, 64
Top View Camera
see the Peripheral view system (Top View Camera) ..... 232
Torque
wheel nuts ..... 337
Touch screen ..... 259
Touch zones ..... 259
Towing the vehicle
emergency towing ..... 306
front towing eye ..... 307
prior steps ..... 306
tow bar ..... 304
tow cable ..... 304
towing prohibited ..... 306
Traction control ..... 170
Traffic information ..... 286
Traffic information (TP) ..... 277
Traffic programme
see TP (traffic information) ..... 277
Trailer ..... 294
Trailer mode
see Trailer ..... 294
Transportation of children ..... 56
Trapdoor for transporting long objects ..... 293
Travel Assist ..... 198
connecting and disconnecting ..... 200
lane change assist ..... 201
problems and solutions ..... 202
see Travel Assist ..... 198
status display ..... 199
Trips abroad ..... 154
headlights ..... 131
Troubleshooting
Emergency Assist ..... 204
proactive occupant protection ..... 48
Travel Assist ..... 202
Turn signal lever ..... 127
Turning off the lights ..... 126
Turning on the lights ..... 126
Type mobility ..... 339
Tyre mobility set ..... 339
Tyre mobility system ..... 339
check after 10 minutes ..... 342
components ..... 340
inflating the tyre ..... 341
sealing the tyre ..... 341
Tyre pressure ..... 329
Tyre pressure monitor system ..... 339
Tyre pressure monitor systems
tyre pressure monitor indicator ..... 338
Tyre profile ..... 331
Tyre repair ..... 339
Tyre repair kit ..... 339
Tyre tread depth ..... 331
Tyre wear ..... 331
Tyres ..... 327
accessories ..... 327
change ..... 333
directional tread pattern ..... 327, 337
for winter ..... 332
foreign objects inserted ..... 327
new tyres ..... 328
snow chains ..... 333
speed symbol ..... 327
tread wear indicators ..... 331
tyre pressure ..... 329
useful life ..... 329


## U


Ultrasound sensors ..... 177
Unlock and lock ..... 100
by remote control ..... 104
doors ..... 108
with the central locking button ..... 105
USB ..... 252
USB port ..... 252
User administration ..... 251


## V


Vanity mirror ..... 139
Variable luggage compartment floor ..... 291

Vehicle
data label . . . . . 365
electric motor data . . . . . 366
identification data . . . . . 365
interior view . . . . . 8
lending or selling . . . . . 248
overview (left hand drive) . . . . . 9
overview (right hand drive) . . . . . 10
raise . . . . . 336
unlocking and locking (Keyless Access) . . . 100
vehicle ID number . . . . . 365
view from behind . . . . . 7
view from the front . . . . . 6
Vehicle assistants . . . . . 34
Vehicle care
wiper blade service position . . . . . 300
Vehicle conservation . . . . . 345
Vehicle conservation products . . . . . 345
Vehicle dimensions . . . . . 368
Vehicle location . . . . . 248
Vehicle seats . . . . . 39
Vehicle settings . . . . . 35
Vehicle sound . . . . . 162
Vehicle tool kit . . . . . 300
Ventilation . . . . . 141
Voice control
Android Auto™ . . . . . 273
Siri™ (Apple CarPlay™) . . . . . 272

## W

Warning lamps
overview . . . . . 11
Warning triangle . . . . . 66
Warranty . . . . . 353
Washing the vehicle
cleaning the exterior . . . . . 347
high pressure cleaning equipment . . . . . 346
interior cleaning . . . . . 348
special care . . . . . 349
Weights . . . . . 365
Wheel balance . . . . . 329
Wheel nuts . . . . . 331
anti-theft device . . . . . 335
caps . . . . . 334
loosen . . . . . 335
torque . . . . . 337
Wheel wrench . . . . . 300
Wheels
change . . . . . 333
changing . . . . . 331
new wheels . . . . . 328
removing and attaching . . . . . 337
snow chains . . . . . 333
wheel nuts . . . . . 331
Window controls . . . . . 112
Window washer system . . . . . 321
Window washer water
check . . . . . 321
filling quantities . . . . . 321
refill . . . . . 321
Windows . . . . . 112
anti-trap function . . . . . 113
automatic opening/closing . . . . . 112
automatic operation . . . . . 112
Windscreen washer . . . . . 134
Windscreen wipers
control lamps . . . . . 136
functions . . . . . 135
lift the blade . . . . . 300
rain and light sensor . . . . . 135
reposition the blade . . . . . 300
service position . . . . . 300
special characteristics . . . . . 134
wiper lever . . . . . 134
Winter tyres . . . . . 332
Wiper and rear window wiper blades
cleaning the vehicle . . . . . 301, 347
replacement . . . . . 301
service position . . . . . 300
WLAN . . . . . 263

SEAT S.A. is permanently concerned about continuous development of its types and models. For this reason we ask you to understand, that at any given time, changes regarding shape, equipment and technique may take place on the car delivered. For this reason no right at all may derive based on the data, drawings and descriptions in this current handbook.

All texts, illustrations and standards in this handbook are based on the status of information at the time of printing. Except for error or omission, the information included in the current handbook is valid as of the date of closing print.

Re-printing, copying or translating, whether total or partial is not allowed unless SEAT allows it in written form.

SEAT reserves all rights in accordance with the “Copyright” Act.

All rights on changes are reserved.

This paper has been manufactured using bleached non-chlorine cellulose.

© SEAT S.A. - Reprint: 15.03.26

CUPRA BORN
English
Edition: 03.26
10E012720AK
10E012720AK